Oracle® Retail Point-of-Service

Installation Guide

Release 13.1.4

March 2011

ORACLE®

Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Installation Guide, Release 13.1.4

Copyright © 2011, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Primary Author: Bernadette Goodman

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this software or related documentation is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007). Oracle USA, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

This software is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications which may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use of this software. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software in dangerous applications.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

This software and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

Value-Added Reseller (VAR) Language

Oracle Retail VAR Applications

The following restrictions and provisions only apply to the programs referred to in this section and licensed to you. You acknowledge that the programs may contain third party software (VAR applications) licensed to Oracle. Depending upon your product and its version number, the VAR applications may include:

(i) the **MicroStrategy** Components developed and licensed by MicroStrategy Services Corporation (MicroStrategy) of McLean, Virginia to Oracle and imbedded in the MicroStrategy for Oracle Retail Data Warehouse and MicroStrategy for Oracle Retail Planning & Optimization applications.

(ii) the **Wavelink** component developed and licensed by Wavelink Corporation (Wavelink) of Kirkland, Washington, to Oracle and imbedded in Oracle Retail Mobile Store Inventory Management.

(iii) the software component known as **Access Via™** licensed by Access Via of Seattle, Washington, and imbedded in Oracle Retail Signs and Oracle Retail Labels and Tags.

(iv) the software component known as **Adobe Flex™** licensed by Adobe Systems Incorporated of San Jose, California, and imbedded in Oracle Retail Promotion Planning & Optimization application.

You acknowledge and confirm that Oracle grants you use of only the object code of the VAR Applications. Oracle will not deliver source code to the VAR Applications to you. Notwithstanding any other term or condition of the agreement and this ordering document, you shall not cause or permit alteration of any VAR Applications. For purposes of this section, "alteration" refers to all alterations, translations, upgrades, enhancements, customizations or modifications of all or any portion of the VAR Applications including all reconfigurations, reassembly or reverse assembly, re-engineering or reverse engineering and recompilations or reverse compilations of the VAR Applications or any derivatives of the VAR Applications. You acknowledge that it shall be a breach of the agreement to utilize the relationship, and/or confidential information of the VAR Applications for purposes of competitive discovery.

The VAR Applications contain trade secrets of Oracle and Oracle's licensors and Customer shall not attempt, cause, or permit the alteration, decompilation, reverse engineering, disassembly or other reduction of the VAR Applications to a human perceivable form. Oracle reserves the right to replace, with functional equivalent software, any of the VAR Applications in future releases of the applicable program.

Contents

Send Us Your Comments xxi

Preface xxiii

Audience xxiii
Related Documents xxiii
Customer Support xxiii
Review Patch Documentation xxiv
Oracle Retail Documentation on the Oracle Technology Network xxiv
Conventions xxiv

1 Preinstallation Tasks

Patch Contents 1-1
Check Supported Oracle Retail Merchandise Operations Management Version 1-1
Check Supported Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management Version 1-2
Check Supported Oracle Retail Returns Management Version 1-2
Check Supported Software 1-2
Supported Software for Clients (Registers) 1-2
Supported Software for Store Servers 1-2
ISD Software Version for Tender Authorization 1-3
Check Supported Hardware 1-3
Hardware Requirements 1-3
Store Server 1-3
Client 1-3
Peripheral Devices for Clients 1-3
Supported Hardware for Clients 1-4
Check Java Key Store Requirement 1-4
Check Secure JDBC and Secure RMI 1-5
ISD Authorization Transaction Testing 1-5
Payment Application Data Security Standard 1-6

2 Installation on the Oracle Stack using Linux

Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users 2-1
Installing Point-of-Service 2-3
Determining Tier Type 2-3

Installing the Database 2-3
Required Settings for the Database 2-4
Installing Point-of-Service on Machines 2-4
Updating Device Configuration 2-5
Expand the Point-of-Service Distribution 2-14
Obtaining Third-Party Library Files Required by Point-of-Service 2-15
Obtaining the IBM JRE Required for Client Install 2-15
Securing Communication 2-15
Running the Point-of-Service Application Installer 2-15
Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation 2-16
Creating the Point-of-Service Database Schema 2-16
Creating with Oracle Retail Back Office 2-16
Creating without Oracle Retail Back Office 2-16
Enabling Access for the Data Source User 2-17
Installing Multibyte Fonts for eReceipt in the Client Installation 2-17
Enabling Browser Functionality in the Client Installation 2-19
Configuring for Offline Data Updates 2-19
Setting up the Store Server to use ISD for Tender Authorization 2-19
BIN Validation 2-20
Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) 2-20
Results of a Point-of-Service Installation 2-21
Running Point-of-Service 2-21
Creating a Custom Installation 2-22

3 Installation on the Oracle Stack using Windows

Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users 3-1
Installing Point-of-Service 3-2
Determining Tier Type 3-3
Installing the Database 3-3
Required Settings for the Database 3-4
Installing Point-of-Service on Machines 3-4
Updating Device Configuration 3-5
Expand the Point-of-Service Distribution 3-14
Obtaining Third-Party Library Files Required by Point-of-Service 3-15
Obtaining the IBM JRE Required for Client Install 3-15
Securing Communication 3-15
Running the Point-of-Service Application Installer 3-15
Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation 3-16
Creating the Point-of-Service Database Schema 3-16
Creating with Oracle Retail Back Office 3-16
Creating without Oracle Retail Back Office 3-16
Enabling Access for the Data Source User 3-17
Installing Multibyte Fonts for eReceipt in the Client Installation 3-17
Enabling Browser Functionality in the Client Installation 3-19
Configuring for Offline Data Updates 3-19
Setting up the Server to use ISD for Tender Authorization 3-19
BIN Validation 3-20

Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) 3-20
Results of a Point-of-Service Installation 3-21
Running Point-of-Service 3-22
Creating a Custom Installation 3-22

4 Installation on the IBM Stack

Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users 4-1
Installing Point-of-Service 4-2
Determining Tier Type 4-2
Installing the Database 4-3
Required Settings for the Database 4-4
Installing Point-of-Service on Machines 4-4
Updating Device Configuration 4-4
Expand the Point-of-Service Distribution 4-14
Obtaining Third-Party Library Files Required by Point-of-Service 4-15
Securing Communication 4-15
Obtaining the Required IBM JRE 4-15
Running the Point-of-Service Application Installer 4-16
Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation 4-16
Creating the Point-of-Service Database Schema 4-16
Creating with Oracle Retail Back Office 4-16
Creating without Oracle Retail Back Office 4-17
Enabling Access for the Data Source User 4-17
Installing Multibyte Fonts for eReceipt in the Client Installation 4-18
Enabling Browser Functionality in the Client Installation 4-19
Verify the Permissions for Mozilla 4-20
Configuring for Offline Data Updates 4-20
Setting up the Store Server to use ISD for Tender Authorization 4-20
BIN Validation 4-20
Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) 4-21
Results of a Point-of-Service Installation 4-21
Running Point-of-Service 4-22
Creating a Custom Installation 4-22

5 Installation for Standalone on the Oracle Stack using Linux

Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users 5-1
Installing Point-of-Service 5-2
Determining Tier Type 5-2
Installing the Database 5-3
Required Settings for the Database 5-3
Installing Point-of-Service on Machines 5-4
Updating Device Configuration 5-4
Expand the Point-of-Service Distribution 5-13
Obtaining Third-Party Library Files Required by Point-of-Service 5-14
Obtaining the IBM JRE Required for Client Install 5-14
Securing Communication 5-15

Running the Point-of-Service Application Installer 5-15
Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation 5-15
Creating the Point-of-Service Database Schema 5-16
Enabling Access for the Data Source User 5-16
Installing Multibyte Fonts for eReceipt in the Client Installation 5-17
Configuring for Offline Data Updates 5-18
Setting up the Store Server to use ISD for Tender Authorization 5-18
BIN Validation 5-18
Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) 5-19
Results of a Point-of-Service Installation 5-19
Running Point-of-Service 5-20
Creating a Custom Installation 5-21

6 Installation for Standalone on the Oracle Stack using Windows

Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users 6-1
Installing Point-of-Service 6-2
Determining Tier Type 6-2
Installing the Database 6-3
Required Settings for the Database 6-3
Installing Point-of-Service on Machines 6-4
Updating Device Configuration 6-4
Expand the Point-of-Service Distribution 6-13
Obtaining Third-Party Library Files Required by Point-of-Service 6-14
Obtaining the IBM JRE Required for Client Install 6-14
Securing Communication 6-15
Running the Point-of-Service Application Installer 6-15
Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation 6-15
Creating the Point-of-Service Database Schema 6-16
Enabling Access for the Data Source User 6-16
Installing Multibyte Fonts for eReceipt in the Client Installation 6-17
Enabling Browser Functionality in the Client Installation 6-18
Configuring for Offline Data Updates 6-18
Setting up the Store Server to use ISD for Tender Authorization 6-19
BIN Validation 6-19
Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) 6-19
Results of a Point-of-Service Installation 6-20
Running Point-of-Service 6-21
Creating a Custom Installation 6-21

7 Installation for Standalone on the IBM Stack

Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users 7-1
Installing Point-of-Service 7-2
Determining Tier Type 7-2
Installing the Database 7-2
Required Settings for the Database 7-3
Installing Point-of-Service on Machines 7-3
Updating Device Configuration 7-4

Expand the Point-of-Service Distribution 7-13
Obtaining Third-Party Library Files Required by Point-of-Service 7-14
Obtaining the IBM JRE Required for Client Install 7-14
Securing Communication 7-14
Running the Point-of-Service Application Installer 7-15
Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation 7-15
Creating the Point-of-Service Database Schema 7-15
Enabling Access for the Data Source User 7-16
Installing Multibyte Fonts for eReceipt in the Client Installation 7-16
Enabling Browser Functionality in the Client Installation 7-18
Verify the Permissions for Mozilla 7-18
Configuring for Offline Data Updates 7-18
Setting up the Store Server to use ISD for Tender Authorization 7-19
BIN Validation 7-19
Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) 7-19
Results of a Point-of-Service Installation 7-20
Running Point-of-Service 7-21
Creating a Custom Installation 7-21

A Appendix: Installer Screens for Server Installation on Linux

B Appendix: Installer Screens Server Installation on Windows

C Appendix: Installer Screens for Client Installation on the Oracle Stack

D Appendix: Installer Screens for Server Installation on the IBM Stack

E Appendix: Installer Screens for Client Installation on the IBM Stack

F Appendix: Installer Screens for Server Installation for Standalone on Linux

G Appendix: Installer Screens for Server Installation for Standalone on Windows

H Appendix: Installer Screens for Client Installation for Standalone

I Appendix: Installer Silent Mode

J Appendix: URL Reference

JDBC URL for an Oracle 11g Database J-1
JDBC URL for an IBM DB2 Database J-1

K Appendix: Common Installation Errors

"Pos installer finished with errors" K-1

"Dispatcher.main, Exception: java.security.AccessControlException: access denied (java.util.PropertyPermission * read,write)" K-1
"java.lang.NullPointerException" K-2

L Appendix: Troubleshooting Problems on the Oracle Stack

jndi.properties File Name L-1
Performing a Manual Integration L-1
Client Configuration L-1
Store Server Configuration L-2
Secure RMI and Secure JDBC L-5

M Appendix: Troubleshooting Problems on the IBM Stack

jndi.properties File Name M-1
Performing a Manual Integration M-1
Client Configuration M-1
Store Server Configuration M-3
Secure RMI and Secure JDBC M-6

N Appendix: Best Practices for Passwords

Password Guidelines N-1
Special Security Options for Oracle Databases N-2
Enforcing Password Policies Using Database Profiles N-2
Enforcing Password Policies Using a Verification Script N-2
Special Security Options for IBM DB2 Databases N-3

O Appendix: Keytool Utility

Creating a Self-Signed Certificate O-1
Creating a Certificate Signing Request O-2
Exporting and Importing Certificates O-2

P Appendix: Secure JDBC with Oracle 11gR2 Database

Creating the Oracle Wallet and Certificate for the Database Server P-1
Securing the Listener on the Server P-2
Examples of Network Configuration Files P-2
listener.ora P-3
sqlnet.ora P-3
tnsnames.ora P-3
Securing Client Access P-4
Specific Instructions for Point-of-Service P-4

Q Appendix: Secure JDBC with IBM DB2

Summary Q-1
Prerequisites Q-1
Setting up the Key Store Q-2
Creating a Self-signed Digital Certificate for Testing Q-2

Configuring the IBM DB2 Server Q-3
Exporting a Certificate from iKeyman Q-4
Importing the IBM DB2 Server Certificate on the Point-of-Service Server Q-5
Configuring the Point-of-Service Server Q-5
Configuring the IBM FIPS-compliant Provider for SSL (optional) Q-6
Useful Links Q-7

R Appendix: Secure RMI

List of Figures

A–1 Introduction A-1
A–2 Previous POS Install A-2
A–3 License Agreement A-2
A–4 Supported Languages A-3
A–5 Enter Default Locale A-3
A–6 Tier Type A-4
A–7 Installation Location A-5
A–8 Store Server Details A-6
A–9 Store ID A-7
A–10 JRE Location A-7
A–11 JRE Vendor A-8
A–12 Application Server Type A-9
A–13 Database Type A-10
A–14 Database Owner A-10
A–15 Database Source User for Oracle 11g A-11
A–16 Enable Secure JDBC A-13
A–17 Data Source SSL Configuration A-13
A–18 Derby Jars A-14
A–19 Transaction Retrieval Location A-15
A–20 Scratchpad Database Information A-16
A–21 Enable Secure RMI A-17
A–22 SSL Key Store Details A-18
A–23 POS Administrator User A-19
A–24 ORSIM Integration A-20
A–25 Enter ORSIM Webservice URL A-20
A–26 ORSIM Integration A-21
A–27 Server Journal Options A-22
A–28 Logging Export Options A-22
A–29 Logging Detail Options A-23
A–30 RTLog Export Options A-24
A–31 Security Setup: Key Store Settings A-24
A–32 RSA Key Manager Requirements A-25
A–33 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... A-26
A–34 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... A-26
A–35 RSA Key Store Configuration A-28
A–36 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager A-29
A–37 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager A-30
A–38 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager A-31
A–39 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager A-32
A–40 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management A-33
A–41 Oracle Returns Management Messaging A-34
A–42 POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration A-35
A–43 Oracle Returns Management Configuration for JMS Queue Used for Messaging A-36
A–44 POS - Returns Management Configuration for Web Service Used for Messaging A-37
A–45 Central Office Server Information A-38
A–46 Back Office Server Information A-39
A–47 Tender Authorization A-40
A–48 Tender Authorization Parameters A-41
A–49 Value-Added Tax (VAT) A-42
A–50 Installation Progress A-42
A–51 Install Complete A-43
B–1 Introduction B-1
B–2 Previous POS Install B-2
B–3 License Agreement B-2

B–4 Supported Languages B-3
B–5 Enter Default Locale B-3
B–6 Tier Type B-4
B–7 Installation Location B-5
B–8 Store Server Details B-6
B–9 Store ID B-7
B–10 JRE Location B-7
B–11 JRE Vendor B-8
B–12 Application Server Type B-9
B–13 Database Type B-10
B–14 Database Owner B-10
B–15 Database Source User for Oracle 11g B-11
B–16 Enable Secure JDBC B-13
B–17 Data Source SSL Configuration B-13
B–18 Derby Jars B-14
B–19 Transaction Retrieval Location B-15
B–20 Scratchpad Database Information B-16
B–21 Enable Secure RMI B-17
B–22 SSL Key Store Details B-18
B–23 POS Administrator User B-19
B–24 ORSIM Integration B-20
B–25 Enter ORSIM Webservice URL B-20
B–26 ORSIM Integration B-21
B–27 Server Journal Options B-22
B–28 Logging Export Options B-22
B–29 Logging Detail Options B-23
B–30 RTLog Export Options B-24
B–31 Security Setup: Key Store Settings B-24
B–32 RSA Key Manager Requirements B-25
B–33 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... B-26
B–34 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... B-26
B–35 RSA Key Store Configuration B-28
B–36 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager B-29
B–37 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager B-30
B–38 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager B-31
B–39 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager B-32
B–40 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management B-33
B–41 Oracle Returns Management Messaging B-34
B–42 POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration B-35
B–43 Oracle Returns Management Configuration for JMS Queue Used for Messaging B-36
B–44 POS - Returns Management Configuration for Web Service Used for Messaging B-37
B–45 Central Office Server Information B-38
B–46 Back Office Server Information B-39
B–47 Tender Authorization B-40
B–48 Tender Authorization Parameters B-41
B–49 Value-Added Tax (VAT) B-42
B–50 Installation Progress B-42
B–51 Install Complete B-43
C–1 Introduction C-1
C–2 Previous POS Install C-2
C–3 License Agreement C-2
C–4 Supported Languages C-3
C–5 Enter Default Locale C-3
C–6 Tier Type C-4
C–7 Enable eReceipt C-5

C–8 eReceipt Properties C-5
C–9 Installation Location C-6
C–10 Store Server Details C-7
C–11 Store ID C-8
C–12 JRE Location C-8
C–13 JRE Vendor C-9
C–14 Application Server Type C-10
C–15 Derby Jars C-11
C–16 Transaction Retrieval Location C-12
C–17 Enable Secure RMI C-13
C–18 SSS Truststore Details C-13
C–19 ORSIM Integration C-14
C–20 ORSIM Integration C-15
C–21 Logging Detail Options C-15
C–22 Register Number C-16
C–23 Security Setup: Key Store Settings C-17
C–24 RSA Key Manager Requirements C-18
C–25 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... C-18
C–26 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... C-19
C–27 RSA Key Store Configuration C-20
C–28 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager C-22
C–29 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager C-22
C–30 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager C-24
C–31 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager C-25
C–32 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management C-26
C–33 POS Platform Components C-27
C–34 POS Devices C-28
C–35 CPOI Device Selection C-28
C–36 JPOS Device Setup: Library Files C-29
C–37 JPOS Device Setup: jpos.xml directory C-31
C–38 POS Printer Support C-31
C–39 EJournal Options C-32
C–40 JMS Queue Journal Support C-33
C–41 Parameter Distribution Information C-33
C–42 Back Office Server Information C-34
C–43 Value-Added Tax (VAT) C-35
C–44 User Interface Type C-36
C–45 Installation Progress C-37
C–46 Install Complete C-37
D–1 Introduction D-1
D–2 Previous POS Install D-2
D–3 License Agreement D-2
D–4 Supported Languages D-3
D–5 Enter Default Locale D-3
D–6 Tier Type D-4
D–7 Installation Location D-5
D–8 Store Server Details D-6
D–9 Store ID D-7
D–10 JRE Location D-7
D–11 JRE Vendor D-8
D–12 Application Server Type D-9
D–13 Websphere Application Server: Third Party Jars D-10
D–14 Database Type D-11
D–15 Database Owner D-12
D–16 Database Source User for IBM DB2 ..... D-13

D–17 Enable Secure JDBC D-14
D–18 Data Source SSL Configuration D-15
D–19 SSL Truststore Details D-16
D–20 Derby Jars D-16
D–21 Transaction Retrieval Location D-17
D–22 Transaction Retrieval Jar Locations D-18
D–23 Enable Secure RMI D-19
D–24 SSL Key Store Details D-19
D–25 POS Administrator User D-20
D–26 ORSIM Integration D-21
D–27 Enter ORSIM Webservice URL D-21
D–28 ORSIM Integration D-22
D–29 Server Journal Options D-23
D–30 Logging Export Options D-23
D–31 Logging Detail Options D-24
D–32 RTLog Export Options D-25
D–33 Security Setup: Key Store Settings D-25
D–34 RSA Key Manager Requirements D-26
D–35 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... D-27
D–36 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... D-27
D–37 RSA Key Store Configuration D-29
D–38 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager D-30
D–39 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager D-31
D–40 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager D-32
D–41 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager D-33
D–42 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management D-34
D–43 Oracle Returns Management Messaging D-35
D–44 POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration D-36
D–45 POS - Returns Management Configuration D-37
D–46 POS - Returns Management Configuration for Web Service Used for Messaging D-38
D–47 Central Office Server Information D-39
D–48 Back Office Server Information D-40
D–49 Tender Authorization D-41
D–50 Tender Authorization Parameters D-42
D–51 Value-Added Tax (VAT) D-43
D–52 Installation Progress D-43
D–53 Install Complete D-44
E–1 Introduction E-1
E–2 Previous POS Install E-2
E–3 License Agreement E-2
E–4 Supported Languages E-3
E–5 Enter Default Locale E-3
E–6 Tier Type E-4
E–7 Enable eReceipt E-5
E–8 eReceipt Properties E-5
E–9 Installation Location E-6
E–10 Store Server Details E-7
E–11 Store ID E-8
E–12 JRE Location E-8
E–13 JRE Vendor E-9
E–14 Application Server Type E-10
E–15 Websphere Application Server: Third Party Jars E-11
E–16 Derby Jars E-12
E–17 Transaction Retrieval Location E-13
E–18 Enable Secure RMI E-14

E–19 SSS Truststore Details E-14
E–20 ORSIM Integration E-15
E–21 ORSIM Integration E-16
E–22 Logging Detail Options E-16
E–23 Register Number E-17
E–24 Security Setup: Key Store Settings E-18
E–25 RSA Key Manager Requirements E-19
E–26 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... E-19
E–27 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... E-20
E–28 RSA Key Store Configuration E-21
E–29 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager E-23
E–30 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager E-23
E–31 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager E-25
E–32 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager E-26
E–33 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management E-27
E–34 POS Platform Components E-28
E–35 POS Devices E-29
E–36 CPOI Device Selection E-29
E–37 JPOS Device Setup: Library Files E-30
E–38 JPOS Device Setup: jpos.xml directory E-32
E–39 POS Printer Support E-32
E–40 EJournal Options E-33
E–41 JMS Queue Journal Support E-34
E–42 Parameter Distribution Information E-34
E–43 Back Office Server Information E-35
E–44 Value-Added Tax (VAT) E-36
E–45 User Interface Type E-37
E–46 Installation Progress E-38
E–47 Install Complete E-38
F–1 Introduction F-1
F–2 Previous POS Install F-2
F–3 License Agreement F-2
F–4 Supported Languages F-3
F–5 Enter Default Locale F-3
F–6 Tier Type F-4
F–7 Installation Location F-5
F–8 Store Server Details F-6
F–9 Store ID F-7
F–10 JRE Location F-7
F–11 JRE Vendor F-8
F–12 Application Server Type F-9
F–13 Database Type F-10
F–14 Database Owner F-10
F–15 Database Source User for Oracle 11g F-11
F–16 Database Source User for IBM DB2 ..... F-13
F–17 Enable Secure JDBC F-14
F–18 Data Source SSL Configuration F-15
F–19 SSL Truststore Details F-16
F–20 Derby Jars F-16
F–21 Enable Secure RMI F-17
F–22 SSL Key Store Details F-18
F–23 POS Administrator User F-19
F–24 ORSIM Integration F-20
F–25 Enter ORSIM Webservice URL F-20
F–26 ORSIM Integration F-21

F–27 Logging Export Options F-22
F–28 Logging Detail Options F-23
F–29 RTLog Export Options F-23
F–30 Security Setup: Key Store Settings F-24
F–31 RSA Key Manager Requirements F-25
F–32 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... F-25
F–33 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... F-26
F–34 RSA Key Store Configuration F-27
F–35 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager F-29
F–36 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager F-29
F–37 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager F-31
F–38 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager F-32
F–39 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management F-33
F–40 Oracle Returns Management Messaging F-34
F–41 POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration F-35
F–42 Oracle Returns Management Configuration for JMS Queue Used for Messaging F-36
F–43 POS - Returns Management Configuration for Web Service Used for Messaging F-37
F–44 Tender Authorization F-38
F–45 Tender Authorization Parameters F-39
F–46 Value-Added Tax (VAT) F-40
F–47 Installation Progress F-40
F–48 Install Complete F-41
G–1 Introduction G-1
G–2 Previous POS Install G-2
G–3 License Agreement G-2
G–4 Supported Languages G-3
G–5 Enter Default Locale G-3
G–6 Tier Type G-4
G–7 Installation Location G-5
G–8 Store Server Details G-6
G–9 Store ID G-7
G–10 JRE Location G-7
G–11 JRE Vendor G-8
G–12 Application Server Type G-9
G–13 Database Type G-10
G–14 Database Owner G-10
G–15 Data Source User for Oracle 11g G-11
G–16 Enable Secure JDBC G-13
G–17 Data Source SSL Configuration G-13
G–18 SSL Truststore Details G-14
G–19 Derby Jars G-15
G–20 Enable Secure RMI G-16
G–21 SSL Key Store Details G-16
G–22 POS Administrator User G-17
G–23 ORSIM Integration G-18
G–24 Enter ORSIM Webservice URL G-18
G–25 ORSIM Integration G-19
G–26 Logging Export Options G-20
G–27 Logging Detail Options G-21
G–28 RTLog Export Options G-21
G–29 Security Setup: Key Store Settings G-22
G–30 RSA Key Manager Requirements G-23
G–31 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... G-23
G–32 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... G-24
G–33 RSA Key Store Configuration G-25

G–34 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager G-27
G–35 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager G-27
G–36 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager G-29
G–37 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager G-30
G–38 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management G-31
G–39 Oracle Returns Management Messaging G-32
G–40 POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration G-33
G–41 Oracle Returns Management Configuration for JMS Queue Used for Messaging G-34
G–42 POS - Returns Management Configuration for Web Service Used for Messaging G-35
G–43 Tender Authorization G-36
G–44 Tender Authorization Parameters G-37
G–45 Value-Added Tax (VAT) G-38
G–46 Installation Progress G-38
G–47 Install Complete G-39
H–1 Introduction H-1
H–2 Previous POS Install H-2
H–3 License Agreement H-2
H–4 Supported Languages H-3
H–5 Enter Default Locale H-3
H–6 Tier Type H-4
H–7 Enable eReceipt H-5
H–8 eReceipt Properties H-5
H–9 Installation Location H-6
H–10 Store Server Details H-7
H–11 Store ID H-8
H–12 JRE Location H-9
H–13 JRE Vendor H-9
H–14 Application Server Type H-10
H–15 Derby Jars H-11
H–16 Enable Secure RMI H-12
H–17 SSS Truststore Details H-12
H–18 ORSIM Integration H-13
H–19 ORSIM Integration H-14
H–20 Logging Detail Options H-14
H–21 Register Number H-15
H–22 Security Setup: Key Store Settings H-16
H–23 RSA Key Manager Requirements H-17
H–24 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... H-17
H–25 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3 ..... H-18
H–26 RSA Key Store Configuration H-19
H–27 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager H-21
H–28 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager H-21
H–29 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager H-23
H–30 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager H-24
H–31 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management H-25
H–32 POS Platform Components H-26
H–33 POS Devices H-27
H–34 CPOI Device Selection H-27
H–35 JPOS Device Setup: Library Files H-28
H–36 JPOS Device Setup: jpos.xml directory H-30
H–37 POS Printer Support H-30
H–38 EJournal Options H-31
H–39 Value-Added Tax (VAT) H-32
H–40 User Interface Type H-32
H–41 Installation Progress H-33

H–42 Install Complete H-33

List of Tables

1–1 Client Software Requirements 1-2
1–2 Store Server Requirements 1-2
1–3 Client Hardware Requirements 1-4
1–4 ISD Authorization Transaction Set Tested 1-5
2–1 Server Tier Logical Components 2-3
2–2 Database Configuration Settings 2-3
2–3 <POS_install_directory> Subdirectories 2-21
2–4 <POS_install_directory>/pos Subdirectories 2-21
3–1 Server Tier Logical Components 3-3
3–2 Database Configuration Settings 3-3
3–3 <POS_install_directory> Subdirectories 3-21
3–4 <POS_install_directory>\pos Subdirectories 3-21
4–1 Server Tier Logical Components 4-2
4–2 Database Configuration Settings 4-3
4–3 <POS_install_directory> Subdirectories 4-21
4–4 <POS_install_directory>/pos Subdirectories 4-21
5–1 Server Tier Logical Components 5-2
5–2 Database Configuration Settings 5-3
5–3 <POS_install_directory> Subdirectories 5-19
5–4 <POS_install_directory>/pos Subdirectories 5-20
6–1 Server Tier Logical Components 6-2
6–2 Database Configuration Settings 6-3
6–3 <POS_install_directory> Subdirectories 6-20
6–4 <POS_install_directory>\pos Subdirectories 6-20
7–1 Server Tier Logical Components 7-2
7–2 Database Configuration Settings 7-3
7–3 <POS_install_directory> Subdirectories 7-20
7–4 <POS_install_directory>/pos Subdirectories 7-20

Send Us Your Comments

Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Installation Guide, Release 13.1.4

Oracle welcomes customers' comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this document.

Your feedback is important, and helps us to best meet your needs as a user of our products. For example:

- Are the implementation steps correct and complete?
- Did you understand the context of the procedures?
- Did you find any errors in the information?
- Does the structure of the information help you with your tasks?
- Do you need different information or graphics? If so, where, and in what format?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, then please tell us your name, the name of the company who has licensed our products, the title and part number of the documentation and the chapter, section, and page number (if available).

> **Note:** Before sending us your comments, you might like to check that you have the latest version of the document and if any concerns are already addressed. To do this, access the Online Documentation available on the Oracle Technology Network Web site. It contains the most current Documentation Library plus all documents revised or released recently.

Send your comments to us using the electronic mail address: retail-doc_us@oracle.com

Please give your name, address, electronic mail address, and telephone number (optional).

If you need assistance with Oracle software, then please contact your support representative or Oracle Support Services.

If you require training or instruction in using Oracle software, then please contact your Oracle local office and inquire about our Oracle University offerings. A list of Oracle offices is available on our Web site at http://www.oracle.com.

Preface

This Installation Guide describes the requirements and procedures to install this Oracle Retail Point-of-Service release.

Audience

This Installation Guide is written for the following audiences:

- Database Administrators (DBA)
- System analysts and designers
- Integrators and implementation staff

Related Documents

For more information, see the following documents in the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Release 13.1.4 documentation set:

- *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Release Notes*

Customer Support

To contact Oracle Customer Support, access My Oracle Support at the following URL:

https://support.oracle.com

When contacting Customer Support, please provide the following:

- Product version and program/module name
- Functional and technical description of the problem (include business impact)
- Detailed step-by-step instructions to re-create
- Exact error message received
- Screen shots of each step you take

Review Patch Documentation

When you install the application for the first time, you install either a base release (for example, 13.1) or a later patch release (for example, 13.1.3). If you are installing the base release, additional patch, and bundled hot fix releases, read the documentation for all releases that have occurred since the base release before you begin installation. Documentation for patch and bundled hot fix releases can contain critical information related to the base release, as well as information about code changes since the base release.

Oracle Retail Documentation on the Oracle Technology Network

Documentation is packaged with each Oracle Retail product release. Oracle Retail product documentation is also available on the following Web site:

http://www.oracle.com/technology/documentation/oracle_retail.html

(Data Model documents are not available through Oracle Technology Network. These documents are packaged with released code, or you can obtain them through My Oracle Support.)

Documentation should be available on this Web site within a month after a product release.

Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

Convention	Meaning
boldface	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.
italic	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
`monospace`	Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.

1

Preinstallation Tasks

This chapter defines the supported products for client and server systems in the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service system.

Note: The Oracle stack and IBM stack are the configurations that are supported for this release. The components required for each stack are listed in this chapter. For each component, the supported products and versions are included. While Point-of-Service may work in other configurations, these are the configurations that are supported for this release.

Patch Contents

Patch releases include all defect fixes that have been released through bundled hot fix releases since the last patch release. Patch releases may also include new defect fixes and enhancements that have not previously been included in any bundled hot fix release. This patch release contains all fixes from the following bundled hot fix releases:

- Oracle Retail Point-of-Service 13.1.3.1
- Oracle Retail Point-of-Service 13.1.3.2
- Oracle Retail Point-of-Service 13.1.3.3
- Oracle Retail Point-of-Service 13.1.3.4
- Oracle Retail Point-of-Service 13.1.3.5

Check Supported Oracle Retail Merchandise Operations Management Version

The integration with Oracle Retail Merchandise Operations Management requires version 13.1.4 of the following products:

- Oracle Retail Merchandising System
- Oracle Retail Price Management
- Oracle Retail Sales Audit

Check Supported Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management Version

The Item Inquiry feature of Oracle Retail Point-of-Service requires integration with Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management. Version 13.1.4 of Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management is required.

Check Supported Oracle Retail Returns Management Version

To use Oracle Retail Returns Management to authorize returns, version 2.1.4 of Oracle Retail Returns Management is required.

Check Supported Software

This section lists the software which is supported for this release.

Supported Software for Clients (Registers)

Table 1–1 lists the general software requirements for a client capable of running Point-of-Service and the versions supported for this release.

Table 1–1 Client Software Requirements

Supported on	Oracle Stack	IBM Stack
Operating System	Microsoft Windows Embedded for Point of Service (WEPOS), Version 1.1	IBM IRES v2.1.5
JDK/JRE	IBM JRE 1.5.0 Standard Edition	IBM JRE 1.5.0 Standard Edition
JavaPOS	JPOS 1.9.6	JPOS 1.9.6
Persistent Storage	Apache Derby 10.2.2	Apache Derby 10.2.2

Supported Software for Store Servers

Table 1–2 lists the general software requirements for a store server capable of running Point-of-Service and the versions supported for this release.

Table 1–2 Store Server Requirements

Supported on	Oracle Stack	IBM Stack
Operating System	▪ Oracle Linux 5 Update 2 (OL 5.2) for Linux x86-64 ▪ Red Hat Enterprise 5.2 (RHEL 5.2) for Linux x86-64 ▪ Windows 2003 Server	IBM IRES v2.1.5 SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9
Database	Oracle Database 11gR2 Enterprise Edition version 11.2.0.1 (64-bit)	IBM DB2 version 9.5 with fixpack 3b (64-bit)
JDK/JRE	Oracle's JDK version 1.5	IBM JRE version 1.5

ISD Software Version for Tender Authorization

ISD Key Management messaging is used for encrypting all sensitive data in the request messages to the ISD host switch. If ISD is used for tender authorization, ensure you have one of the following versions, or newer, of the ISD software:

- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Unix V5.2
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for iSeries V5.2
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Java V6.3

Check Supported Hardware

This section lists the hardware which is supported for this release.

Hardware Requirements

The hardware requirements for the store server and client depend on different variables.

You need to determine your hardware requirements, based on the variables mentioned here, as well as any additional variables specific to your environment. For more information, contact Customer Support.

Store Server

Specific hardware requirements for the machines running the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service store server depend on variables including the number of users and other applications running on the same machine.

Please note the following about the hardware requirements:

- The CPU requirement depends on variables including the number of Point-of-Service clients and the operating system and middleware selected.
- Memory requirements and performance depend on variables including the number of active promotions and best deal calculations.
- Disk size can vary based on the operating system and middleware requirements as well as the amount of data storage needed. Data storage depends on variables including the number of items and promotions defined, data retention period, and so on.

Client

Specific hardware requirements for the machines running the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service client depend upon the point-of-sale system/register manufacturer and other applications and utilities running on the client.

Peripheral Devices for Clients

JavaPOS is the industry standard for Java compatibility for retail-oriented devices. A committee of prominent retail vendors and end users maintains the standard. Some of the more common devices used with point-of-sale applications include bar code scanners, cash drawers, printers, keyboards, magnetic stripe readers (MSR), wedge keyboards, hard totals, and magnetic ink check readers (MICR). Any JavaPOS-compliant peripheral devices should work with Oracle Retail Point-of-Service, however, some may require software modifications to work properly.

Supported Hardware for Clients

Table 1–3 lists the general hardware requirements for a client capable of running Point-of-Service and the versions supported for this release. Mice are not supported for Point-of-Service. A touch screen may be used, but a keyboard is required for some functions. The tested configuration included touch screens.

Table 1–3 Client Hardware Requirements

Supported on	Oracle Stack	IBM Stack
Register	HP POS rp5700 RT047AV-POS	SurePOS 700 (741)
Cash drawer	HP cashdrawer #EY024AA	IBM cashdrawer
Pole Display	None	IBM pole display
Keyboard	HP USB POS Keyboard #EY025AA#ABA	IBM keyboard
Scanner	HP USB Barcode Scanner #EY022AA	Symbol Scanner LS2208
PIN Pad	▪ Ingenico eNTouch 6580 ▪ Verifone MX860	▪ Ingenico eNTouch 6580 ▪ Verifone MX860
Credit Card Reader	HP USB MSR #EY026AA	▪ Ingenico eNTouch 6580 ▪ Verifone MX860
Receipt Printer	HP USB Thermal Receipt Printer #EY023AA	▪ IBM printer 4610 ▪ IBM printer 4610-2CR

Check Java Key Store Requirement

Oracle Retail Point-of-Service requires that a Java Key Store is created prior to installation. Up to five jar files can be provided by the retailer to enable the connection between Oracle Retail Point-of-Service and the Key Store. Specific information for accessing the Key Store is entered on the Security Setup: Key Store installer screens.

If you are using the RSA Key Manager, you must use version 2.1.3 and install the Java Cryptography Extension Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files 5.0.

- For the Oracle stack on OEL or Red Hat Enterprise Linux, see "Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)" in Chapter 2.
- For the Oracle stack on Windows, see "Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)" in Chapter 3.
- For the IBM stack, see "Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)" in Chapter 4.

WARNING: A simulated key management package is bundled with Oracle Retail Point-of-Service. It is not compliant with either the Payment Application Data Security Standard (PA-DSS) or Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI-DSS). It is made available as a convenience for retailers and integrators. If you use the simulated key manager, you will not be PCI-DSS compliant. Therefore, the simulated key manager should be replaced with a compliant key manager.

Check Secure JDBC and Secure RMI

For information on enabling secure JDBC and RMI, see the following sections:

- For the Oracle stack on Linux, see "Securing Communication" in Chapter 2.
- For the Oracle stack on Windows, see "Securing Communication" in Chapter 3.
- For the IBM stack, see "Securing Communication" in Chapter 4.

ISD Authorization Transaction Testing

ISD authorization transaction testing was done with ISD Standard Interface version 266. The capture method used was terminal capture. The following applications were tested:

- ISD Host Switch version 6.3.1.004

Note: Host capture is not supported.

Table 1–4 shows the transaction types and messages that were tested.

Table 1–4 ISD Authorization Transaction Set Tested

Transaction Type	Transaction Type Message Sent from ISD to Point-of-Service
Check Tender	■ Check Sale Approval ■ Check Sale Authorization Offline ■ Check Sale Decline ■ Check Sale Referral
Credit Card Tender	■ Credit Card Sale Approval ■ Credit Card Sale Authorization Offline ■ Credit Card Sale Decline ■ Credit Card Sale Referral
Debit Card Tender	■ Debit Sale Approval ■ Debit Sale Authorization Offline ■ Debit Sale Decline
Gift Card Issue	■ Gift Card Issue Approval ■ Gift Card Issue Authorization Offline ■ Gift Card Issue Decline ■ Gift Card Issue Referral
Gift Card Redeem	■ Gift Card Redeem Approval ■ Gift Card Redeem Authorization Offline ■ Gift Card Redeem Decline
Gift Card Reload	■ Gift Card Reload Approval ■ Gift Card Reload Authorization Offline ■ Gift Card Reload Decline

Table 1–4 (Cont.) ISD Authorization Transaction Set Tested

Transaction Type	Transaction Type Message Sent from ISD to Point-of-Service
Gift Card Tender	■ Gift Card Sale Approval ■ Gift Card Sale Authorization Offline ■ Gift Card Sale Decline ■ Gift Card Sale Referral ■ Gift Card Sale Refund
House Account Enrollment	■ Credit Application Approval ■ Credit Application Decline **Note:** This functionality has had limited testing with ISD for this release due to the limitations of the available test environments.
House Account Payment	■ Credit Application Approval ■ Credit Application Decline **Note:** This functionality has had limited testing with ISD for this release due to the limitations of the available test environments.

Payment Application Data Security Standard

This release of Oracle Retail Point-of-Service complies with the requirements of the Payment Application Data Security Standard (PA-DSS).

The following document is available through My Oracle Support. Access My Oracle Support at the following URL:

https://support.oracle.com

Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions Security Implementation Guide **(Doc ID: 858613.1)**

This guide provides information on the PA-DSS requirements.

2

Installation on the Oracle Stack using Linux

This chapter provides information about the installation procedures for Oracle Retail Point-of-Service on the Oracle Stack. Installation of the server uses OEL or Red Hat Enterprise Linux and installation of the client uses Microsoft Windows.

Oracle Retail provides an installer for Point-of-Service, but customer installations typically develop custom procedures. Note that the installer is not appropriate for all installations. Oracle Retail expects implementation teams to develop custom procedures for actual register installations, which may or may not be based on the installer described here. For guidelines, see "Creating a Custom Installation".

Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users

The following recommendations should be considered for schema owners:

- Database administrators should create an individual schema owner for each application, unless the applications share the same data. In the case of Oracle Retail Back Office and Point-of-Service, the database schema owner are the same because these applications share a database.
- The schema owners should only have enough privileges to install the database.

For information on the best practices for passwords, see Appendix N.

Whether the database schema owner user and the data source user need to be created is dependent on whether Point-of-Service shares the database with Back Office:

- If Point-of-Service is sharing the database with Back Office, the same database schema owner is used for both products. Only the data source user for Point-of-Service needs to be created.
- If Point-of-Service is not sharing the database with Back Office, both the database schema owner and data source user need to be created.

To create the database schema owner:

1. Log in using the database administrator user ID.
2. Create a role in the database to be used for the schema owner.

   ```
   CREATE ROLE <schema_owner_role>;
   ```

3. Grant the privileges, shown in the following example, to the role.

   ```
   GRANT CREATE TABLE, CREATE VIEW, CREATE SEQUENCE, CREATE PROCEDURE, ALTER
   SESSION, CONNECT, SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE TO <schema_owner_role>;
   ```

4. Create the schema owner user in the database.

```
CREATE USER <schema_username>
IDENTIFIED BY <schema_password>
DEFAULT TABLESPACE users
TEMPORARY TABLESPACE TEMP
QUOTA UNLIMITED ON users;
```

5. Grant the schema owner role to the user.

```
GRANT <schema_owner_role> to <schema_username>;
```

To create the data source user:

1. If not already logged in, log in using the database administrator user ID.
2. Create a role in the database to be used for the data source user.

```
CREATE ROLE <data_source_role>;
```

3. Grant the privileges, shown in the following example, to the role.

```
GRANT CONNECT, CREATE SYNONYM, SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE TO
<data_source_role>;
```

4. Create the data source user.

```
CREATE USER <data_source_username>
IDENTIFIED BY <data_source_password>
DEFAULT TABLESPACE users
TEMPORARY TABLESPACE TEMP
QUOTA UNLIMITED ON users;
```

5. Grant the data source role to the user.

```
GRANT <data_source_role> to <data_source_username>;
```

The installer grants the data source user access to the application database objects.

Note: If the data source user, *<data_source_user>*, created for Point-of-Service is not the same user ID created for the Back Office data source user, the Point-of-Service user must be granted access to the database schema after the Point-of-Service server is installed. After running the installer, see "Enabling Access for the Data Source User".

Installing Point-of-Service

To establish an initial Oracle Retail Point-of-Service installation or to create a demonstration system, use the Point-of-Service installer as described in this section.

Determining Tier Type

Machines and logical components of the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service application are defined in Table 2–1:

Table 2–1 Server Tier Logical Components

Machine	Description
Store Server	The machine that runs the server component of Oracle Retail Point-of-Service. There is at least one store server for each store. This component runs as a service. This machine may also house the Back Office Server and other Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions components such as the OracleRetailStore database.
Point-of-Service Clients	The machines that execute the Point-of-Service transactions; they are typically cash registers.
Database Server	The machine that houses the OracleRetailStore databases. This machine may or may not be the same as the store server.
JMS Server	The machine that houses the JMS server software.

When you run the installer, it asks you to specify a Tier Type. The following types are available:

- N-Tier Client—Choose this when installing the client component.
- N-Tier Store Server—Choose this when installing the store server component.

Installing the Database

Oracle Retail products such as Point-of-Service and Back Office use the OracleRetailStore database. One OracleRetailStore database is typically installed in each store. Data stored in the OracleRetailStore database includes employee names, login information, and transaction data. The database can be located on the store server or on a separate machine acting as the database server. The database must be installed before Point-of-Service can be installed.

If you are using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, an additional database called the Scratchpad database is used. This database holds retrieved transactions. For more information on Centralized Transaction Retrieval, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.

Table 2–2 shows the database configuration information that is needed during installation.

Table 2–2 Database Configuration Settings

Installer Screen	Required Data
Transaction Retrieval Location	Choose the location for retrieving transactions. When using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, choose either the **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** option. **Note:** You must choose the same location for both the store server and client installations.

Table 2–2 (Cont.) Database Configuration Settings

Installer Screen	Required Data
Database Configuration	Enter the following information for the database: ■ JDBC driver path ■ Driver class name ■ Database URL ■ Jar name ■ Database schema owner user ID and password (for a client installation) ■ Data source user ID and password
Scratchpad Database Configuration	Enter the following information for the Scratchpad database: ■ JDBC driver path ■ Driver class name ■ Database URL ■ Jar name ■ Scratchpad database owner user ID and password
Logging Options	Choose how the log is exported. When using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, choose the **Data Replication Export** option.
Central Office/Back Office Server Information	Enter the host names and port numbers of the machines where the Central Office instance and the Back Office instance for this store server are located.

Required Settings for the Database

The following settings must be made during database creation:

- The database must be set to UTF8.
- When using the Oracle 11g database server, make the following changes to the system settings:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_NUMERIC_CHARACTERS = '.,-' SCOPE=SPFILE;
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_DATE_FORMAT ='YYYY-MM-DD' SCOPE=SPFILE;
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_TIMESTAMP_FORMAT = 'YYYY-MM-DD HH24:MI:SS.FF'
    SCOPE=SPFILE;
```

Installing Point-of-Service on Machines

If a previous version of Point-of-Service is installed on a machine, uninstall it by deleting the installation directory (the default directory is `/opt/OracleRetailStore` for the server and `C:\OracleRetailStore` for the client) or choose a different installation directory from the default.

Run the installer one time for each machine in the Server Tier and once for each register.

The installer performs the following steps. Not all steps apply to client and server installations.

- Installs Foundation, Retail Domain, and Oracle Retail Point-of-Service jar files.
- Installs database build scripts and start-up files.
- Defines Server Tier in the conduit script that starts Point-of-Service for the given machine.

- Defines hostnames or IP addresses and port numbers for the Store Server and database server.
- Defines device availability.
- Defines application properties for Store ID and Register Number.

Updating Device Configuration

If installing to a register using the Verifone MX860 device, refer to the instructions in *<POS_install_directory>*/config/device/verifone/mx860/InstallationInstructions.txt in order to prepare the device with the necessary forms and images.

Update the jpos.xml file to reflect the devices used on the machine. The typical location for this file is C:\POS\IBMJPOS\jpos.xml.

1. To configure the default scanner, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the jpos.xml file:

```
JposEntry logicalName="defaultScanner">

        <creation
factoryClass="com.extendyourstore.jpos.CrsJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.extendyourstore.jpos.Scanner.Simple3"/>
        <vendor name="360Commerce" url="http://www.360commerce.com"/>
        <jpos category="Scanner" version="1.5"/>
        <product description="360Commerce Serial Scanner"/>

        <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->

        <prop name="parity" type="String" value="0"/>
        <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="7"/>
        <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="9600"/>
        <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
        <prop name="suffix" type="String" value="13"/>
        <prop name="debug" type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="port" type="String" value="COM2"/>

</JposEntry>
```

2. Configure the signature capture screen.
   a. To configure the Ingenico device for signature capture, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the jpos.xml file. Set the portName value to the appropriate COM port. Change <pos_install_directory> to your installation directory for Point-of-Service.

      In the following example, these changes are shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiSignatureCapture">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.SignatureCaptureService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="SignatureCapture" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) SignatureCapture Service for
Ingenico 6580 Touch Screen" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
```

```
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="sigcap" type="String" value="sigcap.icg"/>
    <prop name="download" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="eftpver" type="String" value="0220"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="sigline" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="eftlver" type="String" value="0433"/>
    <prop name="sigStart" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="ConfigPath" type="String"
value="<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="eftpfile" type="String" value="./res/EFTP0220.1"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="sigTotal" type="Byte" value="30"/>
    <prop name="optimize" type="Boolean" value="true"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
</JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for signature capture, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiSignatureCapture">
<creation
actoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.SignatureCaptureService"/
>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Signature Capture" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx SignatureCaptureService"
name="VeriFone Signature Capture" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="SIGCAP_FORM" type="String" value="FA_SIGN"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="EndY" type="String" value="240"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="EndX" type="String" value="435"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String"
value="SignatureCaptureService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
```

```
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="StartY" type="String" value="180"/>
    <prop name="StartX" type="String" value="60"/>
    <prop name="StartTimeOut" type="String" value="0"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

3. Configure the customer interaction device screens.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the customer interaction device screens, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. Change `<pos_install_directory>` to your installation directory for Point-of-Service.

   In the following example, these changes are shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiGUI">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.FormService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="Form" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) Form Service for Ingenico
6580" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="eftlver" type="String" value="0433"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>

    <prop name="ConfigPath" type="String" value=
"<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/"/>
    <prop name="forms" type="String" value="
<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/i6580.forms"/>
    <prop name="Images" type="String" value="images.icg"/>
    <prop name="welcome" type="String" value="welcome.icg"/>
    <prop name="thanks" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="authmsg" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="msrprompt" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="plzwait" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="items" type="String" value="items.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenders" type="String" value="tenders.icg"/>
    <prop name="message" type="String" value="message.icg"/>
    <prop name="credConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="debitConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="giftConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect1" type="String" value="tendc.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect2" type="String" value="tendcd.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect3" type="String" value="tend3btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect4" type="String" value="tend4btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect5" type="String" value="tend2btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect6" type="String" value="tend3btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="sigcap" type="String" value="sigcap.icg"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="eftpver" type="String" value="0220"/>
    <prop name="numOfImages" type="Integer" value="4"/>
    <prop name="loopInterval" type="Integer" value="15"/>
```

```
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="attribute" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="optimize" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="item10" type="String" value="Cotton Shirt    "/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="ShowSplash" type="Boolean" value="true"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="font" type="Byte" value="2"/>
    <prop name="download" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for customer interaction device screens, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiGUI">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.LineDisplayService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Line Display" version="1.11"/>
   <product description="VeriFone mx8xx LineDisplayService" name="VeriFone
Line Display" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="3000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="FontSizeList" type="String" value="10,11,12,13,14,15"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="XDTXOptions" type="String" value="49409"/>
    <prop name="DeviceWindows" type="String" value="10"/>
    <prop name="FontName" type="String"
value="VeraMono|VeraMoBd|VeraMoIt|VeraMoBI"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="LineDisplayService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="ColorOptions" type="String" value="E4E1AE|000000|FF0000"/>
    <prop name="ScreenModeList" type="String"
value="19x53,18x45,16x40,14x40,14x35,13x35"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

4. Configure the PIN Pad device.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the PIN Pad device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiPINPad">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.PINPadService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="PINPad" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) PINPad Service for Ingenico
6580 Touch Screen" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="keyIndex" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="pinTimeout2" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="pinTimeout1" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
</JposEntry>
```

   b. To configure the Verifone device for the PIN Pad device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiPINPad">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.VFFormService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Form" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx VFFormService" name="VeriFone
Form" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>
    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="PINPAD_FORM" type="String" value="860_FA_PINE"/>
```

```
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="VFFormService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

5. Configure the MSR on the customer interaction device.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the MSR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiMSR">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.MSRService"/>
    <jpos category="MSR" version="1.72"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <product description="Ingenico i6580 MSR" name="Ingenico i6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="30000"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="impl" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ped" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ped_sav" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ulog" type="Byte" value="02"/>
    <prop name="logLevel" type="String" value="OFF"/>
    <prop name="logFile" type="String" value="../logs/i6580%g.log"/>
    <prop name="formatter" type="Integer" value="2"/>
</JposEntry>
```

   b. To configure the Verifone device for the MSR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiMSR">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.MSRService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Magnetic Stripe Reader" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx MSRService" name="VeriFone
Magnetic Stripe Reader" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>
```

```
        <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
    bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
        <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
        <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
        <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
        <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
        <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
    value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
        <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
        <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
        <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
        <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
        <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
        <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="MSRService"/>
        <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
        <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
        <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
        <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
    </JposEntry>
```

6. To configure the default printer, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultPrinter">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"/>
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.SdiIBM4610EPOSPrinter"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="POSPrinter" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) POSPrinter RS485 Service for IBM
4610 TI2/3/4/5/8/9 TM/F 6/7 Printer" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows
Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS485"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioDeviceNumber" type="String"
value="0x35"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioPortNumber" type="String"
value="0x11"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioSlotNumber" type="String"
value="0x01"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.SdiIBM4610EPOSPrinter"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.IBM4610PrinterServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

7. To configure the default MICR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultMICR">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBM4610MICR"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="MICR" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) MICR RS485 Service for IBM 4610
TI2/4/8/9 Printer" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3"
url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS485"/>
```

```
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBM4610MICR"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.MICRServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioSlotNumber" type="String"
value="0x01"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioPortNumber" type="String"
value="0x11"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioDeviceNumber" type="String"
value="0x35"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTableFile"
type="String" value="[file-path-goes-here]"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable4" type="String"
value="B778899001D154R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable3" type="String"
value="B667788990D153R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable2" type="String"
value="P123456780AAAAAXXSSS"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable1" type="String"
value="B445566778D151R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable0" type="String"
value="B334455667D150R"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.stripAccountDashes"
type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.stripTransitDashes"
type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.switchTransitDashToSpace"
type="String" value="false"/>
</JposEntry>
```

8. To configure the default keyboard, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultPOSKeyboard">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMPOSKeyboard"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="POSKeyboard" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) POSKeyboard PS2 Service for IBM
4820/ANKPOS/CANPOS/NANPOS/SureONE Keyboards" name="IBM JavaPOS for
Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.Click" type="Byte"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.functionNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.Typematic"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.ExtendedKeyMapping"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMPOSKeyboard"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.POSKeyboardServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.keyboardNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="PosKbd"/>
```

```
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.KbdScanning"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
</JposEntry>
```

9. To configure the default MSR, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultMSR">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"name="Ingenic
o ET1K Form Service for JavaPOS(TM) Standard"
                url="http://www.ingenico-us
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMMSR"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="MSR" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) MSR PS2 Service for IBM
ANKPOS/NANPOS/CANPOS/SureONE Keyboards" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows
Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="PosKbd"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.functionNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.keyboardNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMMSR"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.MSRServiceImp"/>
</JposEntry>
```

10. To configure the default cash drawer, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultCashDrawer">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMCashDrawer"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="CashDrawer" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) CashDrawer Service for IBM
SurePOS 300/72x/74x/78x-A" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3"
url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="Embedded"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMCashDrawer"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.CashDrawerServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

11. To configure the default line display, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultLineDisplay">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
```

```
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.LineDisplayLCVFD"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="LineDisplay" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) LineDisplay USB Service for IBM
Vaccum Fluorescent Display (VFD)-A" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version
1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.hid.usageId" type="String"
value="0x2400"/>
        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="HID"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.LineDisplayLCVFD"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.LineDisplayServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.hid.usagePage" type="String"
value="0xFF45"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

Expand the Point-of-Service Distribution

To extract the Point-of-Service files:

1. Extract the `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` file from the Point-of-Service 13.1.4 distribution EPD zip file.
2. Create a new staging directory for the Point-of-Service application distribution `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` file, for example, `/tmp/orpos/orpos-staging`.

   Note: The staging area (*<staging_directory>*) can exist anywhere on the system. It does not need to be under `ORACLE_HOME`.

3. Copy or upload the `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` file to *<staging_directory>* and extract its contents. The following files and directories should be created under *<staging_directory>*`/ORPOS-13.1.4`:

```
ant/
ant-ext/
antinstall/
installer-resources/
installer-templates/
product/
antinstall-config.xml
build.xml
build-antinstall.xml
build-common.xml
build-common-oas.xml
build-common-was.xml
build-conditions.xml
build-filesets.xml
build-filters.xml
build-properties.xml
checkdeps.cmd
checkdeps.sh
install.cmd
install.sh
prepare.xml
```

For the remainder of this chapter, *<staging_directory>*/ORPOS-13.1.4 is referred to as *<INSTALL_DIR>*.

Obtaining Third-Party Library Files Required by Point-of-Service

The Point-of-Service application uses specific files from Apache. Get the required files for the Derby database. You can get the download at the website:

http://db.apache.org/derby/releases/release-10.2.2.0.html

Extract the following files:

- derby.jar
- derbytools.jar

Obtaining the IBM JRE Required for Client Install

This release requires IBM JRE 1.5 for client installs. The download is available at the following website:

http://www-307.ibm.com/pc/support/site.wss/document.do?sitestyle=lenovo&lndocid=MIGR-56888

To install IBM JRE 1.5, select the following file link:

ibm-java2-ibmpc-jre-50-win-i386.exe

Securing Communication

Communication with the database and communication between the store server and registers can be secured.

- On the Enable Secure JDBC screen, you select whether secure JDBC will be used for communication with the database. See Figure A–16 in Appendix A.
  - If **Yes** is selected, the installer sets up the secure JDBC.
  - If **No** is selected and you want to manually set up the secure JDBC after the installer completes, see Appendix P or Appendix P.
- On the Enable Secure RMI screen, you select whether secure RMI will be used for communication between the store server and registers. See Figure A–21 in Appendix A and Figure C–17 in Appendix C.
  - If **Yes** is selected, the installer sets up the secure RMI.
  - If **No** is selected and you want to manually set up the secure RMI after the installer completes, see Appendix R.

Running the Point-of-Service Application Installer

This installer will configure and deploy the Point-of-Service application.

Note: To see details on every screen and field for a server installation, see Appendix A. To see details for a client installation, see Appendix C.

---

1. Change to the *<INSTALL_DIR>* directory.

2. Set the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable to the location of your jdk, for example, `/opt/j2sdk1.5`. The variable must be set to the location of the jdk and not the jre.

   Note: The installer is not compatible with versions of Java earlier than 1.5.

3. For the server, run the `install.sh` script. For the client, run the `install.cmd` script. This will launch the installer. After installation is complete, a detailed installation log file is created at `<POS_install_directory>/pos-install-yyyyMMddHHmm.log`

   In the log file name, `yyyyMMddHHmm` is the timestamp of the install.

   Note: The typical usage for GUI mode does not use arguments.

   ```
   install.sh
   ```

Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation

If the application installer encounters any errors, you can read them in the above mentioned log file.

For a list of common installation errors, see Appendix K.

Creating the Point-of-Service Database Schema

The scripts that create the Point-of-Service database schema can be run from the installed `pos/bin` directory. The database server can be on the same system as the application server or on a different system.

Creating with Oracle Retail Back Office

When Point-of-Service will be used with Back Office, create the database schema during the Back Office installation. See the *Oracle Retail Back Office Installation Guide* for information.

Then, as part of this installation, if **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** was selected for the Transaction Retrieval Location, run `scratchpad.sh` to create the Scratchpad database.

Creating without Oracle Retail Back Office

Note: Seed data includes sample data used to evaluate the application and demonstrate core functions of the software. There are references in the seed data to store ID 01291. During installation, if 01291 is selected for the store ID, SQL errors occur during the loading of the database. The SQL errors are caused by those references.

When Point-of-Service is being installed without Back Office, perform the following steps to create the Point-of-Service database schema:

1. Change to the `<POS_install_directory>/pos/bin directory`.

2. Set the JAVA_HOME and ANT_HOME environment variables.
3. Add $JAVA_HOME/bin and $ANT_HOME/bin to the front of the PATH environment variable.

```
PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$ANT_HOME/bin:$PATH; export PATH
```

4. Run one of the available dbbuild.sh targets to create the database schema, load data, and load the procedures for purging aged data in the database. For information on the purge procedures, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.
   - seed_data: loads seed data
   - load_purge_procedures: loads database purge procedures

   For example, dbbuild.sh seed_data
5. If **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** was selected for the Transaction Retrieval Location, run scratchpad.sh to create the Scratchpad database.

Enabling Access for the Data Source User

If the data source user, <*data_source_username*>, created for Point-of-Service is not the same user ID created for the Back Office data source user, the Point-of-Service user must be granted access to the database schema after the Point-of-Service server is installed.

To grant access to the database:

1. Change to the *<POS_install_directory>/<server>*/pos/bin directory.
2. Set the JAVA_HOME and ANT_HOME environment variables.
3. Add $JAVA_HOME/bin and $ANT_HOME/bin to the front of the PATH environment variable.

```
PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$ANT_HOME/bin:$PATH; export PATH
```

4. Run the following ant target.

```
ant -f db.xml -Dschema.user=<data_source_username>
-Dschema.password=<data_source_password> grant_schema
```

Installing Multibyte Fonts for eReceipt in the Client Installation

When an eReceipt is sent to a customer by e-mail, a pdf file that contains the eReceipt is attached to the e-mail. In order for this pdf file to print correctly with multibyte characters, the multibyte fonts must be defined in the client installation.

Point-of-Service uses Apache Formatting Objects Processor (FOP) to create eReceipts that are compatible with Adobe Acrobat. FOP and Adobe Acrobat require information about the fonts to use in the eReceipt. You must install and configure any mutlibyte fonts needed for eReceipts.

Note: Point-of-Service assumes that fonts are fixed-width for the formatting of receipts. If variable-width fonts are used, the fields on an eReceipt will not align properly.

To update the fonts in the client installation:

1. Install the required fonts.
2. Generate a font metrics file.

   The `fop.jar` file provides a TTFReader program to generate this file. The `fop.jar` file is available in the *<POS_install_directory>*`\360common\common\build` directory. The following are examples of the commands to use:

   - To specify a collection of fonts (TTC font):

     ```
     java -classpath <POS_install_directory>\<client>\360common\common\
     build\fop.jar org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader -ttcname "Gulim"
     c:\windows\fonts\gulim.ttc gulim.xml
     ```

   - To specify a specific font (TTF font):

     ```
     java -classpath <POS_install_directory>\<client>\360common\common\
     build\fop.jar org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader
     c:\windows\fonts\SIMSUN.TTF SIMSUN.xml
     ```

3. Update the configuration file at *<POS_install_directory>*`\`*<client>*`\pos\config\eReceiptFontConfig.xml`. Point-of-Service updates the FOP configuration to use the new fonts in addition to the standard fonts available. The following is an example of the structure of the configuration file based on the commands in the previous step.

   ```
   <configuration>
   ..................
   <fonts>
   ..................
   ..................
     <font metrics-file="c:\windows\config\gulim.xml"
   embed-file="c:\windows\fonts\gulim.ttc" kerning="yes">
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="normal" weight="normal"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="normal" weight="bold"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="italic" weight="normal"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="italic" weight="bold"/>
    </font>
   ..................
   ..................
   </fonts>
   ..................
   </configuration>
   ```

4. To use the new fonts, set the value for the `ereceipt.font.family` key in the *<POS_install_directory>*`\`*<client>*`\pos\config\application.properties` file. The following is an example of the setting:

   ```
   ereceipt.font.family=Gulim, SimSun, MingLiU, Gothic, Courier
   ```

> **Note:** eReceipt uses the Auto font selection strategy, which is the default font selection strategy. This strategy selects the first font from the list that is able to display the most characters in a word that contains characters that need different fonts.

Enabling Browser Functionality in the Client Installation

Point-of-Service provides the capability to access a website from a register using the **Browser** button on the Main Options screen. JDIC is required for this functionality.

To enable browser functionality:

1. Install JDIC on the client:
   a. The download is available at the following website:

      https://jdic.dev.java.net/servlets/ProjectDocumentList?expandedFolder-4183&folderID-5497

   b. Select **jdic-0.9.5**.
   c. Select the **jdic-0.9.5-bin-cross-platform.zip** file.
   d. Extract the contents.
   e. Copy the `jdic.jar` file and `Windows` directory to the *<POS_install_directory>*`\360common\common\build` directory.
2. Set up the Browser URL parameter. For information on this parameter, see the *Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions Configuration Guide*.
3. Verify that the desired browser is the system default.

Configuring for Offline Data Updates

Point-of-Service provides the capability to automatically update offline data to clients. The scheduling of the updates can be configured. This configuration involves updating parameters and the `ServiceContent.xml` file. For more information on offline data updates and how to configure the updates, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.

Setting up the Store Server to use ISD for Tender Authorization

Note: ISD Key Management messaging is used for encrypting all sensitive data in the request messages to the ISD host switch. Ensure you have one of the following versions, or newer, of the ISD software:

- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Unix V5.3
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for iSeries V5.3
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Java V6.4

If **ISD** was selected on the Tender Authorization screen, you must update the security for your JRE. See "Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)".

BIN Validation

The Bin File Lookup parameter, in the Tender parameter group, determines if BIN validation on credit cards is performed using a BIN file provided by the retailer. While results will vary by retailer, this parameter enables the retailer to reduce their interchange fees, that is, the amount a retailer is charged for authorization of credit cards.

To use the BIN file provided by the retailer, set the Bin File Lookup parameter to Yes. The default for this parameter is Yes.

Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)

If **ISD** was selected on the Tender Authorization screen or **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** was selected on the Security Setup: Key Store Settings screen, you must update the security for your JRE. You need to obtain version 5.0 of the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files.

1. Make a backup copy of `local_policy.jar` and `US_export_policy.jar`.
   - On the server:

     ```
     cd $JRE_HOME/lib/security
     mv local_policy.jar local_policy.jar.bak
     mv US_export_policy.jar US_export_policy.jar.bak
     ```

   - On the client:

     ```
     cd %JRE_HOME%\lib\security
     copy local_policy.jar local_policy.jar.bak
     copy US_export_policy.jar US_export_policy.jar.bak
     ```

2. Download version 5.0 of the JCE.
   a. Go to the following website:

      `http://java.sun.com/javase/downloads/index_jdk5.jsp`

   b. Under Other Downloads, find **Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files 5.0**.

   c. Click **Download**.

   d. Follow the instructions to download the JCE.

3. Copy the jar files into the JRE security directory. The files are bundled as `jce_policy-1_5_0.zip`.

Results of a Point-of-Service Installation

The default root directory for the store server is `opt/OracleRetailStore/Server`. For the client, the default directory is `C:\OracleRetailStore\Client`. In this guide, these directories are referred to as *<POS_install_directory>*. The subdirectories listed in Table 2–3 are created:

Table 2–3 <POS_install_directory> Subdirectories

Name	Contents
360common	Files shared by multiple Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions applications including Foundation or 360Platform, Domain, and third-party jar files
databases	Resources for various database types
jre	Contains the Java runtime environment
pos	Point-of-Service files

Important subdirectories of the `/pos` directory is shown in Table 2–4:

Table 2–4 <POS_install_directory>/pos Subdirectories

Name	Contents
bin	Startup batch files and shell scripts
lib	Point-of-Service application and resource jar files
lib/locales	Text bundles for localization
3rdparty	Third-party source files used by Point-of-Service only
config	XML configuration files, `.properties` files, and `.dat` files
logs	Log files (additional log files are in the `bin` directory)

Running Point-of-Service

You run the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service system by executing batch files or shell scripts, found in your installation's `bin` directory, to launch various components.

Note: For each command, a Linux file (such as `dbstart.sh`) exists.

To run Point-of-Service:

1. Start the store server:

   ```
   StoreServerConduit.sh
   ```

   When the message TierManager Started appears, the server has started. The server component does not have a user interface.

2. Start the registers.

   For each of the Point-of-Service registers, execute the conduit script that starts the Point-of-Service client component. Use the following command:

   ```
   ClientConduit.cmd
   ```

3. Verify the installation on each register by logging in to Point-of-Service.

   If the login is successful and the status bar indicates the database is online, the installation is complete.

Creating a Custom Installation

A custom installation of Point-of-Service can use one of several approaches:

- Install Point-of-Service using the installer on a reference machine, and copy the resulting installation to other machines.
  - With this method, you can change the configuration settings of the installation as described in the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide* until the installation works as desired, then propagate those configurations to other machines.
  - You can copy just the installation directory to a new machine, or if the hardware is sufficiently similar, you can copy the entire hard drive image to the machine. Copying the entire hard drive retains the JavaPOS installation as well as any other customizations.
  - You must change the WorkstationID value for the target machines to a unique number. This value can be found in `<POS_install_directory>/pos/config/application.properties`.
- Create a custom installer which allows for various hardware options but specifies the software choices your company has chosen.

Note: By default, installation of a register requires the following IBM Install Set parameter to have a specific value:

- Hard Total must be Off.

3

Installation on the Oracle Stack using Windows

This chapter provides information about the installation procedures for Oracle Retail Point-of-Service on the Oracle Stack using Windows.

Oracle Retail provides an installer for Point-of-Service, but customer installations typically develop custom procedures. Note that the installer is not appropriate for all installations. Oracle Retail expects implementation teams to develop custom procedures for actual register installations, which may or may not be based on the installer described here. For guidelines, see "Creating a Custom Installation".

Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users

The following recommendations should be considered for schema owners:

- Database administrators should create an individual schema owner for each application, unless the applications share the same data. In the case of Oracle Retail Back Office and Point-of-Service, the database schema owner are the same because these applications share a database.
- The schema owners should only have enough privileges to install the database.

For information on the best practices for passwords, see Appendix N.

Whether the database schema owner user and the data source user need to be created is dependent on whether Point-of-Service shares the database with Back Office:

- If Point-of-Service is sharing the database with Back Office, the same database schema owner is used for both products. Only the data source user for Point-of-Service needs to be created.
- If Point-of-Service is not sharing the database with Back Office, both the database schema owner and data source user need to be created.

To create the database schema owner:

1. Log in using the database administrator user ID.
2. Create a role in the database to be used for the schema owner.

   ```
   CREATE ROLE <schema_owner_role>;
   ```

3. Grant the privileges, shown in the following example, to the role.

   ```
   GRANT CREATE TABLE, CREATE VIEW, CREATE SEQUENCE, CREATE PROCEDURE, ALTER
   SESSION, CONNECT, SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE TO <schema_owner_role>;
   ```

4. Create the schema owner user in the database.

```
CREATE USER <schema_username>
IDENTIFIED BY <schema_password>
DEFAULT TABLESPACE users
TEMPORARY TABLESPACE TEMP
QUOTA UNLIMITED ON users;
```

5. Grant the schema owner role to the user.

```
GRANT <schema_owner_role> to <schema_username>;
```

To create the data source user:

1. If not already logged in, log in using the database administrator user ID.
2. Create a role in the database to be used for the data source user.

```
CREATE ROLE <data_source_role>;
```

3. Grant the privileges, shown in the following example, to the role.

```
GRANT CONNECT, CREATE SYNONYM, SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE TO
<data_source_role>;
```

4. Create the data source user.

```
CREATE USER <data_source_username>
IDENTIFIED BY <data_source_password>
DEFAULT TABLESPACE users
TEMPORARY TABLESPACE TEMP
QUOTA UNLIMITED ON users;
```

5. Grant the data source role to the user.

```
GRANT <data_source_role> to <data_source_username>;
```

The installer grants the data source user access to the application database objects.

Note: If the data source user, *<data_source_user>*, created for Point-of-Service is not the same user ID created for the Back Office data source user, the Point-of-Service user must be granted access to the database schema after the Point-of-Service server is installed. After running the installer, see "Enabling Access for the Data Source User".

Installing Point-of-Service

To establish an initial Oracle Retail Point-of-Service installation or to create a demonstration system, use the Point-of-Service installer as described in this section.

Determining Tier Type

Machines and logical components of the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service application are defined in Table 3–1:

Table 3–1 Server Tier Logical Components

Machine	Description
Store Server	The machine that runs the server component of Oracle Retail Point-of-Service. There is at least one store server for each store. This component runs as a service. This machine may also house the Back Office Server and other Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions components such as the OracleRetailStore database.
Point-of-Service Clients	The machines that execute the Point-of-Service transactions; they are typically cash registers.
Database Server	The machine that houses the OracleRetailStore databases. This machine may or may not be the same as the store server.
JMS Server	The machine that houses the JMS server software.

When you run the installer, it asks you to specify a Tier Type. The following types are available:

- N-Tier Client—Choose this when installing the client component.
- N-Tier Store Server—Choose this when installing the store server component.

Installing the Database

Oracle Retail products such as Point-of-Service and Back Office use the OracleRetailStore database. One OracleRetailStore database is typically installed in each store. Data stored in the OracleRetailStore database includes employee names, logon information, and transaction data. The database can be located on the store server or on a separate machine acting as the database server. The database must be installed before Point-of-Service can be installed.

If you are using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, an additional database called the Scratchpad database is used. This database holds retrieved transactions. For more information on Centralized Transaction Retrieval, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.

Table 3–2 shows the database configuration information that is needed during installation.

Table 3–2 Database Configuration Settings

Installer Screen	Required Data
Transaction Retrieval Location	Choose the location for retrieving transactions. When using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, choose either the **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** option. **Note:** You must choose the same location for both the store server and client installations.

Table 3–2 (Cont.) Database Configuration Settings

Installer Screen	Required Data
Database Configuration	Enter the following information for the database: ■ JDBC driver path ■ Driver class name ■ Database URL ■ Jar name ■ Database schema owner user ID and password ■ Data source user ID and password
Scratchpad Database Configuration	Enter the following information for the Scratchpad database: ■ JDBC driver path ■ Driver class name ■ Database URL ■ Jar name ■ Scratchpad database owner user ID and password
Logging Options	Choose how the log is exported. When using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, choose the **Data Replication Export** option.
Central Office/Back Office Server Information	Enter the host names and port numbers of the machines where the Central Office instance and the Back Office instance for this store server are located.

Required Settings for the Database

The following settings must be made during database creation:

- The database must be set to UTF8.
- When using the Oracle 11g database server, make the following changes to the system settings:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_NUMERIC_CHARACTERS = '.,-' SCOPE=SPFILE;
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_DATE_FORMAT ='YYYY-MM-DD' SCOPE=SPFILE;
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_TIMESTAMP_FORMAT = 'YYYY-MM-DD HH24:MI:SS.FF'
    SCOPE=SPFILE;
```

Installing Point-of-Service on Machines

If a previous version of Point-of-Service is installed on a machine, uninstall it by deleting the installation directory (the default directory is `c:\OracleRetailStore`) or choose a different installation directory from the default.

Run the installer one time for each machine in the Server Tier and once for each register.

The installer performs the following steps. Not all steps apply to client and server installations.

- Installs Foundation, Retail Domain, and Oracle Retail Point-of-Service jar files.
- Installs database build scripts and start-up files.
- Defines Server Tier in the conduit script that starts Point-of-Service for the given machine.

- Defines hostnames or IP addresses and port numbers for the Store Server and database server.
- Defines device availability.
- Defines application properties for Store ID and Register Number.

Updating Device Configuration

If installing to a register using the Verifone MX860 device, refer to the instructions in *<POS_install_directory>*\config\device\verifone\mx860\InstallationInstructions.txt in order to prepare the device with the necessary forms and images.

Update the jpos.xml file to reflect the devices used on the machine. The typical location for this file is C:\POS\IBMJPOS\jpos.xml.

1. To configure the default scanner, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the jpos.xml file:

```
JposEntry logicalName="defaultScanner">

        <creation
factoryClass="com.extendyourstore.jpos.CrsJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.extendyourstore.jpos.Scanner.Simple3"/>
        <vendor name="360Commerce" url="http://www.360commerce.com"/>
        <jpos category="Scanner" version="1.5"/>
        <product description="360Commerce Serial Scanner"/>

        <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->

        <prop name="parity" type="String" value="0"/>
        <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="7"/>
        <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="9600"/>
        <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
        <prop name="suffix" type="String" value="13"/>
        <prop name="debug" type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="port" type="String" value="COM2"/>

</JposEntry>
```

2. Configure the signature capture screen.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for signature capture, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the jpos.xml file. Set the portName value to the appropriate COM port. Change <pos_install_directory> to your installation directory for Point-of-Service.

      In the following example, these changes are shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiSignatureCapture">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.SignatureCaptureService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="SignatureCapture" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) SignatureCapture Service for
Ingenico 6580 Touch Screen" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
```

```
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="sigcap" type="String" value="sigcap.icg"/>
    <prop name="download" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="eftpver" type="String" value="0220"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="sigline" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="eftlver" type="String" value="0433"/>
    <prop name="sigStart" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="ConfigPath" type="String"
value="<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="eftpfile" type="String" value="./res/EFTP0220.1"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="sigTotal" type="Byte" value="30"/>
    <prop name="optimize" type="Boolean" value="true"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
</JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for signature capture, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiSignatureCapture">
<creation
actoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.SignatureCaptureService"/
>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Signature Capture" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx SignatureCaptureService"
name="VeriFone Signature Capture" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="SIGCAP_FORM" type="String" value="FA_SIGN"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="EndY" type="String" value="240"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="EndX" type="String" value="435"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String"
value="SignatureCaptureService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
```

```
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="StartY" type="String" value="180"/>
    <prop name="StartX" type="String" value="60"/>
    <prop name="StartTimeOut" type="String" value="0"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

3. Configure the customer interaction device screens.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the customer interaction device screens, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. Change `<pos_install_directory>` to your installation directory for Point-of-Service.

   In the following example, these changes are shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiGUI">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.FormService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="Form" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) Form Service for Ingenico
6580" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="eftlver" type="String" value="0433"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>

    <prop name="ConfigPath" type="String" value=
"<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/"/>
    <prop name="forms" type="String" value="
<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/i6580.forms"/>
    <prop name="Images" type="String" value="images.icg"/>
    <prop name="welcome" type="String" value="welcome.icg"/>
    <prop name="thanks" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="authmsg" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="msrprompt" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="plzwait" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="items" type="String" value="items.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenders" type="String" value="tenders.icg"/>
    <prop name="message" type="String" value="message.icg"/>
    <prop name="credConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="debitConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="giftConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect1" type="String" value="tendc.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect2" type="String" value="tendcd.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect3" type="String" value="tend3btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect4" type="String" value="tend4btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect5" type="String" value="tend2btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect6" type="String" value="tend3btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="sigcap" type="String" value="sigcap.icg"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="eftpver" type="String" value="0220"/>
    <prop name="numOfImages" type="Integer" value="4"/>
    <prop name="loopInterval" type="Integer" value="15"/>
```

```
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="attribute" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="optimize" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="item10" type="String" value="Cotton Shirt    "/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="ShowSplash" type="Boolean" value="true"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="font" type="Byte" value="2"/>
    <prop name="download" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for customer interaction device screens, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiGUI">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.LineDisplayService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Line Display" version="1.11"/>
   <product description="VeriFone mx8xx LineDisplayService" name="VeriFone
Line Display" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="3000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="FontSizeList" type="String" value="10,11,12,13,14,15"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="XDTXOptions" type="String" value="49409"/>
    <prop name="DeviceWindows" type="String" value="10"/>
    <prop name="FontName" type="String"
value="VeraMono|VeraMoBd|VeraMoIt|VeraMoBI"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="LineDisplayService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="ColorOptions" type="String" value="E4E1AE|000000|FF0000"/>
    <prop name="ScreenModeList" type="String"
value="19x53,18x45,16x40,14x40,14x35,13x35"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

4. Configure the PIN Pad device.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the PIN Pad device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiPINPad">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.PINPadService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="PINPad" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) PINPad Service for Ingenico
6580 Touch Screen" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="keyIndex" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="pinTimeout2" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="pinTimeout1" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
</JposEntry>
```

   b. To configure the Verifone device for the PIN Pad device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiPINPad">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.VFFormService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Form" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx VFFormService" name="VeriFone
Form" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>
    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="PINPAD_FORM" type="String" value="860_FA_PINE"/>
```

```
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="VFFormService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

5. Configure the MSR on the customer interaction device.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the MSR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiMSR">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.MSRService"/>
    <jpos category="MSR" version="1.72"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <product description="Ingenico i6580 MSR" name="Ingenico i6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="30000"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="impl" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ped" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ped_sav" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ulog" type="Byte" value="02"/>
    <prop name="logLevel" type="String" value="OFF"/>
    <prop name="logFile" type="String" value="../logs/i6580%g.log"/>
    <prop name="formatter" type="Integer" value="2"/>
</JposEntry>
```

   b. To configure the Verifone device for the MSR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiMSR">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.MSRService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Magnetic Stripe Reader" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx MSRService" name="VeriFone
Magnetic Stripe Reader" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>
```

```
        <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
    bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
        <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
        <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
        <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
        <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
        <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
    value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
        <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
        <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
        <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
        <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
        <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
        <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="MSRService"/>
        <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
        <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
        <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
        <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
    </JposEntry>
```

6. To configure the default printer, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultPrinter">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"/>
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.SdiIBM4610EPOSPrinter"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="POSPrinter" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) POSPrinter RS485 Service for IBM
4610 TI2/3/4/5/8/9 TM/F 6/7 Printer" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows
Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS485"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioDeviceNumber" type="String"
value="0x35"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioPortNumber" type="String"
value="0x11"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioSlotNumber" type="String"
value="0x01"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.SdiIBM4610EPOSPrinter"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.IBM4610PrinterServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

7. To configure the default MICR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultMICR">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBM4610MICR"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="MICR" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) MICR RS485 Service for IBM 4610
TI2/4/8/9 Printer" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3"
url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS485"/>
```

```
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBM4610MICR"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.MICRServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioSlotNumber" type="String"
value="0x01"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioPortNumber" type="String"
value="0x11"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioDeviceNumber" type="String"
value="0x35"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTableFile"
type="String" value="[file-path-goes-here]"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable4" type="String"
value="B778899001D154R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable3" type="String"
value="B667788990D153R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable2" type="String"
value="P123456780AAAAAXXSSS"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable1" type="String"
value="B445566778D151R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable0" type="String"
value="B334455667D150R"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.stripAccountDashes"
type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.stripTransitDashes"
type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.switchTransitDashToSpace"
type="String" value="false"/>
</JposEntry>
```

8. To configure the default keyboard, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultPOSKeyboard">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMPOSKeyboard"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="POSKeyboard" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) POSKeyboard PS2 Service for IBM
4820/ANKPOS/CANPOS/NANPOS/SureONE Keyboards" name="IBM JavaPOS for
Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.Click" type="Byte"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.functionNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.Typematic"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.ExtendedKeyMapping"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMPOSKeyboard"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.POSKeyboardServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.keyboardNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="PosKbd"/>
```

```
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.KbdScanning"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
</JposEntry>
```

9. To configure the default MSR, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultMSR">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"name="Ingenic
o ET1K Form Service for JavaPOS(TM) Standard"
                url="http://www.ingenico-us
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMMSR"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="MSR" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) MSR PS2 Service for IBM
ANKPOS/NANPOS/CANPOS/SureONE Keyboards" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows
Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="PosKbd"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.functionNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.keyboardNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMMSR"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.MSRServiceImp"/>
</JposEntry>
```

10. To configure the default cash drawer, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultCashDrawer">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMCashDrawer"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="CashDrawer" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) CashDrawer Service for IBM
SurePOS 300/72x/74x/78x-A" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3"
url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="Embedded"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMCashDrawer"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.CashDrawerServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

11. To configure the default line display, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultLineDisplay">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
```

```
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.LineDisplayLCVFD"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="LineDisplay" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) LineDisplay USB Service for IBM
Vaccum Fluorescent Display (VFD)-A" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version
1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.hid.usageId" type="String"
value="0x2400"/>
        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="HID"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.LineDisplayLCVFD"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.LineDisplayServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.hid.usagePage" type="String"
value="0xFF45"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

Expand the Point-of-Service Distribution

To extract the Point-of-Service files:

1. Extract the `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` file from the Point-of-Service 13.1.4 distribution EPD zip file.
2. Create a new staging directory for the Point-of-Service application distribution `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` file, for example, `c:\tmp\orpos\orpos-staging`.

   Note: The staging area (*<staging_directory>*) can exist anywhere on the system. It does not need to be under `ORACLE_HOME`.

3. Copy or upload `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` to *<staging_directory>* and extract its contents. The following files and directories should be created under *<staging_directory>*`\ORPOS-13.1.4`:

```
ant\
ant-ext\
antinstall\
installer-resources\
installer-templates\
product\
antinstall-config.xml
build.xml
build-antinstall.xml
build-common.xml
build-common-oas.xml
build-common-was.xml
build-conditions.xml
build-filesets.xml
build-filters.xml
build-properties.xml
checkdeps.cmd
checkdeps.sh
install.cmd
install.sh
prepare.xml
```

For the remainder of this chapter, *<staging_directory>*\ORPOS-13.1.4 is referred to as *<INSTALL_DIR>*.

Obtaining Third-Party Library Files Required by Point-of-Service

The Point-of-Service application uses specific files from Apache. Get the required files for the Derby database. You can get the download at the website:

http://db.apache.org/derby/releases/release-10.2.2.0.cgi

Extract the following files:

- derby.jar
- derbytools.jar

Obtaining the IBM JRE Required for Client Install

This release requires IBM JRE 1.5 for client installs. The download is available at the following website:

http://www-307.ibm.com/pc/support/site.wss/document.do?sitestyle=lenovo&lndocid=MIGR-56888

To install IBM JRE 1.5, select the following file link:

ibm-java2-ibmpc-jre-50-win-i386.exe

Securing Communication

Communication with the database and communication between the store server and registers can be secured.

- On the Enable Secure JDBC screen, you select whether secure JDBC will be used for communication with the database. See Figure B–16 in Appendix B.
  - If **Yes** is selected, the installer sets up the secure JDBC.
  - If **No** is selected and you want to manually set up the secure JDBC after the installer completes, see Appendix P or Appendix P.
- On the Enable Secure RMI screen, you select whether secure RMI will be used for communication between the store server and registers. See Figure B–21 in Appendix B and Figure C–17 in Appendix C.
  - If **Yes** is selected, the installer sets up the secure RMI.
  - If **No** is selected and you want to manually set up the secure RMI after the installer completes, see Appendix R.

Running the Point-of-Service Application Installer

This installer will configure and deploy the Point-of-Service application.

Note: To see details on every screen and field for a server installation, see Appendix B. To see details for a client installation, see Appendix C.

---

1. Change to the *<INSTALL_DIR>* directory.

2. Set the JAVA_HOME environment variable to the location of your jdk, for example, C:\j2sdk1.5. The variable must be set to the location of the jdk and not the jre.

   Note: The installer is not compatible with versions of Java earlier than 1.5.

3. Run the install.cmd script. This will launch the installer. After installation is complete, a detailed installation log file is created at *<POS_install_directory>*/pos-install-yyyyMMddHHmm.log

   In the log file name, yyyyMMddHHmm is the timestamp of the install.

   Note: The typical usage for GUI mode does not use arguments.

   ```
   install.cmd
   ```

Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation

If the application installer encounters any errors, you can read them in the above mentioned log file.

For a list of common installation errors, see Appendix K.

Creating the Point-of-Service Database Schema

The scripts that create the Point-of-Service database schema can be run from the installed pos/bin directory. The database server can be on the same system as the application server or on a different system.

Creating with Oracle Retail Back Office

When Point-of-Service will be used with Back Office, create the database schema during the Back Office installation. See the *Oracle Retail Back Office Installation Guide* for information.

Then, as part of this installation, if **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** was selected for the Transaction Retrieval Location, run scratchpad.bat to create the Scratchpad database.

Creating without Oracle Retail Back Office

Note: Seed data includes sample data used to evaluate the application and demonstrate core functions of the software. There are references in the seed data to store ID 01291. During installation, if 01291 is selected for the store ID, SQL errors occur during the loading of the database. The SQL errors are caused by those references.

When Point-of-Service is being installed without Back Office, perform the following steps to create the Point-of-Service database schema:

1. Change to the *<POS_install_directory>*\pos\bin directory.

2. Set the JAVA_HOME and ANT_HOME environment variables.
3. Add $JAVA_HOME\bin and $ANT_HOME\bin to the front of the PATH environment variable.

   ```
   PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$ANT_HOME/bin:$PATH; export PATH
   ```

4. Run one of the available dbbuild.bat targets to create the database schema, load data, and load the procedures for purging aged data in the database. For information on the purge procedures, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.
   - seed_data: loads seed data
   - load_purge_procedures: loads database purge procedures

   For example, dbbuild seed_data
5. If **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** was selected for the Transaction Retrieval Location, run scratchpad.bat to create the Scratchpad database.

Enabling Access for the Data Source User

If the data source user, <*data_source_username*>, created for Point-of-Service is not the same user ID created for the Back Office data source user, the Point-of-Service user must be granted access to the database schema after the Point-of-Service server is installed.

To grant access to the database:

1. Change to the <*POS_install_directory*>\server\pos\bin directory.
2. Set the JAVA_HOME and ANT_HOME environment variables.
3. Add $JAVA_HOME\bin and $ANT_HOME\bin to the front of the PATH environment variable.

   ```
   PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$ANT_HOME/bin:$PATH; export PATH
   ```

4. Run the following ant target.

   ```
   ant -f db.xml -Dschema.user=<data_source_username>
   -Dschema.password=<data_source_password> grant_schema
   ```

Installing Multibyte Fonts for eReceipt in the Client Installation

When an eReceipt is sent to a customer by e-mail, a pdf file that contains the eReceipt is attached to the e-mail. In order for this pdf file to print correctly with multibyte characters, the multibyte fonts must be defined in the client installation.

Point-of-Service uses Apache Formatting Objects Processor (FOP) to create eReceipts that are compatible with Adobe Acrobat. FOP and Adobe Acrobat require information about the fonts to use in the eReceipt. You must install and configure any mutlibyte fonts needed for eReceipts.

Note: Point-of-Service assumes that fonts are fixed-width for the formatting of receipts. If variable-width fonts are used, the fields on an eReceipt will not align properly.

To update the fonts in the client installation:

1. Install the required fonts.
2. Generate a font metrics file.

   The `fop.jar` file provides a TTFReader program to generate this file. The `fop.jar` file is available in the *<POS_install_directory>*`\360common\common\build` directory. The following are examples of the commands to use:

   - To specify a collection of fonts (TTC font):

     ```
     java -classpath <POS_install_directory>\<client>\360common\common\
     build\fop.jar org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader -ttcname "Gulim"
     c:\windows\fonts\gulim.ttc gulim.xml
     ```

   - To specify a specific font (TTF font):

     ```
     java -classpath <POS_install_directory>\<client>\360common\common\
     build\fop.jar org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader
     c:\windows\fonts\SIMSUN.TTF SIMSUN.xml
     ```

3. Update the configuration file at *<POS_install_directory>*`\`*<client>*`\pos\config\eReceiptFontConfig.xml`. Point-of-Service updates the FOP configuration to use the new fonts in addition to the standard fonts available. The following is an example of the structure of the configuration file based on the commands in the previous step.

   ```
   <configuration>
   ..................
   <fonts>
   ..................
   ..................
     <font metrics-file="c:\windows\config\gulim.xml"
   embed-file="c:\windows\fonts\gulim.ttc" kerning="yes">
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="normal" weight="normal"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="normal" weight="bold"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="italic" weight="normal"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="italic" weight="bold"/>
    </font>
   ..................
   ..................
   </fonts>
   ..................
   </configuration>
   ```

4. To use the new fonts, set the value for the `ereceipt.font.family` key in the *<POS_install_directory>*`\`*<client>*`\pos\config\application.properties` file. The following is an example of the setting:

   ```
   ereceipt.font.family=Gulim, SimSun, MingLiU, Gothic, Courier
   ```

> **Note:** eReceipt uses the Auto font selection strategy, which is the default font selection strategy. This strategy selects the first font from the list that is able to display the most characters in a word that contains characters that need different fonts.

Enabling Browser Functionality in the Client Installation

Point-of-Service provides the capability to access a website from a register using the **Browser** button on the Main Options screen. JDIC is required for this functionality.

To enable browser functionality:

1. Install JDIC on the client:
   a. The download is available at the following website:

      https://jdic.dev.java.net/servlets/ProjectDocumentList?expandedFolder-4183&folderID-5497

   b. Select **jdic-0.9.5**.
   c. Select the **jdic-0.9.5-bin-cross-platform.zip** file.
   d. Extract the contents.
   e. Copy the `jdic.jar` file and `Windows` directory to the *<POS_install_directory>*`\360common\common\build` directory.
2. Set up the Browser URL parameter. For information on this parameter, see the *Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions Configuration Guide*.
3. Verify that the desired browser is the system default.

Configuring for Offline Data Updates

Point-of-Service provides the capability to automatically update offline data to clients. The scheduling of the updates can be configured. This configuration involves updating parameters and the `ServiceContent.xml` file. For more information on offline data updates and how to configure the updates, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.

Setting up the Server to use ISD for Tender Authorization

Note: ISD Key Management messaging is used for encrypting all sensitive data in the request messages to the ISD host switch. Ensure you have one of the following versions, or newer, of the ISD software:

- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Unix V5.3
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for iSeries V5.3
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Java V6.4

If **ISD** was selected on the Tender Authorization screen, you must update the security for your JRE. See "Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)".

If **ISD** was selected on the Tender Authorization screen, you must update the security for your JRE. You need to obtain version 5.0 of the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files.

1. Download version 5.0 of the JCE.
   a. Go to the following website:

      http://java.sun.com/javase/downloads/index_jdk5.jsp

   b. Under Other Downloads, find **Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files 5.0**.
   c. Click **Download**.
   d. Follow the instructions to download the JCE.
2. Copy the jar files into the JRE security directory. The files are bundled as `jce_policy-1_5_0.zip`.
   a. Make a backup copy of `local_policy.jar` and `US_export_policy.jar`.

      ```
      cd %JRE_HOME%\lib\security
      copy local_policy.jar local_policy.jar.bak
      copy US_export_policy.jar US_export_policy.jar.bak
      ```

   b. Copy in the new policy jar files.

      ```
      cd C:\<temp>
      copy local_policy.jar %JRE_HOME%\lib\security
      copy US_export_policty.jar %JRE_HOME%\lib\security
      ```

3. The store server can now be started.

BIN Validation

The Bin File Lookup parameter, in the Tender parameter group, determines if BIN validation on credit cards is performed using a BIN file provided by the retailer. While results will vary by retailer, this parameter enables the retailer to reduce their interchange fees, that is, the amount a retailer is charged for authorization of credit cards.

To use the BIN file provided by the retailer, set the Bin File Lookup parameter to Yes. The default for this parameter is Yes.

Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)

If **ISD** was selected on the Tender Authorization screen or **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** was selected on the Security Setup: Key Store Settings screen, you must update the security for your JRE. You need to obtain version 5.0 of the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files.

1. Make a backup copy of `local_policy.jar` and `US_export_policy.jar`.
   - On the server:

     ```
     cd %JRE_HOME%\lib\security
     copy local_policy.jar local_policy.jar.bak
     copy US_export_policy.jar US_export_policy.jar.bak
     ```

- On the client:

```
cd %JRE_HOME%\lib\security
copy local_policy.jar local_policy.jar.bak
copy US_export_policy.jar US_export_policy.jar.bak
```

2. Download version 5.0 of the JCE.
   a. Go to the following website:

      http://java.sun.com/javase/downloads/index_jdk5.jsp

   b. Under Other Downloads, find **Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files 5.0**.
   c. Click **Download**.
   d. Follow the instructions to download the JCE.
3. Copy the jar files into the JRE security directory. The files are bundled as `jce_policy-1_5_0.zip`.

Results of a Point-of-Service Installation

The default root directory for OracleRetailStore applications on Windows for the store server is `c:\OracleRetailStore\Server`. For the client, the default directory is `c:\OracleRetailStore\Client`. In this guide, these directories are referred to as *<POS_install_directory>*. The subdirectories listed in Table 3–3 are created:

Table 3–3 <POS_install_directory> Subdirectories

Name	Contents
360common	Files shared by multiple Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions applications including Foundation or 360Platform, Domain, and third-party jar files
databases	Resources for various database types
jre	Contains the Java runtime environment
pos	Point-of-Service files

Important subdirectories of the `\pos directory` is shown in Table 3–4:

Table 3–4 <POS_install_directory>\pos Subdirectories

Name	Contents
bin	Startup batch files and shell scripts
lib	Point-of-Service application and resource jar files
lib\locales	Text bundles for localization
3rdparty	Third-party source files used by Point-of-Service only
config	XML configuration files, `.properties` files, and `.dat` files
logs	Log files (additional log files are in the `bin` directory)

Running Point-of-Service

You run the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service system by executing batch files or shell scripts, found in your installation's `bin` directory, to launch various components.

> **Note:** For each command, a Windows batch file (such as `dbstart.bat`) exists.

To run Point-of-Service:

1. Start the store server:

   `StoreServerConduit.bat`

   When the message TierManager Started appears, the server has started. The server component does not have a user interface.

2. Start the registers.

   For each of the Point-of-Service registers, execute the conduit script that starts the Point-of-Service client component. Use the following command:

   `ClientConduit.bat`

3. Verify the installation on each register by logging in to Point-of-Service.

   If the login is successful and the status bar indicates the database is online, the installation is complete.

Creating a Custom Installation

A custom installation of Point-of-Service can use one of several approaches:

- Install Point-of-Service using the installer on a reference machine, and copy the resulting installation to other machines.
  - With this method, you can change the configuration settings of the installation as described in the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide* until the installation works as desired, then propagate those configurations to other machines.
  - You can copy just the installation directory to a new machine, or if the hardware is sufficiently similar, you can copy the entire hard drive image to the machine. Copying the entire hard drive retains the JavaPOS installation as well as any other customizations.
  - You must change the WorkstationID value for the target machines to a unique number. This value can be found in `<POS_install_directory>\pos\config\application.properties`.
- Create a custom installer which allows for various hardware options but specifies the software choices your company has chosen.

> **Note:** By default, installation of a register requires certain IBM Install Set parameters to have specific values:
>
> - Hard Total must be Off.

4

Installation on the IBM Stack

This chapter provides information about the installation procedures for Oracle Retail Point-of-Service on the IBM stack using Linux.

Oracle Retail provides an installer for Point-of-Service, but customer installations typically develop custom procedures. Note that the installer is not appropriate for all installations. Oracle Retail expects implementation teams to develop custom procedures for actual register installations, which may or may not be based on the installer described here. For guidelines, see "Creating a Custom Installation".

Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users

The following recommendations should be considered for schema owners:

- Database administrators should create an individual schema owner for each application, unless the applications share the same data. In the case of Oracle Retail Back Office and Point-of-Service, the database schema owner are the same because these applications share a database.
- The schema owners should only have enough privileges to install the database.

For information on the best practices for passwords, see Appendix N.

Whether the database schema owner and the data source users need to be created is dependent on whether Point-of-Service shares the database with Back Office:

- If Point-of-Service is sharing the database with Back Office, the same database schema owner is used for both products. Only the data source user for Point-of-Service needs to be created.
- If Point-of-Service is not sharing the database with Back Office, both the database schema owner and data source user need to be created.

To create the database schema owner:

1. Log in using the database administrator user ID.
2. Create the schema owner user.

   ```
   CREATE SCHEMA <schema_name> AUTHORIZATION <schema_username>
   ```

3. Grant the privileges, shown in the following example, to the user.

   ```
   GRANT CREATETAB, BINDADD, CONNECT, IMPLICIT_SCHEMA ON DATABASE TO USER
   <schema_username>
   ```

4. Grant the following object level privileges to the schema owner user.

```
GRANT CREATEIN, DROPIN, ALTERIN ON SCHEMA <schema_name> TO USER
<schema_username> WITH GRANT OPTION
```

To create the data source user:

1. If not already logged in, log in using the database administrator user ID.
2. Create the data source user.

```
CREATE SCHEMA <data_source_schema_name> AUTHORIZATION <data_source_username>
```

3. Grant the privileges, shown in the following example, to the data source user.

```
GRANT CONNECT, IMPLICIT_SCHEMA ON DATABASE TO USER <data_source_username>
```

4. Grant the following object level privileges to the data source user.

```
GRANT CREATEIN ON SCHEMA <data_source_schema_name> TO USER <data_source_
username> WITH GRANT OPTION
```

The installer grants the data source user access to the application database objects.

Note: If the data source user, <*data_source_username*>, created for Point-of-Service is not the same user ID created for the Back Office data source user, the Point-of-Service user must be granted access to the database schema after the Point-of-Service server is installed. After running the installer, see "Enabling Access for the Data Source User".

Installing Point-of-Service

To establish an initial Oracle Retail Point-of-Service installation or to create a demonstration system, use the Point-of-Service installer as described in this section.

Determining Tier Type

Machines and logical components of the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service application are defined in Table 4–1:

Table 4–1 Server Tier Logical Components

Machine	Description
Store Server	The machine that runs the server component of Oracle Retail Point-of-Service. There is at least one store server for each store. This component runs as a service. This machine may also house the Back Office Server and other Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions components such as the OracleRetailStore database.
Point-of-Service Clients	The machines that execute the Point-of-Service transactions; they are typically cash registers.
Database Server	The machine that houses the OracleRetailStore databases. This machine may or may not be the same as the store server.
JMS Server	The machine that houses the JMS server software.

When you run the installer, it asks you to specify a Tier Type. The following types are available:

- N-Tier Client—Choose this when installing the client component.
- N-Tier Store Server—Choose this when installing the store server component.

Installing the Database

Oracle Retail products such as Point-of-Service and Back Office use the OracleRetailStore database. One OracleRetailStore database is typically installed in each store. Data stored in the OracleRetailStore database includes employee names, login information, and transaction data. The database can be located on the store server or on a separate machine acting as the database server. The database must be installed before Point-of-Service can be installed.

If you are using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, an additional database called the Scratchpad database is used. This database holds retrieved transactions. For more information on Centralized Transaction Retrieval, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.

Table 4–2 shows the database configuration information that is needed during installation.

Table 4–2 Database Configuration Settings

Installer Screen	Required Data
Transaction Retrieval Location	Choose the location for retrieving transactions. When using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, choose either the **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** option. Note: You must choose the same location for both the store server and client installations.
Database Configuration	Enter the following information for the database: ■ JDBC driver path ■ Driver class name ■ Database URL ■ Jar name ■ Database schema owner user ID and password ■ Database user ID and password
Scratchpad Database Configuration	Enter the following information for the Scratchpad database: ■ JDBC driver path ■ Driver class name ■ Database URL ■ Jar name ■ Database user ID and password
Logging Options	Choose how the log is exported. When using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, choose the **Data Replication Export** option.
Central Office/Back Office Server Information	Enter the host names of the machines where the Central Office and Back Office instances for this store server are located.

Required Settings for the Database

The following settings must be made during database creation:

- The database must be set to UTF8.
- When using the Oracle 11g database server, make the following changes to the system settings:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_NUMERIC_CHARACTERS = '.,-' SCOPE=SPFILE;
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_DATE_FORMAT ='YYYY-MM-DD' SCOPE=SPFILE;
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_TIMESTAMP_FORMAT = 'YYYY-MM-DD HH24:MI:SS.FF'
    SCOPE=SPFILE;
```

Installing Point-of-Service on Machines

If a previous version of Point-of-Service is installed on a machine, uninstall it by deleting the installation directory (the default directory is `/opt/OracleRetailStore`) or choose a different installation directory from the default.

Run the installer one time for each machine in the Server Tier and once for each register.

The installer performs the following steps. Not all steps apply to client and server installations.

- Installs Foundation, Retail Domain, and Oracle Retail Point-of-Service jar files.
- Installs database build scripts and start-up files.
- Defines Server Tier in the conduit script that starts Point-of-Service for the given machine.
- Defines hostnames or IP addresses and port numbers for the Store Server and database server.
- Defines device availability.
- Defines application properties for Store ID and Register Number.

Updating Device Configuration

If installing to a register using the Verifone MX860 device, refer to the instructions in *<POS_install_directory>*`/config/device/verifone/mx860/InstallationInstructions.txt` in order to prepare the device with the necessary forms and images.

The devices used on the machine are defined in the `jpos.xml` file.

Note: IBM devices can be configured using the auto-config option. If problems are encountered using auto-config, turn off the auto-config option and configure the devices manually.

To turn off auto-config, update the `jpos.properties` file. The typical location for this file is `/opt/ibm/javapos/etc/jpos/jpos.properties`. Replace the existing entries with the following:

```
#jpos.config.regPopulatorClass=com.ibm.jpos.tools.autoconfig.SDIPopulator

jpos.config.populator.class.0=jpos.config.simple.xml.SimpleXmlRegPopulator
jpos.config.populator.class.1=jpos.config.simple.SimpleRegPopulator
```

Update the `jpos.xml` file to reflect the devices used on the machine. The typical location for this file is `/opt/ibm/javapos/etc/jpos.xml`.

1. To configure the default scanner, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
JposEntry logicalName="defaultScanner">

        <creation
factoryClass="com.extendyourstore.jpos.CrsJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.extendyourstore.jpos.Scanner.Simple3"/>
        <vendor name="360Commerce" url="http://www.360commerce.com"/>
        <jpos category="Scanner" version="1.5"/>
        <product description="360Commerce Serial Scanner"/>

        <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->

        <prop name="parity" type="String" value="0"/>
        <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="7"/>
        <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="9600"/>
        <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
        <prop name="suffix" type="String" value="13"/>
        <prop name="debug" type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="port" type="String" value="COM2"/>

</JposEntry>
```

2. Configure the signature capture screen.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for signature capture, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. Change `<pos_install_directory>` to your installation directory for Point-of-Service.

      In the following example, these changes are shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiSignatureCapture">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.SignatureCaptureService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="SignatureCapture" version="1.7.250"/>
   <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) SignatureCapture Service for
Ingenico 6580 Touch Screen" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="sigcap" type="String" value="sigcap.icg"/>
    <prop name="download" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="eftpver" type="String" value="0220"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="sigline" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="eftlver" type="String" value="0433"/>
```

```
    <prop name="sigStart" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="ConfigPath" type="String"
value="<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="eftpfile" type="String" value="./res/EFTP0220.1"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="sigTotal" type="Byte" value="30"/>
    <prop name="optimize" type="Boolean" value="true"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
</JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for signature capture, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiSignatureCapture">
<creation
actoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.SignatureCaptureService"/
>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Signature Capture" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx SignatureCaptureService"
name="VeriFone Signature Capture" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="SIGCAP_FORM" type="String" value="FA_SIGN"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="EndY" type="String" value="240"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="EndX" type="String" value="435"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String"
value="SignatureCaptureService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="StartY" type="String" value="180"/>
    <prop name="StartX" type="String" value="60"/>
    <prop name="StartTimeOut" type="String" value="0"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

3. Configure the customer interaction device screens.

a. To configure the Ingenico device for the customer interaction device screens, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. Change

<pos_install_directory> to your installation directory for Point-of-Service.

In the following example, these changes are shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiGUI">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.FormService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="Form" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) Form Service for Ingenico
6580" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="eftlver" type="String" value="0433"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>

    <prop name="ConfigPath" type="String" value=
"<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/"/>
    <prop name="forms" type="String" value="
<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/i6580.forms"/>
    <prop name="Images" type="String" value="images.icg"/>
    <prop name="welcome" type="String" value="welcome.icg"/>
    <prop name="thanks" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="authmsg" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="msrprompt" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="plzwait" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="items" type="String" value="items.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenders" type="String" value="tenders.icg"/>
    <prop name="message" type="String" value="message.icg"/>
    <prop name="credConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="debitConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="giftConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect1" type="String" value="tendc.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect2" type="String" value="tendcd.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect3" type="String" value="tend3btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect4" type="String" value="tend4btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect5" type="String" value="tend2btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect6" type="String" value="tend3btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="sigcap" type="String" value="sigcap.icg"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="eftpver" type="String" value="0220"/>
    <prop name="numOfImages" type="Integer" value="4"/>
    <prop name="loopInterval" type="Integer" value="15"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="attribute" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="optimize" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="item10" type="String" value="Cotton Shirt    "/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="ShowSplash" type="Boolean" value="true"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
```

```
    <prop name="font" type="Byte" value="2"/>
    <prop name="download" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for customer interaction device screens, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiGUI">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.LineDisplayService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Line Display" version="1.11"/>
   <product description="VeriFone mx8xx LineDisplayService" name="VeriFone
Line Display" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="3000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="FontSizeList" type="String" value="10,11,12,13,14,15"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="XDTXOptions" type="String" value="49409"/>
    <prop name="DeviceWindows" type="String" value="10"/>
    <prop name="FontName" type="String"
value="VeraMono|VeraMoBd|VeraMoIt|VeraMoBI"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="LineDisplayService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="ColorOptions" type="String" value="E4E1AE|000000|FF0000"/>
    <prop name="ScreenModeList" type="String"
value="19x53,18x45,16x40,14x40,14x35,13x35"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

4. Configure the PIN Pad device.

a. To configure the Ingenico device for the PIN Pad device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiPINPad">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.PINPadService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="PINPad" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) PINPad Service for Ingenico
```

```
6580 Touch Screen" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="keyIndex" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="pinTimeout2" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="pinTimeout1" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
</JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for the PIN Pad device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiPINPad">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.VFFormService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Form" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx VFFormService" name="VeriFone
Form" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>
    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="PINPAD_FORM" type="String" value="860_FA_PINE"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="VFFormService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

5. Configure the MSR on the customer interaction device.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the MSR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiMSR">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.MSRService"/>
    <jpos category="MSR" version="1.72"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <product description="Ingenico i6580 MSR" name="Ingenico i6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="30000"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="impl" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ped" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ped_sav" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ulog" type="Byte" value="02"/>
    <prop name="logLevel" type="String" value="OFF"/>
    <prop name="logFile" type="String" value="../logs/i6580%g.log"/>
    <prop name="formatter" type="Integer" value="2"/>
</JposEntry>
```

   b. To configure the Verifone device for the MSR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiMSR">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.MSRService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Magnetic Stripe Reader" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx MSRService" name="VeriFone
Magnetic Stripe Reader" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
```

```
        <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
        <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
        <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
        <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="MSRService"/>
        <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
        <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
        <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
        <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
    </JposEntry>
```

6. To configure the default printer, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultPrinter">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"/>
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.SdiIBM4610EPOSPrinter"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="POSPrinter" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) POSPrinter RS485 Service for IBM
4610 TI2/3/4/5/8/9 TM/F 6/7 Printer" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows
Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS485"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioDeviceNumber" type="String"
value="0x35"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioPortNumber" type="String"
value="0x11"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioSlotNumber" type="String"
value="0x01"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.SdiIBM4610EPOSPrinter"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.IBM4610PrinterServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

7. To configure the default MICR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultMICR">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBM4610MICR"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="MICR" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) MICR RS485 Service for IBM 4610
TI2/4/8/9 Printer" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3"
url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS485"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBM4610MICR"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.MICRServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioSlotNumber" type="String"
value="0x01"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioPortNumber" type="String"
value="0x11"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioDeviceNumber" type="String"
```

```
value="0x35"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTableFile"
type="String" value="[file-path-goes-here]"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable4" type="String"
value="B778899001D154R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable3" type="String"
value="B667788990D153R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable2" type="String"
value="P123456780AAAAAXXSSS"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable1" type="String"
value="B445566778D151R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable0" type="String"
value="B334455667D150R"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.stripAccountDashes"
type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.stripTransitDashes"
type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.switchTransitDashToSpace"
type="String" value="false"/>
</JposEntry>
```

8. To configure the default keyboard, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultPOSKeyboard">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMPOSKeyboard"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="POSKeyboard" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) POSKeyboard PS2 Service for IBM
4820/ANKPOS/CANPOS/NANPOS/SureONE Keyboards" name="IBM JavaPOS for
Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.Click" type="Byte"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.functionNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.Typematic"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.ExtendedKeyMapping"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMPOSKeyboard"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.POSKeyboardServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.keyboardNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="PosKbd"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.KbdScanning"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
</JposEntry>
```

9. To configure the default MSR, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultMSR">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"name="Ingenic
```

```
o ET1K Form Service for JavaPOS(TM) Standard"
                url="http://www.ingenico-us
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMMSR"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="MSR" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) MSR PS2 Service for IBM
ANKPOS/NANPOS/CANPOS/SureONE Keyboards" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows
Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="PosKbd"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.functionNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.keyboardNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMMSR"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.MSRServiceImp"/>
</JposEntry>
```

10. To configure the default cash drawer, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultCashDrawer">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMCashDrawer"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="CashDrawer" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) CashDrawer Service for IBM
SurePOS 300/72x/74x/78x-A" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3"
url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="Embedded"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMCashDrawer"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.CashDrawerServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

11. To configure the default line display, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultLineDisplay">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.LineDisplayLCVFD"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="LineDisplay" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) LineDisplay USB Service for IBM
Vaccum Fluorescent Display (VFD)-A" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version
1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.hid.usageId" type="String"
value="0x2400"/>
        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="HID"/>
```

```
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.LineDisplayLCVFD"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.LineDisplayServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.hid.usagePage" type="String"
value="0xFF45"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

Expand the Point-of-Service Distribution

To extract the Point-of-Service files:

1. Extract the `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` file from the Point-of-Service 13.1.4 distribution EPD zip file.
2. Create a new staging directory for the Point-of-Service application distribution `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` file, for example, `/tmp/orpos/orpos-staging`.

   Note: The staging area (*<staging_directory>*) can exist anywhere on the system. It does not need to be under `ORACLE_HOME`.

3. Copy or upload `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` to *<staging_directory>* and extract its contents. The following files and directories should be created under *<staging_directory>*`/ORPOS-13.1.4`:

```
ant/
ant-ext/
antinstall/
installer-resources/
installer-templates/
product/
antinstall-config.xml
build.xml
build-antinstall.xml
build-common.xml
build-common-oas.xml
build-common-was.xml
build-conditions.xml
build-filesets.xml
build-filters.xml
build-properties.xml
checkdeps.cmd
checkdeps.sh
install.cmd
install.sh
prepare.xml
```

For the remainder of this chapter, *<staging_directory>*`/ORPOS-13.1.4` is referred to as *<INSTALL_DIR>*.

Obtaining Third-Party Library Files Required by Point-of-Service

The Point-of-Service application uses specific files from WebSphere and Apache. To obtain the necessary files:

1. Some WebSphere specific files are needed to make use of JMS. Extract the required files from the following locations:
   - *<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*/WebSphere/AppServer/plugins/com.ibm.ws.runtime_6.1.0.xx.jar
   - *<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*/WebSphere/AppServer/runtimes/com.ibm.ws.admin.client_6.1.0.xx.jar
   - *<MQ_INSTALL_DIR>*/java/lib/jms.jar
   - *<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*/lib/WMQ/java/lib/com.ibm.mqjms.jar
   - *<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*/lib/WMQ/java/lib/com.ibm.mq.jar
   - *<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*/lib/WMQ/java/lib/dhbcore.jar
2. Get the required files for the Derby database. You can get the download at the website:

   http://db.apache.org/derby/releases/release-10.2.2.0.html

   Extract the following files:
   - derby.jar
   - derbytools.jar

Securing Communication

Communication with the database and communication between the store server and registers can be secured.

- On the Enable Secure JDBC screen, you select whether secure JDBC will be used for communication with the database. See Figure D–17 in Appendix D.
  - If **Yes** is selected, the installer sets up the secure JDBC.
  - If **No** is selected and you want to manually set up the secure JDBC after the installer completes, see Appendix Q.
- On the Enable Secure RMI screen, you select whether secure RMI will be used for communication between the store server and registers. See Figure D–23 in Appendix D and Figure E–18 in Appendix E.
  - If **Yes** is selected, the installer sets up the secure RMI.
  - If **No** is selected and you want to manually set up the secure RMI after the installer completes, see Appendix R.

Obtaining the Required IBM JRE

This release requires IBM JRE 1.5 for server and client installs. The downloads are available at the following website. You need an IBM ID, which you can request from the Sign in screen, in order to log in to this website.

https://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/iwm/web/reg/download.do?source=sdk5&S_PKG=intel5sr6&S_TACT=105AGX05&S_CMP=JDK&lang=en_US&cp=UTF-8

Once logged in, download both the JRE and Java Communication API:

1. To download the JRE, select the following tgz format file.

   `ibm-java2-jre-5.0-6.0-linux-i386.tgz`

2. To download the Java Communication API, select the following tgz format file.

   `ibm-java2-javacomm-5.0-6.0-linux-i386.tgz`

Running the Point-of-Service Application Installer

This installer will configure and deploy the Point-of-Service application.

Note: To see details on every screen and field for a server installation, see Appendix D. To see details for a client installation, see Appendix E.

---

1. Change to the *<INSTALL_DIR>* directory.
2. Set the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable to the location of your jdk, for example, `/opt/j2sdk1.5`. The variable must be set to the location of the jdk and not the jre.

   Note: The installer is not compatible with versions of Java earlier than 1.5.

   ---

3. Change the mode of `install.sh` to executable.
4. Run `install.sh`. After installation is complete, a detailed installation log file is created at *<POS_install_directory>*`/pos-install-yyyyMMddHHmm.log`.

   In the log file name, `yyyyMMddHHmm` is the timestamp of the install.

   Note: The typical usage for GUI mode does not use arguments.

   ```
   install.sh
   ```

Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation

If the application installer encounters any errors, you can read them in the above mentioned log file.

For a list of common installation errors, see Appendix K.

Creating the Point-of-Service Database Schema

The scripts that create the Point-of-Service database schema can be run from the installed `pos/bin` directory. The database server can be on the same system as the application server or on a different system.

Creating with Oracle Retail Back Office

When Point-of-Service will be used with Back Office, create the database schema during the Back Office installation. See the *Oracle Retail Back Office Installation Guide* for information.

Then, as part of this installation, if **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** was selected for the Transaction Retrieval Location, run `scratchpad.sh` to create the Scratchpad database.

Creating without Oracle Retail Back Office

> **Note:** Seed data includes sample data used to evaluate the application and demonstrate core functions of the software. There are references in the seed data to store ID 01291. During installation, if 01291 is selected for the store ID, SQL errors occur during the loading of the database. The SQL errors are caused by those references.

When Point-of-Service is being installed without Back Office, perform the following steps to create the Point-of-Service database schema.

1. Change to the *<POS_install_directory>*`/pos/bin directory`.
2. Set the `JAVA_HOME` and `ANT_HOME` environment variables.
3. Add `$JAVA_HOME/bin` and `$ANT_HOME/bin` to the front of the PATH environment variable.

   ```
   PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$ANT_HOME/bin:$PATH; export PATH
   ```

4. Run one of the available `dbbuild.sh` targets to create the database schema, load data, and load the procedures for purging aged data in the database. For information on the purge procedures, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.
   - seed_data: loads seed data
   - test_data: loads test data
   - load_purge_procedures: loads database purge procedures

   For example, `dbbuild.sh seed_data`
5. If **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** was selected for the Transaction Retrieval Location, run `scratchpad.bat` to create the Scratchpad database.

Enabling Access for the Data Source User

If the data source user, *<data_source_user>*, created for Point-of-Service is not the same user ID created for the Back Office data source user, the Point-of-Service user must be granted access to the database schema after the Point-of-Service server is installed.

To grant access to the database:

1. Change to the *<POS_install_directory>*`/server/pos/bin` directory.
2. Set the `JAVA_HOME` and `ANT_HOME` environment variables.
3. Add `$JAVA_HOME/bin` and `$ANT_HOME/bin` to the front of the PATH environment variable.

   ```
   PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$ANT_HOME/bin:$PATH; export PATH
   ```

4. Run the following ant target.

   ```
   ant -f db.xml -Dschema.user=<data_source_user>
   -Dschema.password=<data_source_user_password> grant_schema
   ```

Installing Multibyte Fonts for eReceipt in the Client Installation

When an eReceipt is sent to a customer by e-mail, a pdf file that contains the eReceipt is attached to the e-mail. In order for this pdf file to print correctly with multibyte characters, the multibyte fonts must be defined in the client installation.

Point-of-Service uses Apache Formatting Objects Processor (FOP) to create eReceipts that are compatible with Adobe Acrobat. FOP and Adobe Acrobat require information about the fonts to use in the eReceipt. You must install and configure any mutlibyte fonts needed for eReceipts.

Note: Point-of-Service assumes that fonts are fixed-width for the formatting of receipts. If variable-width fonts are used, the fields on an eReceipt will not align properly.

To update the fonts in the client installation:

1. Install the required fonts.
2. Generate a font metrics file.

   The `fop.jar` file provides a TTFReader program to generate this file. The `fop.jar` file is available in the *<POS_install_directory>*`/`*<client>*`/360common/common/build` directory. The following are examples of the commands to use:

   - To specify a collection of fonts (TTC font):

     ```
     java -classpath <POS_install_directory>/<client>/360common/common/
     build/fop.jar org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader -ttcname "Gulim"
     /home/oracle/fonts/gulim.ttc gulim.xml
     ```

   - To specify a specific font (TTF font):

     ```
     java -classpath <POS_install_directory>/<client>/360common/common/
     build/fop.jar org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader
     /home/oracle/fonts/SIMSUN.TTF SIMSUN.xml
     ```

3. Update the configuration file at *<POS_install_directory>*`/`*<client>*`/pos/config/eReceiptFontConfig.xml`. Point-of-Service updates the FOP configuration to use the new fonts in addition to the standard fonts available. The following is an example of the structure of the configuration file based on the commands in the previous step.

   ```
   <configuration>
   ..................
   <fonts>
   ..................
   ..................
     <font metrics-file="/home/oracle/config/gulim.xml"
   embed-file="/home/oracle/fonts/gulim.ttc" kerning="yes">
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="normal" weight="normal"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="normal" weight="bold"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="italic" weight="normal"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="italic" weight="bold"/>
    </font>
   ..................
   ..................
   </fonts>
   ```

```
.................
</configuration>
```

4. To use the new fonts, set the value for the `ereceipt.font.family` key in the *<POS_install_directory>*`/`*<client>*`/pos/config/application.properties` file. The following is an example of the setting:

```
ereceipt.font.family=Gulim, SimSun, MingLiU, Gothic, Courier
```

> **Note:** eReceipt uses the Auto font selection strategy, which is the default font selection strategy. This strategy selects the first font from the list that is able to display the most characters in a word that contains characters that need different fonts.

Enabling Browser Functionality in the Client Installation

Point-of-Service provides the capability to access a website from a register using the **Browser** button on the Main Options screen. JDIC is required for this functionality.

To enable browser functionality:

1. Install JDIC on the client:
   a. The download is available at the following website:

      https://jdic.dev.java.net/servlets/ProjectDocumentList?expandedFolder-4183&folderID-5497

   b. Select **jdic-0.9.5**.
   c. Select the **jdic-0.9.5-bin-cross-platform.zip** file.
   d. Extract the contents.
   e. Copy the `jdic.jar` file and `Linux` directory to the *<POS_install_directory>*`/360common/common/build` directory.
   f. Make a copy of `libjdic.so` in the `linux/x86` JDIC directory and rename it to `jdic.so`. The file needs to be renamed because the JDIC code looks for `jdic.so`, but the file provided by JDIC is named `libjdic.so`.
2. Set up `MOZILLA_FIVE_HOME`, for example:

```
export MOZILLA_FIVE_HOME=/usr/local/mozilla
```

3. Add the `jdic.jar` file to `CLASSPATH`, for example:

```
export CLASSPATH=/OracleRetailStore/Client/360common/common/build/jdic.jar
```

4. Add the folder containing `libjdic.so` to `PATH`, for example:

```
export PATH=/OracleRetailStore/Client/360common/common/build/linux/x86/:$PATH
```

5. Set up the Browser URL parameter. For information on this parameter, see the *Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions Configuration Guide*.
6. Verify that the desired browser is the system default.

Verify the Permissions for Mozilla

Execute permission should be set for the following:

- The installed Mozilla directory.
- The `Linux` folder copied from the JDIC package to the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service client directory.

For example, you can use the following command to set execute permission:

```
chmod -R 777 /usr/local/mozilla/
```

Configuring for Offline Data Updates

Point-of-Service provides the capability to automatically update offline data to clients. The scheduling of the updates can be configured. This configuration involves updating parameters and the `ServiceContext.xml` file. For more information on offline data updates and how to configure the updates, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.

Setting up the Store Server to use ISD for Tender Authorization

---

Note: ISD Key Management messaging is used for encrypting all sensitive data in the request messages to the ISD host switch. Ensure you have one of the following versions, or newer, of the ISD software:

- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Unix V5.3
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for iSeries V5.3
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Java V6.4

If **ISD** was selected on the Tender Authorization screen, you must update the security for your JRE. See "Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)".

BIN Validation

The Bin File Lookup parameter, in the Tender parameter group, determines if BIN validation on credit cards is performed using a BIN file provided by the retailer. While results will vary by retailer, this parameter enables the retailer to reduce their interchange fees, that is, the amount a retailer is charged for authorization of credit cards.

To use the BIN file provided by the retailer, set the Bin File Lookup parameter to Yes. The default for this parameter is Yes.

Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)

If you are using RSA Key Manager, you must update the security for your JRE. You need to obtain version 1.4.2+ of the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files. The 1.4.2+ version for the JCE Unlimited Strength Encryption is compatible with the IBM Java5 JRE.

1. Make a backup copy of `local_policy.jar` and `US_export_policy.jar`.

```
cd <WAS_INSTALL_DIR>/java/jre/lib/security
mv local_policy.jar local_policy.jar.bak
mv US_export_policy.jar US_export_policy.jar.bak
```

2. Download version 1.4.2+ of JCE.
   a. Go to the following website:

      http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/java/jdk/security/50/

   b. Click **IBM SDK Policy Files**. You are prompted to log in. You need an IBM ID, which you can request from the Sign in screen, in order to log in to this website.
   c. After you log in, follow the instructions to download the JCE.
3. Copy the jar files into the JRE security directory. The files are bundled as `unrestricted.zip`.

Results of a Point-of-Service Installation

The default root directory for OracleRetailStore applications on Linux is `opt/OracleRetailStore`. In this guide, this directory is referred to as *<POS_install_directory>*. The subdirectories listed in Table 4–3 are created:

Table 4–3 <POS_install_directory> Subdirectories

Name	Contents
360common	Files shared by multiple Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions applications including Foundation or 360Platform, Domain, and third-party jar files
databases	Resources for various database types
jre	Contains the Java runtime environment
pos	Point-of-Service files

Important subdirectories of the `/pos` directory is shown in Table 4–4:

Table 4–4 <POS_install_directory>/pos Subdirectories

Name	Contents
bin	Startup batch files and shell scripts
lib	Point-of-Service application and resource jar files
lib/locales	Text bundles for localization
3rdparty	Third-party source files used by Point-of-Service only
config	XML configuration files, `.properties` files, and `.dat` files
logs	Log files (additional log files are in the `bin` directory)

Running Point-of-Service

You run the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service system by executing the shell scripts, found in your installation's `bin` directory, to launch various components.

To run Point-of-Service:

1. Start the store server:

   `StoreServerConduit.sh`

   When the message TierManager Started appears, the server has started. The server component does not have a user interface.

2. Start the registers.

   For each of the Point-of-Service registers, execute the conduit script that starts the Point-of-Service client component. Use the following command:

   `ClientConduit.sh`

3. Verify the installation on each register by logging in to Point-of-Service.

   If the login is successful and the status bar indicates the database is online, the installation is complete.

Creating a Custom Installation

A custom installation of Point-of-Service can use one of several approaches:

- Install Point-of-Service using the installer on a reference machine, and copy the resulting installation to other machines.
  - With this method, you can change the configuration settings of the installation as described in the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide* until the installation works as desired, then propagate those configurations to other machines.
  - You can copy just the installation directory to a new machine, or if the hardware is sufficiently similar, you can copy the entire hard drive image to the machine. Copying the entire hard drive retains the JavaPOS installation as well as any other customizations.
  - You must change the WorkstationID value for the target machines to a unique number. This value can be found in `<POS_install_directory>/pos/config/application.properties`.
- Create a custom installer which allows for various hardware options but specifies the software choices your company has chosen.

Note: By default, installation of a register requires the following IBM Install Set parameter to have a specific value:

- Hard Total must be Off.

5

Installation for Standalone on the Oracle Stack using Linux

This chapter provides information about the installation procedures for Oracle Retail Point-of-Service for Standalone installation on OEL or Red Hat Enterprise Linux. If Point-of-Service will not be integrated with Back Office or Central Office, you can use Standalone. Standalone is selected on the Application Server Type installer screen.

Oracle Retail provides an installer for Point-of-Service, but customer installations typically develop custom procedures. Note that the installer is not appropriate for all installations. Oracle Retail expects implementation teams to develop custom procedures for actual register installations, which may or may not be based on the installer described here. For guidelines, see "Creating a Custom Installation".

Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users

The following recommendations should be considered for schema owners:

- Database administrators should create an individual schema owner for each application, unless the applications share the same data. In the case of Oracle Retail Back Office and Point-of-Service, the database schema owner are the same because these applications share a database.
- The schema owners should only have enough privileges to install the database.

For information on the best practices for passwords, see Appendix N.

For Standalone, both the database schema owner and data source user need to be created.

To create the database schema owner:

1. Log in using the database administrator user ID.
2. Create a role in the database to be used for the schema owner.

   ```
   CREATE ROLE <schema_owner_role>;
   ```

3. Grant the privileges, shown in the following example, to the role.

   ```
   GRANT CREATE TABLE, CREATE VIEW, CREATE SEQUENCE, CREATE PROCEDURE, ALTER
   SESSION, CONNECT, SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE TO <schema_owner_role>;
   ```

4. Create the schema owner user in the database.

```
CREATE USER <schema_username>
IDENTIFIED BY <schema_password>
DEFAULT TABLESPACE users
TEMPORARY TABLESPACE TEMP
QUOTA UNLIMITED ON users;
```

5. Grant the schema owner role to the user.

```
GRANT <schema_owner_role> to <schema_username>;
```

To create the data source user:

1. If not already logged in, log in using the database administrator user ID.
2. Create a role in the database to be used for the data source user.

```
CREATE ROLE <data_source_role>;
```

3. Grant the privileges, shown in the following example, to the role.

```
GRANT CONNECT, CREATE SYNONYM, SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE TO
<data_source_role>;
```

4. Create the data source user.

```
CREATE USER <data_source_username>
IDENTIFIED BY <data_source_password>
DEFAULT TABLESPACE users
TEMPORARY TABLESPACE TEMP
QUOTA UNLIMITED ON users;
```

5. Grant the data source role to the user.

```
GRANT <data_source_role> to <data_source_username>;
```

The installer grants the data source user access to the application database objects.

Installing Point-of-Service

To establish an initial Oracle Retail Point-of-Service installation or to create a demonstration system, use the Point-of-Service installer as described in this section.

Determining Tier Type

Machines and logical components of the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service application are defined in Table 5–1:

Table 5–1 Server Tier Logical Components

Machine	Description
Store Server	The machine that runs the server component of Oracle Retail Point-of-Service. There is at least one store server for each store. This component runs as a service. This machine may also house other Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions components such as the OracleRetailStore database.
Point-of-Service Clients	The machines that execute the Point-of-Service transactions; they are typically cash registers.
Database Server	The machine that houses the OracleRetailStore databases. This machine may or may not be the same as the store server.

Table 5–1 (Cont.) Server Tier Logical Components

Machine	Description
JMS Server	The machine that houses the JMS server software.

When you run the installer, it asks you to specify a Tier Type. The following types are available:

- N-Tier Client—Choose this when installing the client component.
- N-Tier Store Server—Choose this when installing the store server component.

Installing the Database

Oracle Retail products such as Point-of-Service use the OracleRetailStore database. One OracleRetailStore database is typically installed in each store. Data stored in the OracleRetailStore database includes employee names, login information, and transaction data. The database can be located on the store server or on a separate machine acting as the database server. The database must be installed before Point-of-Service can be installed.

Table 5–2 shows the database configuration information that is needed during installation.

Table 5–2 Database Configuration Settings

Installer Screen	Required Data
Database Configuration	Enter the following information for the database: ■ JDBC driver path ■ Driver class name ■ Database URL ■ Jar name ■ Database schema owner user ID and password (for a client installation) ■ Data source user ID and password
Logging Options	Choose how the log is exported.

Required Settings for the Database

The following settings must be made during database creation:

- The database must be set to UTF8.
- When using the Oracle 11g database server, make the following changes to the system settings:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_NUMERIC_CHARACTERS = '.,-' SCOPE=SPFILE;
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_DATE_FORMAT ='YYYY-MM-DD' SCOPE=SPFILE;
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_TIMESTAMP_FORMAT = 'YYYY-MM-DD HH24:MI:SS.FF'
    SCOPE=SPFILE;
```

Installing Point-of-Service on Machines

If a previous version of Point-of-Service is installed on a machine, uninstall it by deleting the installation directory (the default directory is `/opt/OracleRetailStore` for the server and `C:\OracleRetailStore` for the client) or choose a different installation directory from the default.

Run the installer one time for each machine in the Server Tier and once for each register.

The installer performs the following steps. Not all steps apply to client and server installations.

- Installs Foundation, Retail Domain, and Oracle Retail Point-of-Service jar files.
- Installs database build scripts and start-up files.
- Defines Server Tier in the conduit script that starts Point-of-Service for the given machine.
- Defines hostnames or IP addresses and port numbers for the Store Server and database server.
- Defines device availability.
- Defines application properties for Store ID and Register Number.

Updating Device Configuration

If installing to a register using the Verifone MX860 device, refer to the instructions in *<POS_install_directory>*`/config/device/verifone/mx860/InstallationInstructions.txt` in order to prepare the device with the necessary forms and images.

Update the `jpos.xml` file to reflect the devices used on the machine. The typical location for this file is `C:\POS\IBMJPOS\jpos.xml`.

1. To configure the default scanner, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
JposEntry logicalName="defaultScanner">

        <creation
factoryClass="com.extendyourstore.jpos.CrsJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.extendyourstore.jpos.Scanner.Simple3"/>
        <vendor name="360Commerce" url="http://www.360commerce.com"/>
        <jpos category="Scanner" version="1.5"/>
        <product description="360Commerce Serial Scanner"/>

        <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->

        <prop name="parity" type="String" value="0"/>
        <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="7"/>
        <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="9600"/>
        <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
        <prop name="suffix" type="String" value="13"/>
        <prop name="debug" type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="port" type="String" value="COM2"/>

</JposEntry>
```

2. Configure the signature capture screen.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for signature capture, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. Change `<pos_install_directory>` to your installation directory for Point-of-Service.

      In the following example, these changes are shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiSignatureCapture">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.SignatureCaptureService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="SignatureCapture" version="1.7.250"/>
   <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) SignatureCapture Service for
Ingenico 6580 Touch Screen" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="sigcap" type="String" value="sigcap.icg"/>
    <prop name="download" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="eftpver" type="String" value="0220"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="sigline" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="eftlver" type="String" value="0433"/>
    <prop name="sigStart" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="ConfigPath" type="String"
value="<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="eftpfile" type="String" value="./res/EFTP0220.1"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="sigTotal" type="Byte" value="30"/>
    <prop name="optimize" type="Boolean" value="true"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
</JposEntry>
```

   b. To configure the Verifone device for signature capture, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiSignatureCapture">
<creation
actoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.SignatureCaptureService"/
>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Signature Capture" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx SignatureCaptureService"
name="VeriFone Signature Capture" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>
```

```
    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="SIGCAP_FORM" type="String" value="FA_SIGN"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="EndY" type="String" value="240"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="EndX" type="String" value="435"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String"
value="SignatureCaptureService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="StartY" type="String" value="180"/>
    <prop name="StartX" type="String" value="60"/>
    <prop name="StartTimeOut" type="String" value="0"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

3. Configure the customer interaction device screens.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the customer interaction device screens, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. Change `<pos_install_directory>` to your installation directory for Point-of-Service.

      In the following example, these changes are shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiGUI">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.FormService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="Form" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) Form Service for Ingenico
6580" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="eftlver" type="String" value="0433"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>

    <prop name="ConfigPath" type="String" value=
"<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/"/>
    <prop name="forms" type="String" value="
<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/i6580.forms"/>
    <prop name="Images" type="String" value="images.icg"/>
    <prop name="welcome" type="String" value="welcome.icg"/>
    <prop name="thanks" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="authmsg" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="msrprompt" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
```

```
    <prop name="plzwait" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="items" type="String" value="items.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenders" type="String" value="tenders.icg"/>
    <prop name="message" type="String" value="message.icg"/>
    <prop name="credConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="debitConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="giftConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect1" type="String" value="tendc.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect2" type="String" value="tendcd.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect3" type="String" value="tend3btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect4" type="String" value="tend4btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect5" type="String" value="tend2btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect6" type="String" value="tend3btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="sigcap" type="String" value="sigcap.icg"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="eftpver" type="String" value="0220"/>
    <prop name="numOfImages" type="Integer" value="4"/>
    <prop name="loopInterval" type="Integer" value="15"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="attribute" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="optimize" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="item10" type="String" value="Cotton Shirt    "/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="ShowSplash" type="Boolean" value="true"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="font" type="Byte" value="2"/>
    <prop name="download" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for customer interaction device screens, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiGUI">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.LineDisplayService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Line Display" version="1.11"/>
   <product description="VeriFone mx8xx LineDisplayService" name="VeriFone
Line Display" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="3000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
```

```
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="FontSizeList" type="String" value="10,11,12,13,14,15"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="XDTXOptions" type="String" value="49409"/>
    <prop name="DeviceWindows" type="String" value="10"/>
    <prop name="FontName" type="String"
value="VeraMono|VeraMoBd|VeraMoIt|VeraMoBI"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="LineDisplayService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="ColorOptions" type="String" value="E4E1AE|000000|FF0000"/>
    <prop name="ScreenModeList" type="String"
value="19x53,18x45,16x40,14x40,14x35,13x35"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

4. Configure the PIN Pad device.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the PIN Pad device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiPINPad">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.PINPadService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="PINPad" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) PINPad Service for Ingenico
6580 Touch Screen" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="keyIndex" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="pinTimeout2" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="pinTimeout1" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
</JposEntry>
```

   b. To configure the Verifone device for the PIN Pad device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiPINPad">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.VFFormService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Form" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx VFFormService" name="VeriFone
Form" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>
    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="PINPAD_FORM" type="String" value="860_FA_PINE"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="VFFormService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

5. Configure the MSR on the customer interaction device.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the MSR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiMSR">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.MSRService"/>
    <jpos category="MSR" version="1.72"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <product description="Ingenico i6580 MSR" name="Ingenico i6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="30000"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="impl" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ped" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ped_sav" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ulog" type="Byte" value="02"/>
```

```
        <prop name="logLevel" type="String" value="OFF"/>
        <prop name="logFile" type="String" value="../logs/i6580%g.log"/>
        <prop name="formatter" type="Integer" value="2"/>
    </JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for the MSR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiMSR">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.MSRService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Magnetic Stripe Reader" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx MSRService" name="VeriFone
Magnetic Stripe Reader" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="MSRService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

6. To configure the default printer, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultPrinter">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"/>
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.SdiIBM4610EPOSPrinter"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="POSPrinter" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) POSPrinter RS485 Service for IBM
4610 TI2/3/4/5/8/9 TM/F 6/7 Printer" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows
Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS485"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioDeviceNumber" type="String"
value="0x35"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioPortNumber" type="String"
value="0x11"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioSlotNumber" type="String"
value="0x01"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.SdiIBM4610EPOSPrinter"/>
```

```
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.IBM4610PrinterServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

7. To configure the default MICR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultMICR">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBM4610MICR"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="MICR" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) MICR RS485 Service for IBM 4610
TI2/4/8/9 Printer" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3"
url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS485"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBM4610MICR"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.MICRServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioSlotNumber" type="String"
value="0x01"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioPortNumber" type="String"
value="0x11"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioDeviceNumber" type="String"
value="0x35"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTableFile"
type="String" value="[file-path-goes-here]"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable4" type="String"
value="B778899001D154R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable3" type="String"
value="B667788990D153R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable2" type="String"
value="P123456780AAAAAXXSSS"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable1" type="String"
value="B445566778D151R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable0" type="String"
value="B334455667D150R"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.stripAccountDashes"
type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.stripTransitDashes"
type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.switchTransitDashToSpace"
type="String" value="false"/>
</JposEntry>
```

8. To configure the default keyboard, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultPOSKeyboard">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMPOSKeyboard"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="POSKeyboard" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) POSKeyboard PS2 Service for IBM
4820/ANKPOS/CANPOS/NANPOS/SureONE Keyboards" name="IBM JavaPOS for
```

```
Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.Click" type="Byte"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.functionNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.Typematic"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.ExtendedKeyMapping"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMPOSKeyboard"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.POSKeyboardServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.keyboardNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="PosKbd"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.KbdScanning"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
</JposEntry>
```

9. To configure the default MSR, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultMSR">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"name="Ingenic
o ET1K Form Service for JavaPOS(TM) Standard"
                url="http://www.ingenico-us
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMMSR"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="MSR" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) MSR PS2 Service for IBM
ANKPOS/NANPOS/CANPOS/SureONE Keyboards" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows
Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="PosKbd"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.functionNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.keyboardNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMMSR"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.MSRServiceImp"/>
</JposEntry>
```

10. To configure the default cash drawer, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultCashDrawer">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMCashDrawer"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="CashDrawer" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) CashDrawer Service for IBM
```

```
SurePOS 300/72x/74x/78x-A" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3"
url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="Embedded"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMCashDrawer"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.CashDrawerServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

11. To configure the default line display, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultLineDisplay">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.LineDisplayLCVFD"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="LineDisplay" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) LineDisplay USB Service for IBM
Vaccum Fluorescent Display (VFD)-A" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version
1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.hid.usageId" type="String"
value="0x2400"/>
        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="HID"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.LineDisplayLCVFD"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.LineDisplayServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.hid.usagePage" type="String"
value="0xFF45"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

Expand the Point-of-Service Distribution

To extract the Point-of-Service files:

1. Extract the `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` file from the Point-of-Service 13.1.4 distribution EPD zip file.
2. Create a new staging directory for the Point-of-Service application distribution `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` file, for example, `/tmp/orpos/orpos-staging`.

> **Note:** The staging area (*<staging_directory>*) can exist anywhere on the system. It does not need to be under `ORACLE_HOME`.

3. Copy or upload `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` to *<staging_directory>* and extract its contents. The following files and directories should be created under *<staging_directory>*`/ORPOS-13.1.4`:

```
ant/
ant-ext/
antinstall/
installer-resources/
```

```
installer-templates/
product/
antinstall-config.xml
build.xml
build-antinstall.xml
build-common.xml
build-common-oas.xml
build-common-was.xml
build-conditions.xml
build-filesets.xml
build-filters.xml
build-properties.xml
checkdeps.cmd
checkdeps.sh
install.cmd
install.sh
prepare.xml
```

For the remainder of this chapter, *<staging_directory>*/ORPOS-13.1.4 is referred to as *<INSTALL_DIR>*.

Obtaining Third-Party Library Files Required by Point-of-Service

The Point-of-Service application uses specific files from Apache. Get the required files for the Derby database. You can get the download at the website:

http://db.apache.org/derby/releases/release-10.2.2.0.html

Extract the following files:

- derby.jar
- derbytools.jar

Obtaining the IBM JRE Required for Client Install

This release requires IBM JRE 1.5 for client installs. The download is available at the following website:

http://www-307.ibm.com/pc/support/site.wss/document.do?sitestyle=lenovo&lndocid=MIGR-56888

To install IBM JRE 1.5, select the following file link:

ibm-java2-ibmpc-jre-50-win-i386.exe

Securing Communication

Communication with the database and communication between the store server and registers can be secured.

- On the Enable Secure JDBC screen, you select whether secure JDBC will be used for communication with the database. See Figure F–17 in Appendix F.
  - If **Yes** is selected, the installer sets up the secure JDBC.
  - If **No** is selected and you want to manually set up the secure JDBC after the installer completes, see Appendix P or Appendix P.
- On the Enable Secure RMI screen, you select whether secure RMI will be used for communication between the store server and registers. See Figure F–21 in Appendix F and Figure H–16 in Appendix H.
  - If **Yes** is selected, the installer sets up the secure RMI.
  - If **No** is selected and you want to manually set up the secure RMI after the installer completes, see Appendix R.

Running the Point-of-Service Application Installer

This installer will configure and deploy the Point-of-Service application.

> **Note:** To see details on every screen and field for a server installation, see Appendix F. To see details for a client installation, see Appendix H.

1. Change to the *<INSTALL_DIR>* directory.
2. Set the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable to the location of your jdk. For example, `/opt/j2sdk1.5`. The variable must be set to the location of the jdk and not the jre.

   > **Note:** The installer is not compatible with versions of Java earlier than 1.5.

3. For the server, run the `install.sh` script. For the client, run the `install.cmd` script. This will launch the installer. After installation is complete, a detailed installation log file is created at *<POS_install_directory>*`\pos-install-yyyyMMddHHmm.log`

   In the log file name, `yyyyMMddHHmm` is the timestamp of the install.

   > **Note:** The typical usage for GUI mode does not use arguments.
   >
   > `install.sh`

Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation

If the application installer encounters any errors, you can read them in the above mentioned log file.

For a list of common installation errors, see Appendix K.

Creating the Point-of-Service Database Schema

The scripts that create the Point-of-Service database schema can be run from the installed `pos/bin` directory. The database server can be on the same system as the application server or on a different system.

> **Note:** Seed data includes sample data used to evaluate the application and demonstrate core functions of the software. There are references in the seed data to store ID 01291. During installation, if 01291 is selected for the store ID, SQL errors occur during the loading of the database. The SQL errors are caused by those references.

When Point-of-Service is being installed without Back Office, perform the following steps to create the Point-of-Service database schema:

1. Change to the *<POS_install_directory>*`/pos/bin directory`.
2. Set the `JAVA_HOME` and `ANT_HOME` environment variables.
3. Add `$JAVA_HOME/bin` and `$ANT_HOME/bin` to the front of the PATH environment variable.

   ```
   PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$ANT_HOME/bin:$PATH; export PATH
   ```

4. Run one of the available `dbbuild.sh` targets to create the database schema, load data, and load the procedures for purging aged data in the database. For information on the purge procedures, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.
   - seed_data: loads seed data
   - load_purge_procedures: loads database purge procedures

   For example, `dbbuild.sh seed_data`
5. If **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** was selected for the Transaction Retrieval Location, run `scratchpad.sh` to create the Scratchpad database.

Enabling Access for the Data Source User

If the data source user, *<data_source_username>*, created for Point-of-Service is not the same user ID created for the Back Office data source user, the Point-of-Service user must be granted access to the database schema after the Point-of-Service server is installed.

To grant access to the database:

1. Change to the *<POS_install_directory>*`/`*<server>*`/pos/bin` directory.
2. Set the `JAVA_HOME` and `ANT_HOME` environment variables.
3. Add `$JAVA_HOME/bin` and `$ANT_HOME/bin` to the front of the PATH environment variable.

   ```
   PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$ANT_HOME/bin:$PATH; export PATH
   ```

4. Run the following ant target.

   ```
   ant -f db.xml -Dschema.user=<data_source_username>
   -Dschema.password=<data_source_password> grant_schema
   ```

Installing Multibyte Fonts for eReceipt in the Client Installation

When an eReceipt is sent to a customer by e-mail, a pdf file that contains the eReceipt is attached to the e-mail. In order for this pdf file to print correctly with multibyte characters, the multibyte fonts must be defined in the client installation.

Point-of-Service uses Apache Formatting Objects Processor (FOP) to create eReceipts that are compatible with Adobe Acrobat. FOP and Adobe Acrobat require information about the fonts to use in the eReceipt. You must install and configure any mutlibyte fonts needed for eReceipts.

> **Note:** Point-of-Service assumes that fonts are fixed-width for the formatting of receipts. If variable-width fonts are used, the fields on an eReceipt will not align properly.

To update the fonts in the client installation:

1. Install the required fonts.
2. Generate a font metrics file.

   The `fop.jar` file provides a TTFReader program to generate this file. The `fop.jar` file is available in the *<POS_install_directory>*`\360common\common\build` directory. The following are examples of the commands to use:

   - To specify a collection of fonts (TTC font):

     ```
     java -classpath <POS_install_directory>\<client>\360common\common\
     build\fop.jar org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader -ttcname "Gulim"
     c:\windows\fonts\gulim.ttc gulim.xml
     ```

   - To specify a specific font (TTF font):

     ```
     java -classpath <POS_install_directory>\<client>\360common\common\
     build\fop.jar org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader
     c:\windows\fonts\SIMSUN.TTF SIMSUN.xml
     ```

3. Update the configuration file at *<POS_install_directory>*`\`*<client>*`\pos\config\eReceiptFontConfig.xml`. Point-of-Service updates the FOP configuration to use the new fonts in addition to the standard fonts available. The following is an example of the structure of the configuration file based on the commands in the previous step.

   ```
   <configuration>
   ..................
   <fonts>
   ..................
   ..................
     <font metrics-file="c:\windows\config\gulim.xml"
   embed-file="c:\windows\fonts\gulim.ttc" kerning="yes">
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="normal" weight="normal"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="normal" weight="bold"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="italic" weight="normal"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="italic" weight="bold"/>
    </font>
   ..................
   ..................
   </fonts>
   ..................
   </configuration>
   ```

4. To use the new fonts, set the value for the `ereceipt.font.family` key in the *<POS_install_directory>*`\`*<client>*`\pos\config\application.properties` file. The following is an example of the setting:

```
ereceipt.font.family=Gulim, SimSun, MingLiU, Gothic, Courier
```

Note: eReceipt uses the Auto font selection strategy, which is the default font selection strategy. This strategy selects the first font from the list that is able to display the most characters in a word that contains characters that need different fonts.

Configuring for Offline Data Updates

Point-of-Service provides the capability to automatically update offline data to clients. The scheduling of the updates can be configured. This configuration involves updating parameters and the `ServiceContent.xml` file. For more information on offline data updates and how to configure the updates, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.

Setting up the Store Server to use ISD for Tender Authorization

Note: ISD Key Management messaging is used for encrypting all sensitive data in the request messages to the ISD host switch. Ensure you have one of the following versions, or newer, of the ISD software:

- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Unix V5.3
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for iSeries V5.3
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Java V6.4

If **ISD** was selected on the Tender Authorization screen, you must update the security for your JRE. See "Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)".

BIN Validation

The Bin File Lookup parameter, in the Tender parameter group, determines if BIN validation on credit cards is performed using a BIN file provided by the retailer. While results will vary by retailer, this parameter enables the retailer to reduce their interchange fees, that is, the amount a retailer is charged for authorization of credit cards.

To use the BIN file provided by the retailer, set the Bin File Lookup parameter to Yes. The default for this parameter is Yes.

Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)

If **ISD** was selected on the Tender Authorization screen or **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** was selected on the Security Setup: Key Store Settings screen, you must update the security for your JRE. You need to obtain version 5.0 of the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files.

1. Make a backup copy of `local_policy.jar` and `US_export_policy.jar`.
   - On the server:

     ```
     cd $JRE_HOME/lib/security
     mv local_policy.jar local_policy.jar.bak
     mv US_export_policy.jar US_export_policy.jar.bak
     ```

   - On the client:

     ```
     cd %JRE_HOME%\lib\security
     copy local_policy.jar local_policy.jar.bak
     copy US_export_policy.jar US_export_policy.jar.bak
     ```

2. Download version 5.0 of the JCE.
   a. Go to the following website:

      `http://java.sun.com/javase/downloads/index_jdk5.jsp`

   b. Under Other Downloads, find **Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files 5.0**.

   c. Click **Download**.

   d. Follow the instructions to download the JCE.

3. Copy the jar files into the JRE security directory. The files are bundled as `jce_policy-1_5_0.zip`.

Results of a Point-of-Service Installation

On the Oracle stack, the default root directory for the store server is `opt/OracleRetailStore/Server` and for the client is `C:\OracleRetailStore\Client`. On the IBM stack, the default root directory for the store server is `opt/OracleRetailStore/Server` and for the client is `opt/OracleRetailStore/Client`.

In this guide, these directories are referred to as *<POS_install_directory>*. The subdirectories listed in Table 5–3 are created:

Table 5–3 <POS_install_directory> Subdirectories

Name	Contents
360common	Files shared by multiple Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions applications including Foundation or 360Platform, Domain, and third-party jar files
databases	Resources for various database types
jre	Contains the Java runtime environment
pos	Point-of-Service files

Important subdirectories of the `/pos` directory is shown in Table 5–4:

Table 5–4 <POS_install_directory>/pos Subdirectories

Name	Contents
bin	Startup batch files and shell scripts
lib	Point-of-Service application and resource jar files
lib\locales	Text bundles for localization
3rdparty	Third-party source files used by Point-of-Service only
config	XML configuration files, `.properties` files, and `.dat` files
logs	Log files (additional log files are in the `bin` directory)

Running Point-of-Service

You run the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service system by executing batch files or shell scripts, found in your installation's `bin` directory, to launch various components.

Note: For each command, a Linux file (such as `dbstart.sh`) exists.

To run Point-of-Service:

1. Start the store server:

   `StoreServerConduit.sh`

   When the message TierManager Started appears, the server has started. The server component does not have a user interface.

2. Start the registers.

   For each of the Point-of-Service registers, execute the conduit script that starts the Point-of-Service client component. Use the following command:

   `ClientConduit.bat`

3. Verify the installation on each register by logging in to Point-of-Service.

   If the login is successful and the status bar indicates the database is online, the installation is complete.

Creating a Custom Installation

A custom installation of Point-of-Service can use one of several approaches:

- Install Point-of-Service using the installer on a reference machine, and copy the resulting installation to other machines.
  - With this method, you can change the configuration settings of the installation as described in the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide* until the installation works as desired, then propagate those configurations to other machines.
  - You can copy just the installation directory to a new machine, or if the hardware is sufficiently similar, you can copy the entire hard drive image to the machine. Copying the entire hard drive retains the JavaPOS installation as well as any other customizations.
  - You must change the WorkstationID value for the target machines to a unique number. This value can be found in `<POS_install_directory>/pos/config/application.properties`.
- Create a custom installer which allows for various hardware options but specifies the software choices your company has chosen.

Note: By default, installation of a register requires the following IBM Install Set parameter to have a specific value:

- Hard Total must be Off.

6

Installation for Standalone on the Oracle Stack using Windows

This chapter provides information about the installation procedures for Oracle Retail Point-of-Service for Standalone installation on Windows. If Point-of-Service will not be integrated with Back Office or Central Office, you can use Standalone. Standalone is selected on the Application Server Type installer screen.

Oracle Retail provides an installer for Point-of-Service, but customer installations typically develop custom procedures. Note that the installer is not appropriate for all installations. Oracle Retail expects implementation teams to develop custom procedures for actual register installations, which may or may not be based on the installer described here. For guidelines, see "Creating a Custom Installation".

Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users

The following recommendations should be considered for schema owners:

- Database administrators should create an individual schema owner for each application, unless the applications share the same data. In the case of Oracle Retail Back Office and Point-of-Service, the database schema owner are the same because these applications share a database.
- The schema owners should only have enough privileges to install the database.

For information on the best practices for passwords, see Appendix N.

For Standalone, both the database schema owner and data source user need to be created.

To create the database schema owner:

1. Log in using the database administrator user ID.
2. Create a role in the database to be used for the schema owner.

   ```
   CREATE ROLE <schema_owner_role>;
   ```

3. Grant the privileges, shown in the following example, to the role.

   ```
   GRANT CREATE TABLE, CREATE VIEW, CREATE SEQUENCE, CREATE PROCEDURE, ALTER
   SESSION, CONNECT, SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE TO <schema_owner_role>;
   ```

4. Create the schema owner user in the database.

```
CREATE USER <schema_username>
IDENTIFIED BY <schema_password>
DEFAULT TABLESPACE users
TEMPORARY TABLESPACE TEMP
QUOTA UNLIMITED ON users;
```

5. Grant the schema owner role to the user.

```
GRANT <schema_owner_role> to <schema_username>;
```

To create the data source user:

1. If not already logged in, log in using the database administrator user ID.
2. Create a role in the database to be used for the data source user.

```
CREATE ROLE <data_source_role>;
```

3. Grant the privileges, shown in the following example, to the role.

```
GRANT CONNECT, CREATE SYNONYM, SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE TO
<data_source_role>;
```

4. Create the data source user.

```
CREATE USER <data_source_username>
IDENTIFIED BY <data_source_password>
DEFAULT TABLESPACE users
TEMPORARY TABLESPACE TEMP
QUOTA UNLIMITED ON users;
```

5. Grant the data source role to the user.

```
GRANT <data_source_role> to <data_source_username>;
```

The installer grants the data source user access to the application database objects.

Installing Point-of-Service

To establish an initial Oracle Retail Point-of-Service installation or to create a demonstration system, use the Point-of-Service installer as described in this section.

Determining Tier Type

Machines and logical components of the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service application are defined in Table 6–1:

Table 6–1 Server Tier Logical Components

Machine	Description
Store Server	The machine that runs the server component of Oracle Retail Point-of-Service. There is at least one store server for each store. This component runs as a service. This machine may also house other Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions components such as the OracleRetailStore database.
Point-of-Service Clients	The machines that execute the Point-of-Service transactions; they are typically cash registers.
Database Server	The machine that houses the OracleRetailStore databases. This machine may or may not be the same as the store server.

Table 6–1 (Cont.) Server Tier Logical Components

Machine	Description
JMS Server	The machine that houses the JMS server software.

When you run the installer, it asks you to specify a Tier Type. The following types are available:

- N-Tier Client—Choose this when installing the client component.
- N-Tier Store Server—Choose this when installing the store server component.

Installing the Database

Oracle Retail products such as Point-of-Service use the OracleRetailStore database. One OracleRetailStore database is typically installed in each store. Data stored in the OracleRetailStore database includes employee names, login information, and transaction data. The database can be located on the store server or on a separate machine acting as the database server. The database must be installed before Point-of-Service can be installed.

Table 6–2 shows the database configuration information that is needed during installation.

Table 6–2 Database Configuration Settings

Installer Screen	Required Data
Database Configuration	Enter the following information for the database: ■ JDBC driver path ■ Driver class name ■ Database URL ■ Jar name ■ Database schema owner user ID and password (for a client installation) ■ Data source user ID and password
Logging Options	Choose how the log is exported.

Required Settings for the Database

The following settings must be made during database creation:

- The database must be set to UTF8.
- When using the Oracle 11g database server, make the following changes to the system settings:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_NUMERIC_CHARACTERS = '.,-' SCOPE=SPFILE;
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_DATE_FORMAT ='YYYY-MM-DD' SCOPE=SPFILE;
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_TIMESTAMP_FORMAT = 'YYYY-MM-DD HH24:MI:SS.FF'
    SCOPE=SPFILE;
```

Installing Point-of-Service on Machines

If a previous version of Point-of-Service is installed on a machine, uninstall it by deleting the installation directory (the default directory is `C:\OracleRetailStore`) or choose a different installation directory from the default.

Run the installer one time for each machine in the Server Tier and once for each register.

The installer performs the following steps. Not all steps apply to client and server installations.

- Installs Foundation, Retail Domain, and Oracle Retail Point-of-Service jar files.
- Installs database build scripts and start-up files.
- Defines Server Tier in the conduit script that starts Point-of-Service for the given machine.
- Defines hostnames or IP addresses and port numbers for the Store Server and database server.
- Defines device availability.
- Defines application properties for Store ID and Register Number.

Updating Device Configuration

If installing to a register using the Verifone MX860 device, refer to the instructions in *<POS_install_directory>*`\config\device\verifone\mx860\InstallationInstructions.txt` in order to prepare the device with the necessary forms and images.

Update the `jpos.xml` file to reflect the devices used on the machine. The typical location for this file is `C:\POS\IBMJPOS\jpos.xml`.

1. To configure the default scanner, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
JposEntry logicalName="defaultScanner">

        <creation
factoryClass="com.extendyourstore.jpos.CrsJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.extendyourstore.jpos.Scanner.Simple3"/>
        <vendor name="360Commerce" url="http://www.360commerce.com"/>
        <jpos category="Scanner" version="1.5"/>
        <product description="360Commerce Serial Scanner"/>

        <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->

        <prop name="parity" type="String" value="0"/>
        <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="7"/>
        <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="9600"/>
        <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
        <prop name="suffix" type="String" value="13"/>
        <prop name="debug" type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="port" type="String" value="COM2"/>

</JposEntry>
```

2. Configure the signature capture screen.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for signature capture, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. Change `<pos_install_directory>` to your installation directory for Point-of-Service.

      In the following example, these changes are shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiSignatureCapture">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.SignatureCaptureService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="SignatureCapture" version="1.7.250"/>
   <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) SignatureCapture Service for
Ingenico 6580 Touch Screen" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="sigcap" type="String" value="sigcap.icg"/>
    <prop name="download" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="eftpver" type="String" value="0220"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="sigline" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="eftlver" type="String" value="0433"/>
    <prop name="sigStart" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="ConfigPath" type="String"
value="<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="eftpfile" type="String" value="./res/EFTP0220.1"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="sigTotal" type="Byte" value="30"/>
    <prop name="optimize" type="Boolean" value="true"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
</JposEntry>
```

   b. To configure the Verifone device for signature capture, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiSignatureCapture">
<creation
actoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.SignatureCaptureService"/
>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Signature Capture" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx SignatureCaptureService"
name="VeriFone Signature Capture" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>
```

```
    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="SIGCAP_FORM" type="String" value="FA_SIGN"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="EndY" type="String" value="240"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="EndX" type="String" value="435"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String"
value="SignatureCaptureService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="StartY" type="String" value="180"/>
    <prop name="StartX" type="String" value="60"/>
    <prop name="StartTimeOut" type="String" value="0"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

3. Configure the customer interaction device screens.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the customer interaction device screens, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. Change `<pos_install_directory>` to your installation directory for Point-of-Service.

      In the following example, these changes are shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiGUI">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.FormService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="Form" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) Form Service for Ingenico
6580" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="eftlver" type="String" value="0433"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>

    <prop name="ConfigPath" type="String" value=
"<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/"/>
    <prop name="forms" type="String" value="
<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/i6580.forms"/>
    <prop name="Images" type="String" value="images.icg"/>
    <prop name="welcome" type="String" value="welcome.icg"/>
    <prop name="thanks" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="authmsg" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="msrprompt" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
```

```
    <prop name="plzwait" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="items" type="String" value="items.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenders" type="String" value="tenders.icg"/>
    <prop name="message" type="String" value="message.icg"/>
    <prop name="credConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="debitConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="giftConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect1" type="String" value="tendc.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect2" type="String" value="tendcd.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect3" type="String" value="tend3btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect4" type="String" value="tend4btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect5" type="String" value="tend2btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect6" type="String" value="tend3btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="sigcap" type="String" value="sigcap.icg"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="eftpver" type="String" value="0220"/>
    <prop name="numOfImages" type="Integer" value="4"/>
    <prop name="loopInterval" type="Integer" value="15"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="attribute" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="optimize" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="item10" type="String" value="Cotton Shirt    "/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="ShowSplash" type="Boolean" value="true"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="font" type="Byte" value="2"/>
    <prop name="download" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for customer interaction device screens, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiGUI">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.LineDisplayService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Line Display" version="1.11"/>
   <product description="VeriFone mx8xx LineDisplayService" name="VeriFone
Line Display" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="3000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
```

```
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="FontSizeList" type="String" value="10,11,12,13,14,15"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="XDTXOptions" type="String" value="49409"/>
    <prop name="DeviceWindows" type="String" value="10"/>
    <prop name="FontName" type="String"
value="VeraMono|VeraMoBd|VeraMoIt|VeraMoBI"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="LineDisplayService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="ColorOptions" type="String" value="E4E1AE|000000|FF0000"/>
    <prop name="ScreenModeList" type="String"
value="19x53,18x45,16x40,14x40,14x35,13x35"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

4. Configure the PIN Pad device.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the PIN Pad device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiPINPad">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.PINPadService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="PINPad" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) PINPad Service for Ingenico
6580 Touch Screen" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="keyIndex" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="pinTimeout2" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="pinTimeout1" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
</JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for the PIN Pad device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiPINPad">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.VFFormService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Form" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx VFFormService" name="VeriFone
Form" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>
    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="PINPAD_FORM" type="String" value="860_FA_PINE"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="VFFormService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

5. Configure the MSR on the customer interaction device.

a. To configure the Ingenico device for the MSR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiMSR">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.MSRService"/>
    <jpos category="MSR" version="1.72"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <product description="Ingenico i6580 MSR" name="Ingenico i6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="30000"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="impl" type="Integer" value="0"/>
```

```
        <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
        <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
        <prop name="ped" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
        <prop name="ped_sav" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
        <prop name="ulog" type="Byte" value="02"/>
        <prop name="logLevel" type="String" value="OFF"/>
        <prop name="logFile" type="String" value="../logs/i6580%g.log"/>
        <prop name="formatter" type="Integer" value="2"/>
    </JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for the MSR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiMSR">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.MSRService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Magnetic Stripe Reader" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx MSRService" name="VeriFone
Magnetic Stripe Reader" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="MSRService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

6. To configure the default printer, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultPrinter">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"/>
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.SdiIBM4610EPOSPrinter"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="POSPrinter" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) POSPrinter RS485 Service for IBM
4610 TI2/3/4/5/8/9 TM/F 6/7 Printer" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows
Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS485"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioDeviceNumber" type="String"
value="0x35"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioPortNumber" type="String"
```

```
value="0x11"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioSlotNumber" type="String"
value="0x01"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.SdiIBM4610EPOSPrinter"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.IBM4610PrinterServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

7. To configure the default MICR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultMICR">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBM4610MICR"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="MICR" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) MICR RS485 Service for IBM 4610
TI2/4/8/9 Printer" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3"
url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS485"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBM4610MICR"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.MICRServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioSlotNumber" type="String"
value="0x01"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioPortNumber" type="String"
value="0x11"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioDeviceNumber" type="String"
value="0x35"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTableFile"
type="String" value="[file-path-goes-here]"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable4" type="String"
value="B778899001D154R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable3" type="String"
value="B667788990D153R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable2" type="String"
value="P123456780AAAAAXSSS"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable1" type="String"
value="B445566778D151R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable0" type="String"
value="B334455667D150R"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.stripAccountDashes"
type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.stripTransitDashes"
type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.switchTransitDashToSpace"
type="String" value="false"/>
</JposEntry>
```

8. To configure the default keyboard, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultPOSKeyboard">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
```

```
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMPOSKeyboard"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="POSKeyboard" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) POSKeyboard PS2 Service for IBM
4820/ANKPOS/CANPOS/NANPOS/SureONE Keyboards" name="IBM JavaPOS for
Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.Click" type="Byte"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.functionNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.Typematic"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.ExtendedKeyMapping"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMPOSKeyboard"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.POSKeyboardServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.keyboardNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="PosKbd"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.KbdScanning"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
</JposEntry>
```

9. To configure the default MSR, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultMSR">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"name="Ingenic
o ET1K Form Service for JavaPOS(TM) Standard"
                url="http://www.ingenico-us
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMMSR"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="MSR" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) MSR PS2 Service for IBM
ANKPOS/NANPOS/CANPOS/SureONE Keyboards" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows
Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="PosKbd"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.functionNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.keyboardNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMMSR"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.MSRServiceImp"/>
</JposEntry>
```

10. To configure the default cash drawer, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultCashDrawer">
        <creation
```

```
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMCashDrawer"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="CashDrawer" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) CashDrawer Service for IBM
SurePOS 300/72x/74x/78x-A" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3"
url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="Embedded"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMCashDrawer"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.CashDrawerServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

11. To configure the default line display, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultLineDisplay">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.LineDisplayLCVFD"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="LineDisplay" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) LineDisplay USB Service for IBM
Vaccum Fluorescent Display (VFD)-A" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version
1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.hid.usageId" type="String"
value="0x2400"/>
        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="HID"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.LineDisplayLCVFD"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.LineDisplayServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.hid.usagePage" type="String"
value="0xFF45"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

Expand the Point-of-Service Distribution

To extract the Point-of-Service files:

1. Extract the `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` file from the Point-of-Service 13.1.4 distribution EPD zip file.
2. Create a new staging directory for the Point-of-Service application distribution `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` file, for example, `C:\tmp\orpos\orpos-staging`.

> **Note:** The staging area (*<staging_directory>*) can exist anywhere on the system. It does not need to be under `ORACLE_HOME`.

3. Copy or upload `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` to *<staging_directory>* and extract its contents. The following files and directories should be created under *<staging_directory>*`\ORPOS-13.1.4`:

```
ant/
ant-ext/
antinstall/
installer-resources/
installer-templates/
product/
antinstall-config.xml
build.xml
build-antinstall.xml
build-common.xml
build-common-oas.xml
build-common-was.xml
build-conditions.xml
build-filesets.xml
build-filters.xml
build-properties.xml
checkdeps.cmd
checkdeps.sh
install.cmd
install.sh
prepare.xml
```

For the remainder of this chapter, *<staging_directory>*`\ORPOS-13.1.4` is referred to as *<INSTALL_DIR>*.

Obtaining Third-Party Library Files Required by Point-of-Service

The Point-of-Service application uses specific files from Apache. Get the required files for the Derby database. You can get the download at the website:

http://db.apache.org/derby/releases/release-10.2.2.0.html

Extract the following files:

- `derby.jar`
- `derbytools.jar`

Obtaining the IBM JRE Required for Client Install

This release requires IBM JRE 1.5 for client installs. The download is available at the following website:

http://www-307.ibm.com/pc/support/site.wss/document.do?sitestyle=lenovo&lndocid=MIGR-56888

To install IBM JRE 1.5, select the following file link:

`ibm-java2-ibmpc-jre-50-win-i386.exe`

Securing Communication

Communication with the database and communication between the store server and registers can be secured.

- On the Enable Secure JDBC screen, you select whether secure JDBC will be used for communication with the database. See Figure F–17 in Appendix F.
  - If **Yes** is selected, the installer sets up the secure JDBC.
  - If **No** is selected and you want to manually set up the secure JDBC after the installer completes, see Appendix P or Appendix P.
- On the Enable Secure RMI screen, you select whether secure RMI will be used for communication between the store server and registers. See Figure F–21 in Appendix F and Figure H–16 in Appendix H.
  - If **Yes** is selected, the installer sets up the secure RMI.
  - If **No** is selected and you want to manually set up the secure RMI after the installer completes, see Appendix R.

Running the Point-of-Service Application Installer

This installer will configure and deploy the Point-of-Service application.

> **Note:** To see details on every screen and field for a server installation, see Appendix G. To see details for a client installation, see Appendix H.

1. Change to the *<INSTALL_DIR>* directory.
2. Set the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable to the location of your jdk. For example, `C:\j2sdk1.5`. The variable must be set to the location of the jdk and not the jre.

   > **Note:** The installer is not compatible with versions of Java earlier than 1.5.

3. For the server, run the `install.sh` script. For the client, run the `install.cmd` script. This will launch the installer. After installation is complete, a detailed installation log file is created at *<POS_install_directory>*`\pos-install-yyyyMMddHHmm.log`

   In the log file name, `yyyyMMddHHmm` is the timestamp of the install.

   > **Note:** The typical usage for GUI mode does not use arguments.
   >
   > `install.cmd`

Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation

If the application installer encounters any errors, you can read them in the above mentioned log file.

For a list of common installation errors, see Appendix K.

Creating the Point-of-Service Database Schema

The scripts that create the Point-of-Service database schema can be run from the installed `pos/bin` directory. The database server can be on the same system as the application server or on a different system.

> **Note:** Seed data includes sample data used to evaluate the application and demonstrate core functions of the software. There are references in the seed data to store ID 01291. During installation, if 01291 is selected for the store ID, SQL errors occur during the loading of the database. The SQL errors are caused by those references.

When Point-of-Service is being installed without Back Office, perform the following steps to create the Point-of-Service database schema:

1. Change to the *<POS_install_directory>*`\pos\bin directory`.
2. Set the `JAVA_HOME` and `ANT_HOME` environment variables.
3. Add `$JAVA_HOME\bin` and `$ANT_HOME\bin` to the front of the PATH environment variable.

   ```
   PATH=$JAVA_HOME\bin:$ANT_HOME\bin:$PATH; export PATH
   ```

4. Run one of the available `dbbuild.sh` targets to create the database schema, load data, and load the procedures for purging aged data in the database. For information on the purge procedures, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.
   - seed_data: loads seed data
   - load_purge_procedures: loads database purge procedures

   For example, `dbbuild.sh seed_data`
5. If **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** was selected for the Transaction Retrieval Location, run `scratchpad.cmd` to create the Scratchpad database.

Enabling Access for the Data Source User

If the data source user, *<data_source_username>*, created for Point-of-Service is not the same user ID created for the Back Office data source user, the Point-of-Service user must be granted access to the database schema after the Point-of-Service server is installed.

To grant access to the database:

1. Change to the *<POS_install_directory>*`\`*<server>*`\pos\bin` directory.
2. Set the `JAVA_HOME` and `ANT_HOME` environment variables.
3. Add `$JAVA_HOME\bin` and `$ANT_HOME\bin` to the front of the PATH environment variable.

   ```
   PATH=$JAVA_HOME\bin:$ANT_HOME\bin:$PATH; export PATH
   ```

4. Run the following ant target.

   ```
   ant -f db.xml -Dschema.user=<data_source_username>
   -Dschema.password=<data_source_password> grant_schema
   ```

Installing Multibyte Fonts for eReceipt in the Client Installation

When an eReceipt is sent to a customer by e-mail, a pdf file that contains the eReceipt is attached to the e-mail. In order for this pdf file to print correctly with multibyte characters, the multibyte fonts must be defined in the client installation.

Point-of-Service uses Apache Formatting Objects Processor (FOP) to create eReceipts that are compatible with Adobe Acrobat. FOP and Adobe Acrobat require information about the fonts to use in the eReceipt. You must install and configure any mutlibyte fonts needed for eReceipts.

> **Note:** Point-of-Service assumes that fonts are fixed-width for the formatting of receipts. If variable-width fonts are used, the fields on an eReceipt will not align properly.

To update the fonts in the client installation:

1. Install the required fonts.
2. Generate a font metrics file.

   The `fop.jar` file provides a TTFReader program to generate this file. The `fop.jar` file is available in the *<POS_install_directory>*`\360common\common\build` directory. The following are examples of the commands to use:

   - To specify a collection of fonts (TTC font):

     ```
     java -classpath <POS_install_directory>\<client>\360common\common\
     build\fop.jar org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader -ttcname "Gulim"
     c:\windows\fonts\gulim.ttc gulim.xml
     ```

   - To specify a specific font (TTF font):

     ```
     java -classpath <POS_install_directory>\<client>\360common\common\
     build\fop.jar org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader
     c:\windows\fonts\SIMSUN.TTF SIMSUN.xml
     ```

3. Update the configuration file at *<POS_install_directory>*`\`*<client>*`\pos\config\eReceiptFontConfig.xml`. Point-of-Service updates the FOP configuration to use the new fonts in addition to the standard fonts available. The following is an example of the structure of the configuration file based on the commands in the previous step.

   ```
   <configuration>
   ..................
   <fonts>
   ..................
   ..................
     <font metrics-file="c:\windows\config\gulim.xml"
   embed-file="c:\windows\fonts\gulim.ttc" kerning="yes">
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="normal" weight="normal"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="normal" weight="bold"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="italic" weight="normal"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="italic" weight="bold"/>
    </font>
   ..................
   ..................
   </fonts>
   ..................
   </configuration>
   ```

4. To use the new fonts, set the value for the `ereceipt.font.family` key in the *<POS_install_directory>*`\`*<client>*`\pos\config\application.properties` file. The following is an example of the setting:

```
ereceipt.font.family=Gulim, SimSun, MingLiU, Gothic, Courier
```

> **Note:** eReceipt uses the Auto font selection strategy, which is the default font selection strategy. This strategy selects the first font from the list that is able to display the most characters in a word that contains characters that need different fonts.

Enabling Browser Functionality in the Client Installation

Point-of-Service provides the capability to access a website from a register using the **Browser** button on the Main Options screen. This functionality is only available on the Oracle stack. JDIC is required for this functionality.

To enable browser functionality:

1. Install JDIC on the client:
   a. The download is available at the following website:

      https://jdic.dev.java.net/releases.html#JDIC%2020060613

   b. Download version JDIC 20060613 Build. Select the **jdic-20060613-bin-cross-platform** zip file.
   c. Extract the contents.
   d. Copy the `jdic.jar` file and `Windows` directory to the *<POS_install_directory>*`\360common\common\build` directory.
2. Set up the Browser URL parameter. For information on this parameter, see the *Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions Configuration Guide*.

Configuring for Offline Data Updates

Point-of-Service provides the capability to automatically update offline data to clients. The scheduling of the updates can be configured. This configuration involves updating parameters and the `ServiceContent.xml` file. For more information on offline data updates and how to configure the updates, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.

Setting up the Store Server to use ISD for Tender Authorization

Note: ISD Key Management messaging is used for encrypting all sensitive data in the request messages to the ISD host switch. Ensure you have one of the following versions, or newer, of the ISD software:

- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Unix V5.3
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for iSeries V5.3
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Java V6.4

If **ISD** was selected on the Tender Authorization screen, you must update the security for your JRE. See "Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)".

BIN Validation

The Bin File Lookup parameter, in the Tender parameter group, determines if BIN validation on credit cards is performed using a BIN file provided by the retailer. While results will vary by retailer, this parameter enables the retailer to reduce their interchange fees, that is, the amount a retailer is charged for authorization of credit cards.

To use the BIN file provided by the retailer, set the Bin File Lookup parameter to Yes. The default for this parameter is Yes.

Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)

If **ISD** was selected on the Tender Authorization screen or **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** was selected on the Security Setup: Key Store Settings screen, you must update the security for your JRE. You need to obtain version 5.0 of the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files.

1. Make a backup copy of `local_policy.jar` and `US_export_policy.jar`.
   - On the server:

     ```
     cd %JRE_HOME%\lib\security
     copy local_policy.jar local_policy.jar.bak
     copy US_export_policy.jar US_export_policy.jar.bak
     ```

   - On the client:

     ```
     cd %JRE_HOME%\lib\security
     copy local_policy.jar local_policy.jar.bak
     copy US_export_policy.jar US_export_policy.jar.bak
     ```

2. Download version 5.0 of the JCE.
   a. Go to the following website:

      http://java.sun.com/javase/downloads/index_jdk5.jsp

   b. Under Other Downloads, find **Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files 5.0**.

   c. Click **Download**.

d. Follow the instructions to download the JCE.

3. Copy the jar files into the JRE security directory. The files are bundled as `jce_policy-1_5_0.zip`.

Results of a Point-of-Service Installation

On the Oracle stack, the default root directory for the store server is `C:\OracleRetailStore\Server` and for the client is `C:\OracleRetailStore\Client`.

In this guide, these directories are referred to as *<POS_install_directory>*. The subdirectories listed in Table 6–3 are created:

Table 6–3 <POS_install_directory> Subdirectories

Name	Contents
360common	Files shared by multiple Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions applications including Foundation or 360Platform, Domain, and third-party jar files
databases	Resources for various database types
jre	Contains the Java runtime environment
pos	Point-of-Service files

Important subdirectories of the `\pos` directory is shown in Table 6–4:

Table 6–4 <POS_install_directory>\pos Subdirectories

Name	Contents
bin	Startup batch files and shell scripts
lib	Point-of-Service application and resource jar files
lib\locales	Text bundles for localization
3rdparty	Third-party source files used by Point-of-Service only
config	XML configuration files, `.properties` files, and `.dat` files
logs	Log files (additional log files are in the `bin` directory)

Running Point-of-Service

You run the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service system by executing batch files or shell scripts, found in your installation's `bin` directory, to launch various components.

> **Note:** For each command, a file (such as `dbstart.bat`) exists.

To run Point-of-Service:

1. Start the store server:

   `StoreServerConduit.bat`

   When the message TierManager Started appears, the server has started. The server component does not have a user interface.

2. Start the registers.

   For each of the Point-of-Service registers, execute the conduit script that starts the Point-of-Service client component. Use the following command:

   `ClientConduit.bat`

3. Verify the installation on each register by logging in to Point-of-Service.

   If the login is successful and the status bar indicates the database is online, the installation is complete.

Creating a Custom Installation

A custom installation of Point-of-Service can use one of several approaches:

- Install Point-of-Service using the installer on a reference machine, and copy the resulting installation to other machines.
  - With this method, you can change the configuration settings of the installation as described in the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide* until the installation works as desired, then propagate those configurations to other machines.
  - You can copy just the installation directory to a new machine, or if the hardware is sufficiently similar, you can copy the entire hard drive image to the machine. Copying the entire hard drive retains the JavaPOS installation as well as any other customizations.
  - You must change the WorkstationID value for the target machines to a unique number. This value can be found in `<POS_install_directory>\pos\config\application.properties`.
- Create a custom installer which allows for various hardware options but specifies the software choices your company has chosen.

  > **Note:** By default, installation of a register requires the following IBM Install Set parameter to have a specific value:
  >
  > - Hard Total must be Off.

7

Installation for Standalone on the IBM Stack

This chapter provides information about the installation procedures for Oracle Retail Point-of-Service for Standalone installation. If Point-of-Service will not be integrated with Back Office or Central Office, you can use Standalone. Standalone is selected on the Application Server Type installer screen.

Oracle Retail provides an installer for Point-of-Service, but customer installations typically develop custom procedures. Note that the installer is not appropriate for all installations. Oracle Retail expects implementation teams to develop custom procedures for actual register installations, which may or may not be based on the installer described here. For guidelines, see "Creating a Custom Installation".

Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users

The following recommendations should be considered for schema owners:

- Database administrators should create an individual schema owner for each application, unless the applications share the same data. In the case of Oracle Retail Back Office and Point-of-Service, the database schema owner are the same because these applications share a database.
- The schema owners should only have enough privileges to install the database.

For information on the best practices for passwords, see Appendix N.

For Standalone, both the database schema owner and data source user need to be created.

To create the database schema owner:

1. Log in using the database administrator user ID.
2. Create the schema owner user.

   ```
   CREATE SCHEMA <schema_name> AUTHORIZATION <schema_username>
   ```

3. Grant the privileges, shown in the following example, to the user.

   ```
   GRANT CREATETAB, BINDADD, CONNECT, IMPLICIT_SCHEMA ON DATABASE TO USER
   <schema_username>
   ```

4. Grant the following object level privileges to the schema owner user.

   ```
   GRANT CREATEIN, DROPIN, ALTERIN ON SCHEMA <schema_name> TO USER
   <schema_username> WITH GRANT OPTION
   ```

To create the data source user:

1. If not already logged in, log in using the database administrator user ID.
2. Create the data source user.

   ```
   CREATE SCHEMA <data_source_schema_name> AUTHORIZATION <data_source_username>
   ```

3. Grant the privileges, shown in the following example, to the data source user.

   ```
   GRANT CONNECT, IMPLICIT_SCHEMA ON DATABASE TO USER <data_source_username>
   ```

4. Grant the following object level privileges to the data source user.

   ```
   GRANT CREATEIN ON SCHEMA <data_source_schema_name> TO USER <data_source_
   username> WITH GRANT OPTION
   ```

The installer grants the data source user access to the application database objects.

Installing Point-of-Service

To establish an initial Oracle Retail Point-of-Service installation or to create a demonstration system, use the Point-of-Service installer as described in this section.

Determining Tier Type

Machines and logical components of the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service application are defined in Table 7–1:

Table 7–1 Server Tier Logical Components

Machine	Description
Store Server	The machine that runs the server component of Oracle Retail Point-of-Service. There is at least one store server for each store. This component runs as a service. This machine may also house other Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions components such as the OracleRetailStore database.
Point-of-Service Clients	The machines that execute the Point-of-Service transactions; they are typically cash registers.
Database Server	The machine that houses the OracleRetailStore databases. This machine may or may not be the same as the store server.
JMS Server	The machine that houses the JMS server software.

When you run the installer, it asks you to specify a Tier Type. The following types are available:

- N-Tier Client—Choose this when installing the client component.
- N-Tier Store Server—Choose this when installing the store server component.

Installing the Database

Oracle Retail products such as Point-of-Service use the OracleRetailStore database. One OracleRetailStore database is typically installed in each store. Data stored in the OracleRetailStore database includes employee names, login information, and transaction data. The database can be located on the store server or on a separate machine acting as the database server. The database must be installed before Point-of-Service can be installed.

Table 7–2 shows the database configuration information that is needed during installation.

Table 7–2 Database Configuration Settings

Installer Screen	Required Data
Database Configuration	Enter the following information for the database: ■ JDBC driver path ■ Driver class name ■ Database URL ■ Jar name ■ Database schema owner user ID and password (for a client installation) ■ Data source user ID and password
Logging Options	Choose how the log is exported.

Required Settings for the Database

The following settings must be made during database creation:

- The database must be set to UTF8.
- When using the Oracle 11g database server, make the following changes to the system settings:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_NUMERIC_CHARACTERS = '.,-' SCOPE=SPFILE;
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_DATE_FORMAT ='YYYY-MM-DD' SCOPE=SPFILE;
ALTER SYSTEM SET NLS_TIMESTAMP_FORMAT = 'YYYY-MM-DD HH24:MI:SS.FF'
    SCOPE=SPFILE;
```

Installing Point-of-Service on Machines

If a previous version of Point-of-Service is installed on a machine, uninstall it by deleting the installation directory (the default directory is `/opt/OracleRetailStore`) or choose a different installation directory from the default.

Run the installer one time for each machine in the Server Tier and once for each register.

The installer performs the following steps. Not all steps apply to client and server installations.

- Installs Foundation, Retail Domain, and Oracle Retail Point-of-Service jar files.
- Installs database build scripts and start-up files.
- Defines Server Tier in the conduit script that starts Point-of-Service for the given machine.
- Defines hostnames or IP addresses and port numbers for the Store Server and database server.
- Defines device availability.
- Defines application properties for Store ID and Register Number.

Updating Device Configuration

If installing to a register using the Verifone MX860 device, refer to the instructions in *<POS_install_directory>*/config/device/verifone/mx860/InstallationInstructions.txt in order to prepare the device with the necessary forms and images.

Update the jpos.xml file to reflect the devices used on the machine. The typical location for this file is C:\POS\IBMJPOS\jpos.xml.

1. To configure the default scanner, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the jpos.xml file:

```
JposEntry logicalName="defaultScanner">

        <creation
factoryClass="com.extendyourstore.jpos.CrsJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.extendyourstore.jpos.Scanner.Simple3"/>
        <vendor name="360Commerce" url="http://www.360commerce.com"/>
        <jpos category="Scanner" version="1.5"/>
        <product description="360Commerce Serial Scanner"/>

        <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->

        <prop name="parity" type="String" value="0"/>
        <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="7"/>
        <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="9600"/>
        <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
        <prop name="suffix" type="String" value="13"/>
        <prop name="debug" type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="port" type="String" value="COM2"/>

</JposEntry>
```

2. Configure the signature capture screen.

    a. To configure the Ingenico device for signature capture, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the jpos.xml file. Set the portName value to the appropriate COM port. Change <pos_install_directory> to your installation directory for Point-of-Service.

    In the following example, these changes are shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiSignatureCapture">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.SignatureCaptureService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="SignatureCapture" version="1.7.250"/>
   <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) SignatureCapture Service for
Ingenico 6580 Touch Screen" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="sigcap" type="String" value="sigcap.icg"/>
    <prop name="download" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="eftpver" type="String" value="0220"/>
```

```
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="sigline" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="eftlver" type="String" value="0433"/>
    <prop name="sigStart" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="ConfigPath" type="String"
value="<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="eftpfile" type="String" value="./res/EFTP0220.1"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="sigTotal" type="Byte" value="30"/>
    <prop name="optimize" type="Boolean" value="true"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
</JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for signature capture, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiSignatureCapture">
<creation
actoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.SignatureCaptureService"/
>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Signature Capture" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx SignatureCaptureService"
name="VeriFone Signature Capture" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="SIGCAP_FORM" type="String" value="FA_SIGN"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="EndY" type="String" value="240"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="EndX" type="String" value="435"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String"
value="SignatureCaptureService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="StartY" type="String" value="180"/>
    <prop name="StartX" type="String" value="60"/>
    <prop name="StartTimeOut" type="String" value="0"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

3. Configure the customer interaction device screens.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the customer interaction device screens, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. Change `<pos_install_directory>` to your installation directory for Point-of-Service.

      In the following example, these changes are shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiGUI">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.FormService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="Form" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) Form Service for Ingenico
6580" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="eftlver" type="String" value="0433"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>

    <prop name="ConfigPath" type="String" value=
"<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/"/>
    <prop name="forms" type="String" value="
<pos_install_directory>/config/device/ingenico/i6580/i6580.forms"/>
    <prop name="Images" type="String" value="images.icg"/>
    <prop name="welcome" type="String" value="welcome.icg"/>
    <prop name="thanks" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="authmsg" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="msrprompt" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="plzwait" type="String" value="messages.icg"/>
    <prop name="items" type="String" value="items.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenders" type="String" value="tenders.icg"/>
    <prop name="message" type="String" value="message.icg"/>
    <prop name="credConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="debitConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="giftConf" type="String" value="credconf.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect1" type="String" value="tendc.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect2" type="String" value="tendcd.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect3" type="String" value="tend3btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect4" type="String" value="tend4btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect5" type="String" value="tend2btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="tenderSelect6" type="String" value="tend3btn.icg"/>
    <prop name="sigcap" type="String" value="sigcap.icg"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="eftpver" type="String" value="0220"/>
    <prop name="numOfImages" type="Integer" value="4"/>
    <prop name="loopInterval" type="Integer" value="15"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="attribute" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="optimize" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="item10" type="String" value="Cotton Shirt    "/>
```

```
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="ShowSplash" type="Boolean" value="true"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="font" type="Byte" value="2"/>
    <prop name="download" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for customer interaction device screens, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiGUI">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.LineDisplayService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Line Display" version="1.11"/>
   <product description="VeriFone mx8xx LineDisplayService" name="VeriFone
Line Display" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="3000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="FontSizeList" type="String" value="10,11,12,13,14,15"/>
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="XDTXOptions" type="String" value="49409"/>
    <prop name="DeviceWindows" type="String" value="10"/>
    <prop name="FontName" type="String"
value="VeraMono|VeraMoBd|VeraMoIt|VeraMoBI"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="LineDisplayService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="ColorOptions" type="String" value="E4E1AE|000000|FF0000"/>
    <prop name="ScreenModeList" type="String"
value="19x53,18x45,16x40,14x40,14x35,13x35"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

4. Configure the PIN Pad device.

   a. To configure the Ingenico device for the PIN Pad device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiPINPad">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.PINPadService"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <jpos category="PINPad" version="1.7.250"/>
    <product description="Ingenico JavaPOS(TM) PINPad Service for Ingenico
6580 Touch Screen" name="Ingenico JavaPOS for Ingenico 6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>

    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="keyIndex" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="120000"/>
    <prop name="pinTimeout2" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="pinTimeout1" type="Byte" value="15"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
</JposEntry>
```

   b. To configure the Verifone device for the PIN Pad device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiPINPad">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.VFFormService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Form" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx VFFormService" name="VeriFone
Form" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>
    <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
    <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
    <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
    <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
    <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
    <prop name="PINPAD_FORM" type="String" value="860_FA_PINE"/>
```

```
    <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="VFFormService"/>
    <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
    <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
    <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
</JposEntry>
```

5. Configure the MSR on the customer interaction device.

a. To configure the Ingenico device for the MSR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiMSR">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.IngenicoServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ingenico.jpos.services.i6k.MSRService"/>
    <jpos category="MSR" version="1.72"/>
    <vendor name="Ingenico" url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <product description="Ingenico i6580 MSR" name="Ingenico i6580"
url="http://www.ingenico-us.com"/>
    <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM1"/>
    <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
    <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
    <prop name="flowControl" type="String" value="Xon/Xoff"/>
    <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
    <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS232"/>
    <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="19200"/>
    <prop name="timeOut" type="Integer" value="30000"/>
    <prop name="conn" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="ipaddress" type="String" value="10.15.2.218"/>
    <prop name="port" type="Integer" value="8001"/>
    <prop name="impl" type="Integer" value="0"/>
    <prop name="backlight" type="Byte" value="0"/>
    <prop name="mac" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ped" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ped_sav" type="Boolean" value="false"/>
    <prop name="ulog" type="Byte" value="02"/>
    <prop name="logLevel" type="String" value="OFF"/>
    <prop name="logFile" type="String" value="../logs/i6580%g.log"/>
    <prop name="formatter" type="Integer" value="2"/>
</JposEntry>
```

b. To configure the Verifone device for the MSR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file. Set the `portName` value to the appropriate COM port. In the following example, this change is shown in bold:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="cpoiMSR">
    <creation
factoryClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.VFJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.verifone.javapos.services.mx8xx.MSRService"/>
    <vendor name="VeriFone" url="http://www.verifone.com"/>
    <jpos category="Magnetic Stripe Reader" version="1.11"/>
    <product description="VeriFone mx8xx MSRService" name="VeriFone
Magnetic Stripe Reader" url="http://www.javapos.com"/>
```

```
        <!--Other non JavaPOS required property (mostly vendor properties and
    bus specific properties i.e. RS232 )-->
        <prop name="CommTimeout" type="Integer" value="2000"/>
        <prop name="portName" type="String" value="COM3"/>
        <prop name="PROXYIPADDRESS" type="String" value="127.0.0.1"/>
        <prop name="dataBits" type="String" value="8"/>
        <prop name="PROTCLASSNAME" type="String"
    value="com.verifone.javapos.devices.PP201DeviceManager"/>
        <prop name="deviceName" type="String" value="mx8xx"/>
        <prop name="PROXYSTARTUP" type="String" value="local"/>
        <prop name="TERMTYPE" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
        <prop name="parity" type="String" value="None"/>
        <prop name="stopBits" type="String" value="1"/>
        <prop name="serviceType" type="String" value="MSRService"/>
        <prop name="PASSTENABLE" type="String" value="FALSE"/>
        <prop name="PROXYPORTNUMBER" type="Integer" value="9800"/>
        <prop name="configName" type="String" value="MX8XX"/>
        <prop name="baudRate" type="String" value="115200"/>
    </JposEntry>
```

6. To configure the default printer, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultPrinter">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"/>
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.SdiIBM4610EPOSPrinter"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="POSPrinter" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) POSPrinter RS485 Service for IBM
4610 TI2/3/4/5/8/9 TM/F 6/7 Printer" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows
Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS485"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioDeviceNumber" type="String"
value="0x35"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioPortNumber" type="String"
value="0x11"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioSlotNumber" type="String"
value="0x01"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.SdiIBM4610EPOSPrinter"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.IBM4610PrinterServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

7. To configure the default MICR device, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultMICR">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBM4610MICR"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="MICR" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) MICR RS485 Service for IBM 4610
TI2/4/8/9 Printer" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3"
url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="RS485"/>
```

```
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBM4610MICR"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.MICRServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioSlotNumber" type="String"
value="0x01"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioPortNumber" type="String"
value="0x11"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.rs485.sioDeviceNumber" type="String"
value="0x35"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTableFile"
type="String" value="[file-path-goes-here]"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable4" type="String"
value="B778899001D154R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable3" type="String"
value="B667788990D153R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable2" type="String"
value="P123456780AAAAAXXSSS"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable1" type="String"
value="B445566778D151R"/>
       <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.exceptionTable0" type="String"
value="B334455667D150R"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.stripAccountDashes"
type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.stripTransitDashes"
type="String" value="false"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.MICR.switchTransitDashToSpace"
type="String" value="false"/>
</JposEntry>
```

8. To configure the default keyboard, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultPOSKeyboard">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMPOSKeyboard"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="POSKeyboard" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) POSKeyboard PS2 Service for IBM
4820/ANKPOS/CANPOS/NANPOS/SureONE Keyboards" name="IBM JavaPOS for
Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.Click" type="Byte"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.functionNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.Typematic"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.ExtendedKeyMapping"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMPOSKeyboard"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.POSKeyboardServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.keyboardNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="PosKbd"/>
```

```
        <prop name="com.ibm.jpos.sdi.config.POSKeyboard.KbdScanning"
type="Boolean" value="true"/>
</JposEntry>
```

9. To configure the default MSR, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultMSR">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"name="Ingenic
o ET1K Form Service for JavaPOS(TM) Standard"
                url="http://www.ingenico-us
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMMSR"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="MSR" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) MSR PS2 Service for IBM
ANKPOS/NANPOS/CANPOS/SureONE Keyboards" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows
Version 1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="PosKbd"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.functionNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.poskbd.keyboardNumber" type="String"
value="0"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMMSR"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.MSRServiceImp"/>
</JposEntry>
```

10. To configure the default cash drawer, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultCashDrawer">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMCashDrawer"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="CashDrawer" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) CashDrawer Service for IBM
SurePOS 300/72x/74x/78x-A" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version 1.9.3"
url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="Proprietary"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.ProprietaryBusSubType" type="String"
value="Embedded"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMCashDrawer"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.CashDrawerServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

11. To configure the default line display, replace the existing entry or add the following entry to the `jpos.xml` file:

```
<JposEntry logicalName="defaultLineDisplay">
        <creation
factoryClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.IBMJposServiceInstanceFactory"
```

```
serviceClass="com.ibm.jpos.services.LineDisplayLCVFD"/>
        <vendor name="IBM" url="http://www.ibm.com"/>
        <jpos category="LineDisplay" version="1.9.3"/>
        <product description="IBM JavaPOS(TM) LineDisplay USB Service for IBM
Vaccum Fluorescent Display (VFD)-A" name="IBM JavaPOS for Linux/Windows Version
1.9.3" url="http://www.pc.ibm.com/store/"/>

        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.hid.usageId" type="String"
value="0x2400"/>
        <prop name="deviceBus" type="String" value="HID"/>
        <prop name="abstractionClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.LineDisplayLCVFD"/>
        <prop name="impClass" type="String"
value="com.ibm.jpos.services.sdi.LineDisplayServiceImp"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.hid.usagePage" type="String"
value="0xFF45"/>
        <prop name="com.ibm.posj.bus.deviceNumber" type="String" value="0"/>
</JposEntry>
```

Expand the Point-of-Service Distribution

To extract the Point-of-Service files:

1. Extract the `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` file from the Point-of-Service 13.1.4 distribution EPD zip file.
2. Create a new staging directory for the Point-of-Service application distribution `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` file, for example, `/tmp/orpos/orpos-staging`.

   Note: The staging area (*<staging_directory>*) can exist anywhere on the system. It does not need to be under `ORACLE_HOME`.

3. Copy or upload `ORPOS-13.1.4.zip` to *<staging_directory>* and extract its contents. The following files and directories should be created under *<staging_directory>*`/ORPOS-13.1.4`:

```
ant/
ant-ext/
antinstall/
installer-resources/
installer-templates/
product/
antinstall-config.xml
build.xml
build-antinstall.xml
build-common.xml
build-common-oas.xml
build-common-was.xml
build-conditions.xml
build-filesets.xml
build-filters.xml
build-properties.xml
checkdeps.cmd
checkdeps.sh
install.cmd
install.sh
prepare.xml
```

For the remainder of this chapter, *<staging_directory>*/ORPOS-13.1.4 is referred to as *<INSTALL_DIR>*.

Obtaining Third-Party Library Files Required by Point-of-Service

The Point-of-Service application uses specific files from Apache. Get the required files for the Derby database. You can get the download at the website:

http://db.apache.org/derby/releases/release-10.2.2.0.html

Extract the following files:

- derby.jar
- derbytools.jar

Obtaining the IBM JRE Required for Client Install

This release requires IBM JRE 1.5 for client installs. The download is available at the following website:

http://www-307.ibm.com/pc/support/site.wss/document.do?sitestyle=lenovo&lndocid=MIGR-56888

To install IBM JRE 1.5, select the following file link:

ibm-java2-ibmpc-jre-50-win-i386.exe

Securing Communication

Communication with the database and communication between the store server and registers can be secured.

- On the Enable Secure JDBC screen, you select whether secure JDBC will be used for communication with the database. See Figure F–17 in Appendix F.
  - If **Yes** is selected, the installer sets up the secure JDBC.
  - If **No** is selected and you want to manually set up the secure JDBC after the installer completes, see Appendix Q.
- On the Enable Secure RMI screen, you select whether secure RMI will be used for communication between the store server and registers. See Figure F–21 in Appendix F and Figure H–16 in Appendix H.
  - If **Yes** is selected, the installer sets up the secure RMI.
  - If **No** is selected and you want to manually set up the secure RMI after the installer completes, see Appendix R.

Running the Point-of-Service Application Installer

This installer will configure and deploy the Point-of-Service application.

> **Note:** To see details on every screen and field for a server installation, see Appendix F. To see details for a client installation, see Appendix H.

1. Change to the *<INSTALL_DIR>* directory.
2. Set the JAVA_HOME environment variable to the location of your jdk. For example, /opt/j2sdk1.5. The variable must be set to the location of the jdk and not the jre.

> **Note:** The installer is not compatible with versions of Java earlier than 1.5.

3. Run the install.sh script. This will launch the installer. After installation is complete, a detailed installation log file is created at *<POS_install_directory>*/pos-install-yyyyMMddHHmm.log

   In the log file name, yyyyMMddHHmm is the timestamp of the install.

> **Note:** The typical usage for GUI mode does not use arguments.
>
> ```
> install.sh
> ```

Resolving Errors Encountered During Application Installation

If the application installer encounters any errors, you can read them in the above mentioned log file.

For a list of common installation errors, see Appendix K.

Creating the Point-of-Service Database Schema

The scripts that create the Point-of-Service database schema can be run from the installed pos/bin directory. The database server can be on the same system as the application server or on a different system.

> **Note:** Seed data includes sample data used to evaluate the application and demonstrate core functions of the software. There are references in the seed data to store ID 01291. During installation, if 01291 is selected for the store ID, SQL errors occur during the loading of the database. The SQL errors are caused by those references.

When Point-of-Service is being installed without Back Office, perform the following steps to create the Point-of-Service database schema:

1. Change to the *<POS_install_directory>*/pos/bin directory.
2. Set the JAVA_HOME and ANT_HOME environment variables.

3. Add `$JAVA_HOME/bin` and `$ANT_HOME/bin` to the front of the PATH environment variable.

   ```
   PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$ANT_HOME/bin:$PATH; export PATH
   ```

4. Run one of the available `dbbuild.sh` targets to create the database schema, load data, and load the procedures for purging aged data in the database. For information on the purge procedures, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.

   - seed_data: loads seed data
   - load_purge_procedures: loads database purge procedures

   For example, `dbbuild.sh seed_data`

5. If **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** was selected for the Transaction Retrieval Location, run `scratchpad.sh` to create the Scratchpad database.

Enabling Access for the Data Source User

If the data source user, *<data_source_username>*, created for Point-of-Service is not the same user ID created for the Back Office data source user, the Point-of-Service user must be granted access to the database schema after the Point-of-Service server is installed.

To grant access to the database:

1. Change to the *<POS_install_directory>*`/`*<server>*`/pos/bin` directory.
2. Set the `JAVA_HOME` and `ANT_HOME` environment variables.
3. Add `$JAVA_HOME/bin` and `$ANT_HOME/bin` to the front of the PATH environment variable.

   ```
   PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$ANT_HOME/bin:$PATH; export PATH
   ```

4. Run the following ant target.

   ```
   ant -f db.xml -Dschema.user=<data_source_username>
   -Dschema.password=<data_source_password> grant_schema
   ```

Installing Multibyte Fonts for eReceipt in the Client Installation

When an eReceipt is sent to a customer by e-mail, a pdf file that contains the eReceipt is attached to the e-mail. In order for this pdf file to print correctly with multibyte characters, the multibyte fonts must be defined in the client installation.

Point-of-Service uses Apache Formatting Objects Processor (FOP) to create eReceipts that are compatible with Adobe Acrobat. FOP and Adobe Acrobat require information about the fonts to use in the eReceipt. You must install and configure any mutlibyte fonts needed for eReceipts.

Note: Point-of-Service assumes that fonts are fixed-width for the formatting of receipts. If variable-width fonts are used, the fields on an eReceipt will not align properly.

To update the fonts in the client installation:

1. Install the required fonts.
2. Generate a font metrics file.

   The `fop.jar` file provides a TTFReader program to generate this file. The `fop.jar` file is available in the *<POS_install_directory>/<client>*/`360common/common/build` directory. The following are examples of the commands to use:

   - To specify a collection of fonts (TTC font):

     ```
     java -classpath <POS_install_directory>/<client>/360common/common/
     build/fop.jar org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader -ttcname "Gulim"
     /home/oracle/fonts/gulim.ttc gulim.xml
     ```

   - To specify a specific font (TTF font):

     ```
     java -classpath <POS_install_directory>/<client>/360common/common/
     build/fop.jar org.apache.fop.fonts.apps.TTFReader
     /home/oracle/fonts/SIMSUN.TTF SIMSUN.xml
     ```

3. Update the configuration file at *<POS_install_directory>/<client>*/pos/`config/eReceiptFontConfig.xml`. Point-of-Service updates the FOP configuration to use the new fonts in addition to the standard fonts available. The following is an example of the structure of the configuration file based on the commands in the previous step.

   ```
   <configuration>
   ..................
   <fonts>
   ..................
   ..................
     <font metrics-file="/home/oracle/config/gulim.xml"
   embed-file="/home/oracle/fonts/gulim.ttc" kerning="yes">
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="normal" weight="normal"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="normal" weight="bold"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="italic" weight="normal"/>
        <font-triplet name="Gulim" style="italic" weight="bold"/>
    </font>
   ..................
   ..................
   </fonts>
   ..................
   </configuration>
   ```

4. To use the new fonts, set the value for the `ereceipt.font.family` key in the *<POS_install_directory>/<client>*/pos/`config/application.properties` file. The following is an example of the setting:

   ```
   ereceipt.font.family=Gulim, SimSun, MingLiU, Gothic, Courier
   ```

> **Note:** eReceipt uses the Auto font selection strategy, which is the default font selection strategy. This strategy selects the first font from the list that is able to display the most characters in a word that contains characters that need different fonts.

Enabling Browser Functionality in the Client Installation

Point-of-Service provides the capability to access a website from a register using the **Browser** button on the Main Options screen. JDIC is required for this functionality.

To enable browser functionality:

1. Install JDIC on the client:
   a. The download is available at the following website:

      https://jdic.dev.java.net/servlets/ProjectDocumentList?expandedFolder-4183&folderID-5497

   b. Select **jdic-0.9.5**.
   c. Select the **jdic-0.9.5-bin-cross-platform.zip** file.
   d. Extract the contents.
   e. Copy the `jdic.jar` file and `Linux` directory to the *<POS_install_directory>*`/360common/common/build` directory.
   f. Make a copy of `libjdic.so` in the `linux/x86` JDIC directory and rename it to `jdic.so`. The file needs to be renamed because the JDIC code looks for `jdic.so`, but the file provided by JDIC is named `libjdic.so`.
2. Set up `MOZILLA_FIVE_HOME`, for example:

   ```
   export MOZILLA_FIVE_HOME=/usr/local/mozilla
   ```

3. Add the `jdic.jar` file to `CLASSPATH`, for example:

   ```
   export CLASSPATH=/OracleRetailStore/Client/360common/common/build/jdic.jar
   ```

4. Add the folder containing `libjdic.so` to `PATH`, for example:

   ```
   export PATH=/OracleRetailStore/Client/360common/common/build/linux/x86/:$PATH
   ```

5. Set up the Browser URL parameter. For information on this parameter, see the *Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions Configuration Guide*.
6. Verify that the desired browser is the system default.

Verify the Permissions for Mozilla

Execute permission should be set for the following:

- The installed Mozilla directory.
- The `Linux` folder copied from the JDIC package to the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service client directory.

For example, you can use the following command to set execute permission:

```
chmod -R 777 /usr/local/mozilla/
```

Configuring for Offline Data Updates

Point-of-Service provides the capability to automatically update offline data to clients. The scheduling of the updates can be configured. This configuration involves updating parameters and the `ServiceContext.xml` file. For more information on offline data updates and how to configure the updates, see the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide*.

Setting up the Store Server to use ISD for Tender Authorization

Note: ISD Key Management messaging is used for encrypting all sensitive data in the request messages to the ISD host switch. Ensure you have one of the following versions, or newer, of the ISD software:

- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Unix V5.3
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for iSeries V5.3
- ISD Payment Switch Authorization and Settlement Suite for Java V6.4

If **ISD** was selected on the Tender Authorization screen, you must update the security for your JRE. See "Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)".

BIN Validation

The Bin File Lookup parameter, in the Tender parameter group, determines if BIN validation on credit cards is performed using a BIN file provided by the retailer. While results will vary by retailer, this parameter enables the retailer to reduce their interchange fees, that is, the amount a retailer is charged for authorization of credit cards.

To use the BIN file provided by the retailer, set the Bin File Lookup parameter to Yes. The default for this parameter is Yes.

Install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)

If **ISD** was selected on the Tender Authorization screen or **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** was selected on the Security Setup: Key Store Settings screen, you must update the security for your JRE. You need to obtain version 1.4.2 of the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files. The 1.4.2 version for the JCE Unlimited Strength Encryption is compatible with the IBM Java5 JRE.

1. Make a backup copy of `local_policy.jar` and `US_export_policy.jar`.

```
cd $JRE_HOME/lib/security
mv local_policy.jar local_policy.jar.bak
mv US_export_policy.jar US_export_policy.jar.bak
```

2. Download version 1.4.2 of JCE.
   a. Go to the following website:

      http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/java/jdk/security/50/

   b. Click **IBM SDK Policy Files**. You are prompted to log in.
   c. After you log in, follow the instructions to download the JCE.
3. Copy the jar files into the JRE security directory. The files are bundled as `unrestrict142.zip`.

Results of a Point-of-Service Installation

The default root directory for the store server is `opt/OracleRetailStore/Server` and for the client is `opt/OracleRetailStore/Client`.

In this guide, these directories are referred to as *<POS_install_directory>*. The subdirectories listed in Table 7–3 are created:

Table 7–3 <POS_install_directory> Subdirectories

Name	Contents
360common	Files shared by multiple Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions applications including Foundation or 360Platform, Domain, and third-party jar files
databases	Resources for various database types
jre	Contains the Java runtime environment
pos	Point-of-Service files

Important subdirectories of the `pos` directory is shown in Table 7–4:

Table 7–4 <POS_install_directory>/pos Subdirectories

Name	Contents
bin	Startup batch files and shell scripts
lib	Point-of-Service application and resource jar files
lib\locales	Text bundles for localization
3rdparty	Third-party source files used by Point-of-Service only
config	XML configuration files, `.properties` files, and `.dat` files
logs	Log files (additional log files are in the `bin` directory)

Running Point-of-Service

You run the Oracle Retail Point-of-Service system by executing batch files or shell scripts, found in your installation's `bin` directory, to launch various components.

> **Note:** For each command, a Linux file (such as `dbstart.sh`) exists.

To run Point-of-Service:

1. Start the store server:

   `StoreServerConduit.sh`

   When the message TierManager Started appears, the server has started. The server component does not have a user interface.

2. Start the registers.

   For each of the Point-of-Service registers, execute the conduit script that starts the Point-of-Service client component. Use the following command:

   `ClientConduit.sh`

3. Verify the installation on each register by logging in to Point-of-Service.

   If the login is successful and the status bar indicates the database is online, the installation is complete.

Creating a Custom Installation

A custom installation of Point-of-Service can use one of several approaches:

- Install Point-of-Service using the installer on a reference machine, and copy the resulting installation to other machines.
  - With this method, you can change the configuration settings of the installation as described in the *Oracle Retail Point-of-Service Operations Guide* until the installation works as desired, then propagate those configurations to other machines.
  - You can copy just the installation directory to a new machine, or if the hardware is sufficiently similar, you can copy the entire hard drive image to the machine. Copying the entire hard drive retains the JavaPOS installation as well as any other customizations.
  - You must change the WorkstationID value for the target machines to a unique number. This value can be found in `<POS_install_directory>/pos/config/application.properties`.
- Create a custom installer which allows for various hardware options but specifies the software choices your company has chosen.

  > **Note:** By default, installation of a register requires the following IBM Install Set parameter to have a specific value:
  >
  > - Hard Total must be Off.

A

Appendix: Installer Screens for Server Installation on Linux

You need specific details about your environment for the installer to successfully install the Point-of-Service application on the Oracle Stack on OEL or Red Hat Enterprise Linux. This appendix shows the screens that are displayed during the installation of the Point-of-Service server. Depending on the options you select, you may not see some screens or fields.

> **Note:** The flow of the screens and selections on the screens shown in this appendix follow the installation of the server using the supported software selections for the Oracle stack as shown in Chapter 1.

For each field on a screen, a table is included in this appendix that describes the field. If you want to document any specific information about your environment for any field, a Notes row is provided in each table for saving that information.

For the installer screens for a client installation on the Oracle stack, see Appendix C.

Figure A–1 Introduction

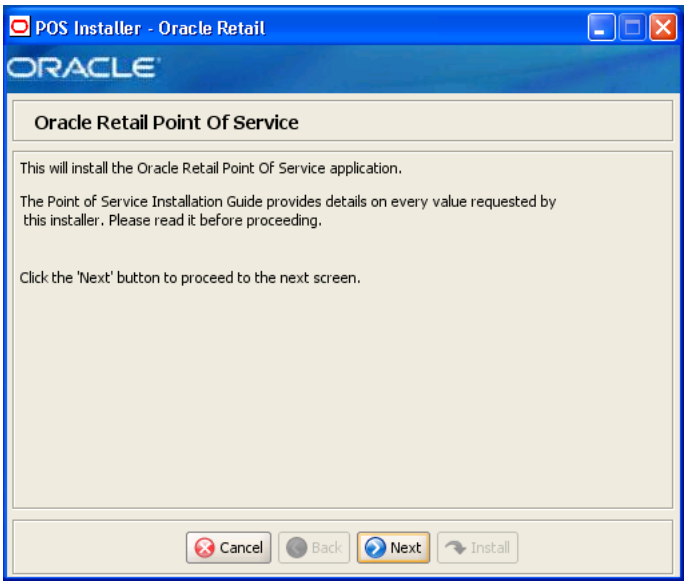


Figure A–2 Previous POS Install

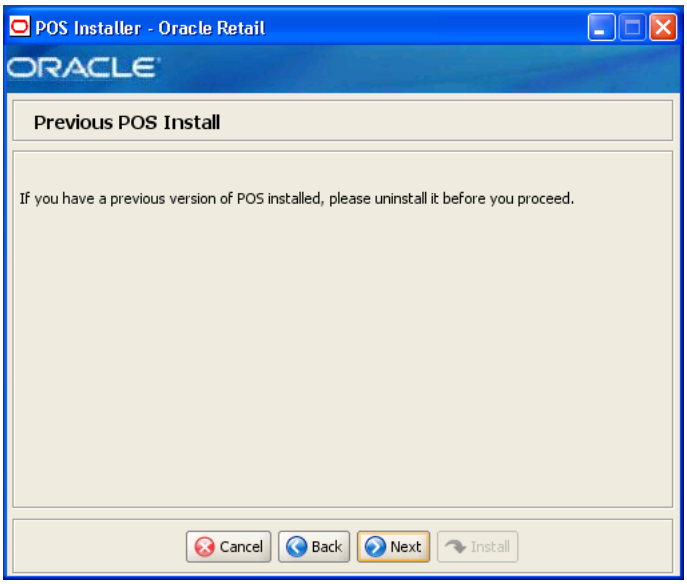
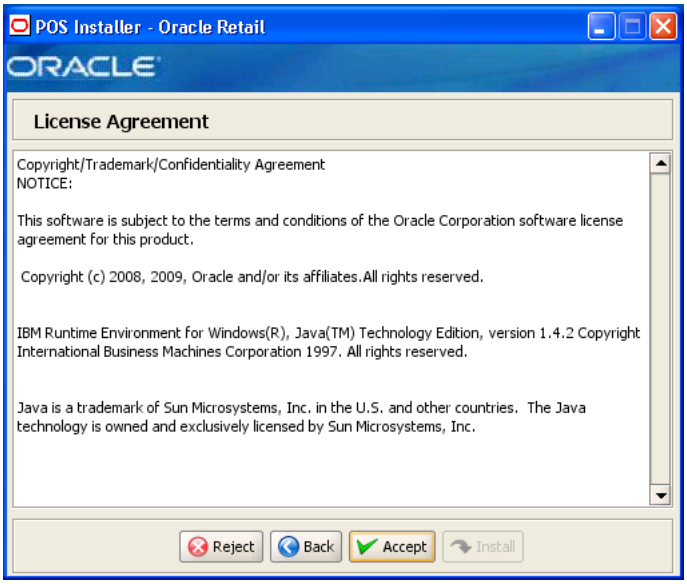
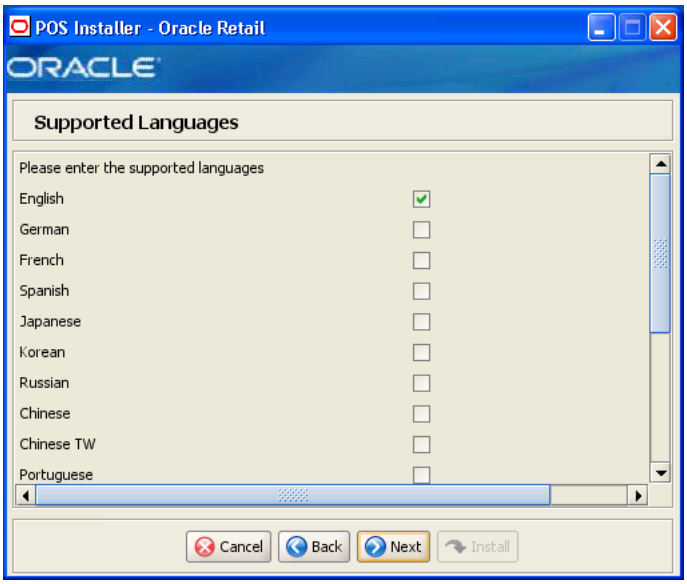


Figure A–3 License Agreement



Note: You must choose to accept the terms of the license agreement in order for the installation to continue.

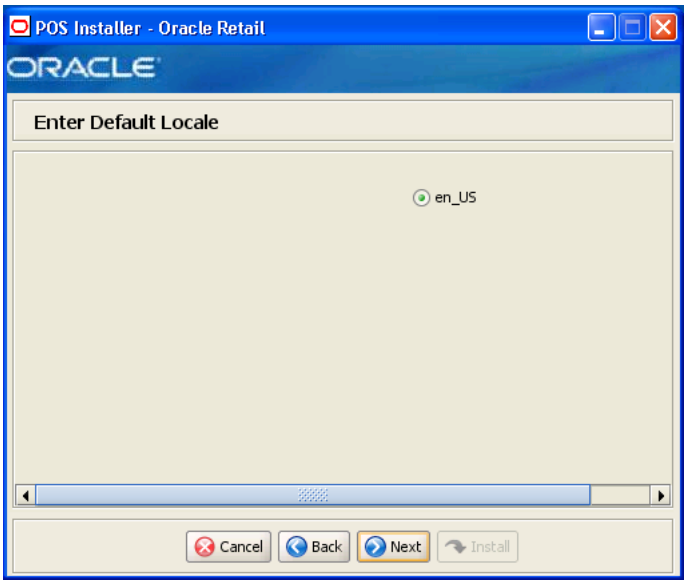
Figure A–4 Supported Languages



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Please enter the supported languages
Field Description	Select the languages that will be available for the Point-of-Service application. The languages selected on this screen determine the available choices on the Enter Default Locale screen.
Example	English
Notes	

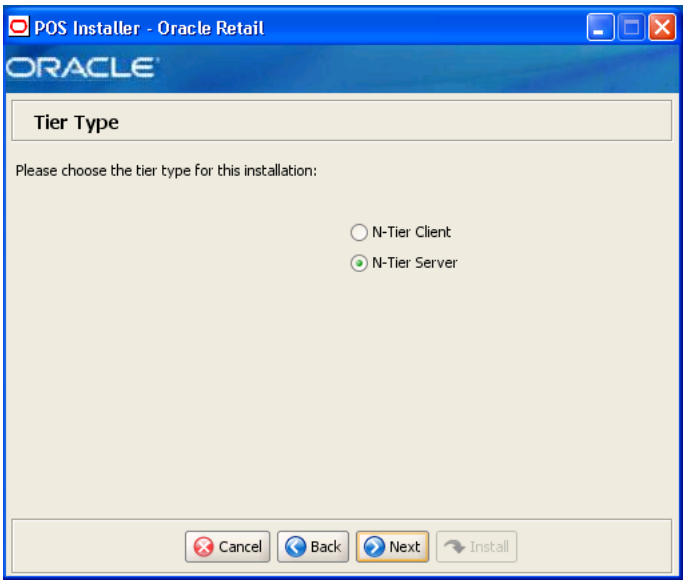
Figure A–5 Enter Default Locale



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enter Default Locale
Field Description	Locale support in Point-of-Service enables the date, time, currency, calendar, address, and phone number to be displayed in the format for the selected default locale. The choices for default locale are dependent on the selections made on the Supported Languages screen. For each selected language, the default locale for that language is displayed on the Enter Default Locale screen. For example, if English and French are selected on the Supported Languages screen, en_US and fr_FR are the available choices for the default locale.
Example	en_US
Notes	

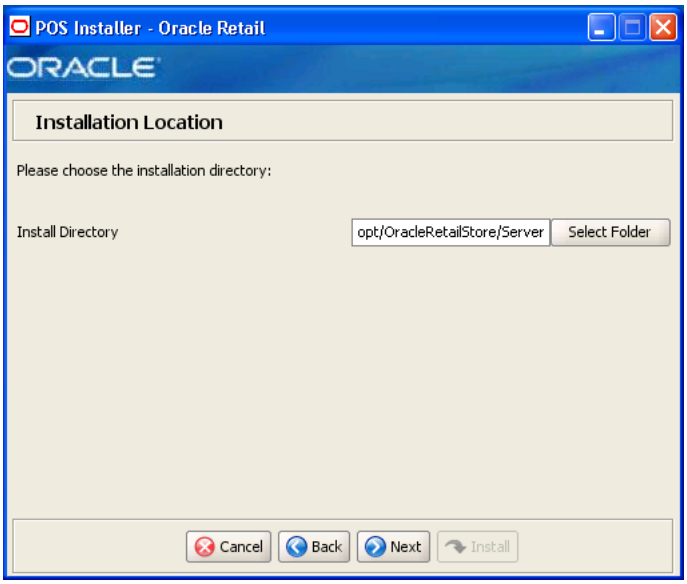
Figure A–6 Tier Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Tier Type
Field Description	Choose the server tier type for this installation. For more information, see "Determining Tier Type" in Chapter 2. To install the N-Tier version of the server, choose **N-Tier Server**.
Example	N-Tier Server
Notes	

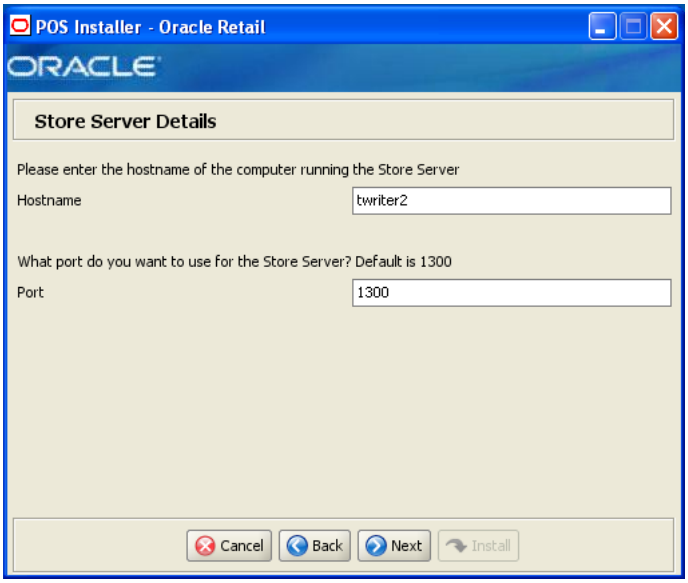
Figure A–7 Installation Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Install Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory into which the Point-of-Service files are copied. The default for the first directory in the path is `OracleRetailStore`. This directory should be the same for all Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions products. When installing for Windows and **N-Tier Server** is selected for the Tier Type, the default installation directory is `OracleRetailStore/Server`. **Note:** The server and the client must not be installed into the same directory. In this guide, *<POS_install_directory>* refers to the selected installation directory for the server or client. Files specific to Point-of-Service are copied to the `/pos` subdirectory of `<POS_install_directory>`.
Example	`/opt/OracleRetailStore/Server`
Notes	

Figure A–8 Store Server Details

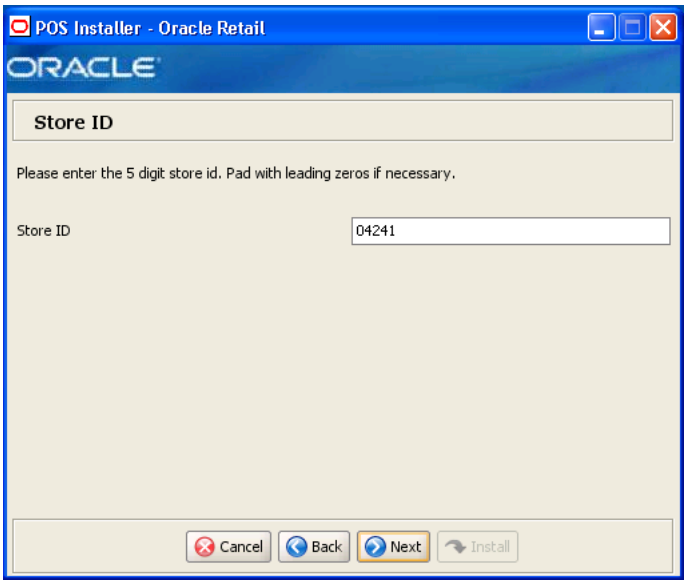


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Hostname
Field Description	Enter the host name of the store server.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

Field Title	Port
Field Description	Enter the port number of the store server used for the communication between the store server and the host computer.
Example	1300
Notes	

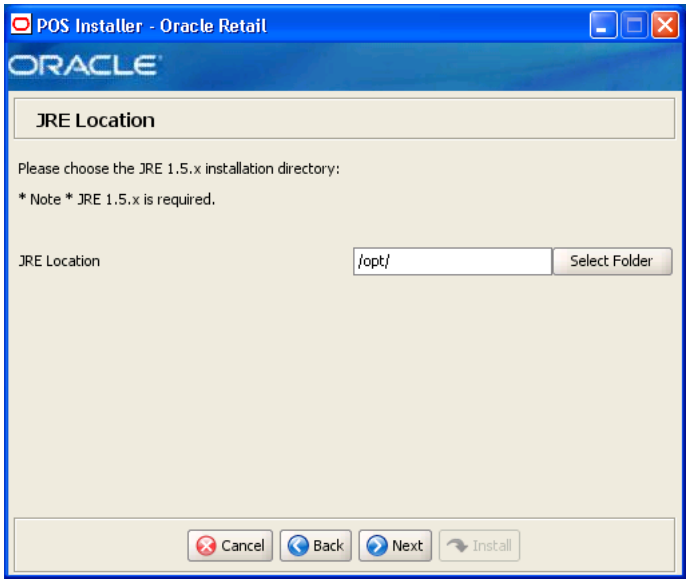
Figure A–9 Store ID



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Store ID
Field Description	Enter the store ID.
Example	04241
Notes	

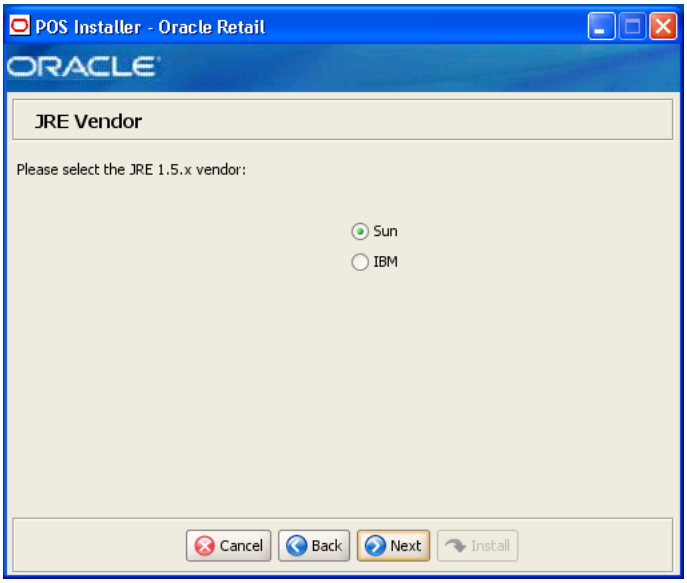
Figure A–10 JRE Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Location
Field Description	Enter the location where the JRE is installed.
Example	`/opt/Java/jre1.5`
Notes	

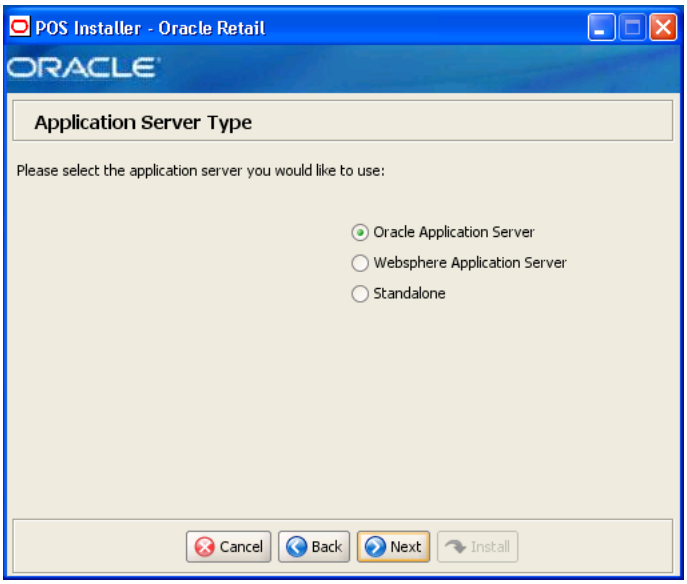
Figure A–11 JRE Vendor



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Vendor
Field Description	Select the vendor for the JRE entered on the JRE Location screen: ▪ Sun ▪ IBM Choose **Sun**.
Example	Sun
Notes	

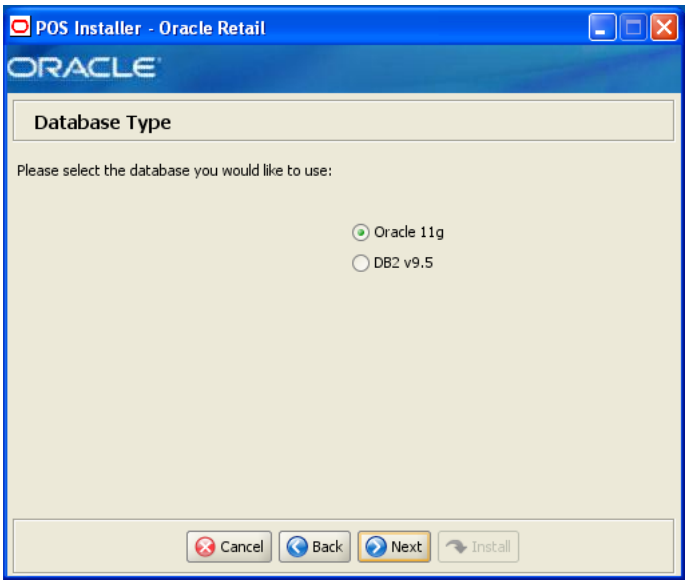
Figure A–12 Application Server Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Application Server Type
Field Description	Select the application server to be used for the store server. ▪ Oracle Application Server ▪ Websphere Application Server ▪ Standalone Choose **Oracle Application Server**.
Example	Oracle Application Server
Notes	

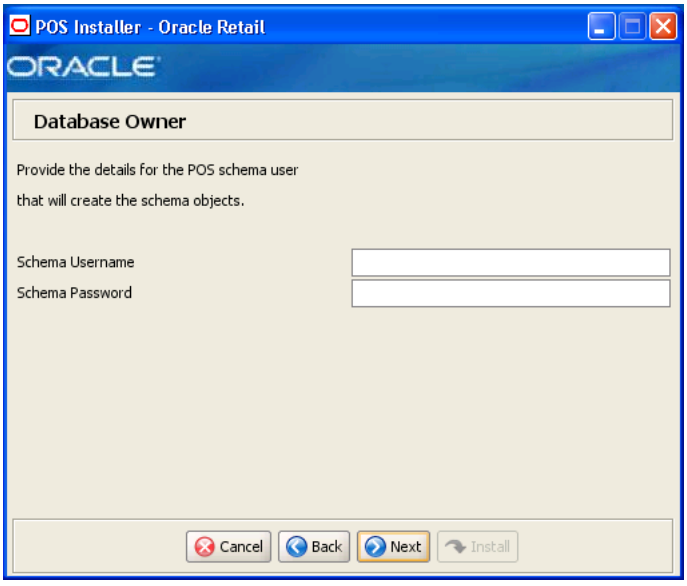
Figure A–13 Database Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Database Type
Field Description	Select the database provider that is used for the OracleRetailStore database.
Example	Oracle 11g
Notes	

Figure A–14 Database Owner

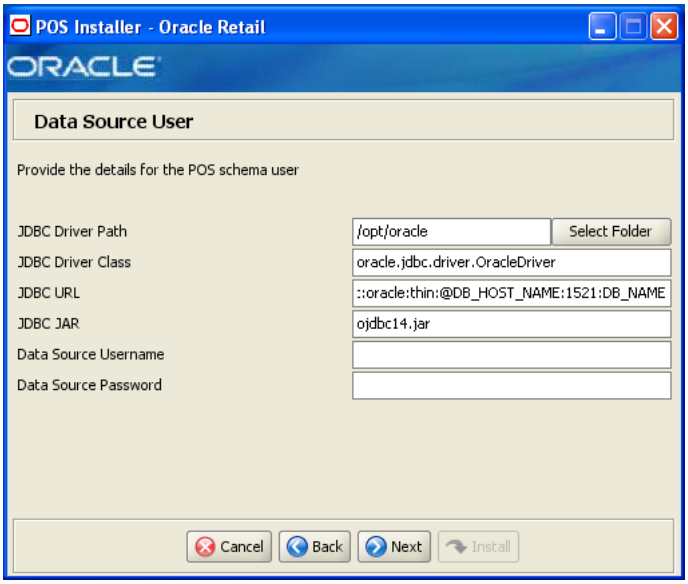


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Schema Username
Field Description	Schema user name that manages the objects in the schema. This user has Create, Drop, and Alter privileges in the schema, that is, Data Definition Language (DDL) execution privileges. For information on creating this user, see "Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users" in Chapter 2. **Note:** This user creates the database objects used by Point-of-Service.
Example	DBOWNER
Notes	

Field Title	Schema Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the database owner.
Notes	

Figure A–15 Database Source User for Oracle 11g



The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	JDBC Driver Path
Field Description	Choose the path to the jar containing the database driver. This is the jar entered in the JDBC JAR field.
Example	`/opt/oracle`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC Driver
Field Description	Enter the database driver class name.
Example	`oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver`
Notes	

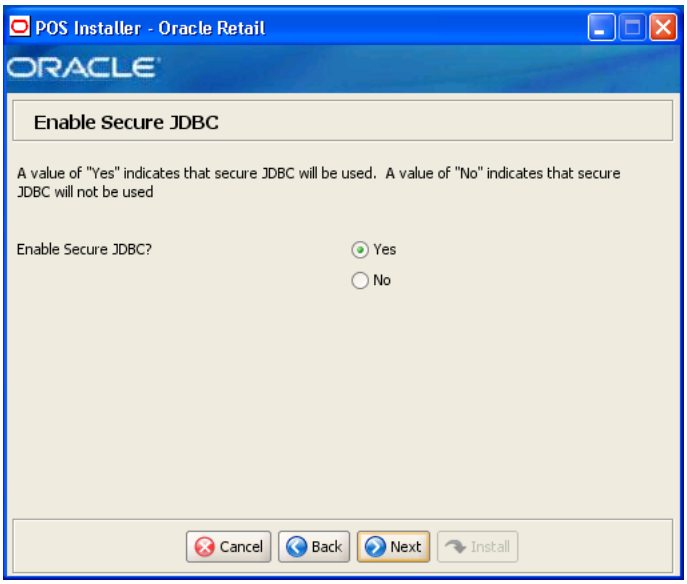
Field Title	JDBC URL
Field Description	Enter the URL used by the Point-of-Service application to access the database schema. For the expected syntax, see Appendix J.
Example	`jdbc:oracle:thin:@myhost:1521:mydatabase`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC JAR
Field Description	Enter the name of the jar containing the database driver.
Example	`ojdbc14.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Data Source Username
Field Description	Database user name that can access and manipulate the data in the schema. This user can have Select, Insert, Update, Delete, and Execute privileges on objects in the schema, that is, Data Manipulation Language (DML) execution privileges. For information on creating this user, see "Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users" in Chapter 2. **Note:** This schema user is used by Point-of-Service to access the database.
Example	DBUSER
Notes	

Field Title	Data Source Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the data source user.
Notes	

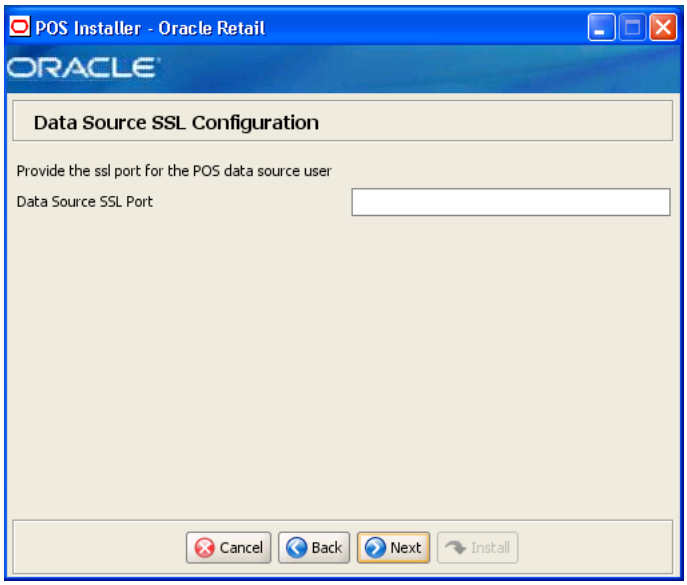
Figure A–16 Enable Secure JDBC



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable Secure JDBC?
Field Description	Select whether secure JDBC is to be used for communication with the database.
Example	Yes
Notes	

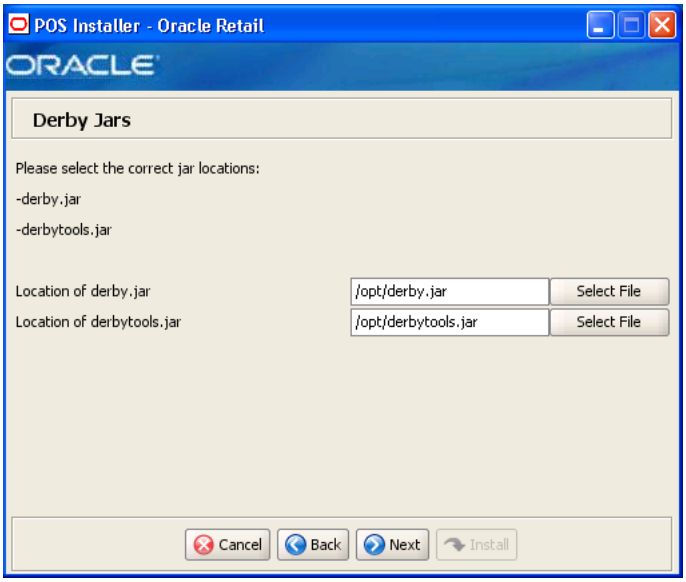
Figure A–17 Data Source SSL Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure JDBC screen. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Data Source SSL Port
Field Description	SSL port used to access the database.
Example	2484
Notes	

Figure A–18 Derby Jars

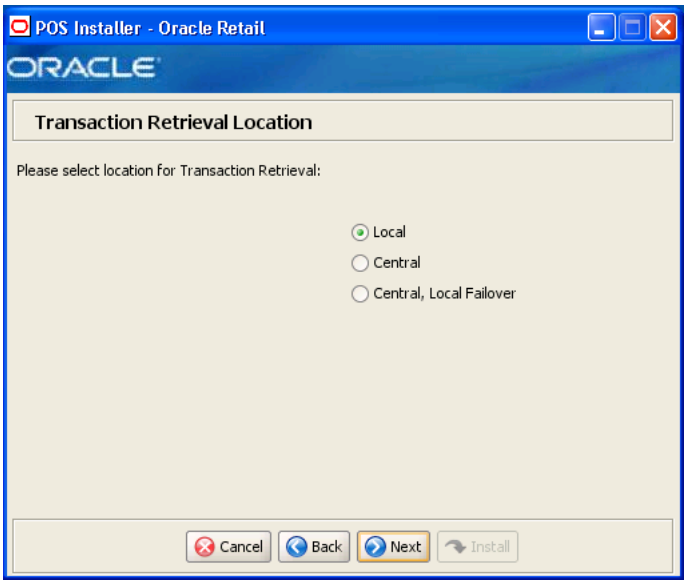


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Location of derby.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derby.jar` file.
Example	`/opt/thirdparty/apache-derby-10.2.2/lib/derby.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Location of derbytools.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derbytools.jar` file.
Example	`/opt/thirdparty/apache-derby-10.2.2/lib/derbytools.jar`
Notes	

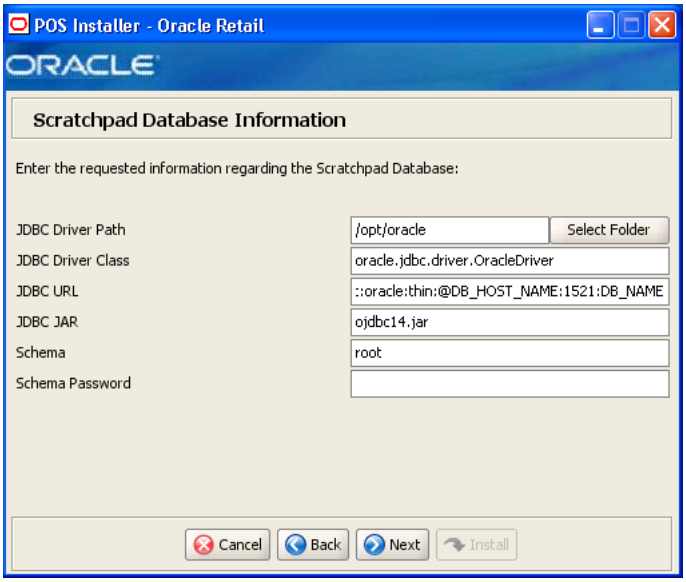
Figure A–19 Transaction Retrieval Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Transaction retrieval location
Field Description	Choose the location for retrieving transactions. ▪ If transactions should only be retrieved from the store database, choose **Local**. ▪ If transactions should only be retrieved from the corporate database, choose **Central**. ▪ If transactions should be retrieved from the corporate database, and if not found, then retrieved from the store database, choose **Central, Local Failover**. **Note:** You must choose the same location for both the store server and client installations.
Example	Local
Notes	

Figure A–20 Scratchpad Database Information



This screen is only displayed if **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** is selected for the Transaction Retrieval Location. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	JDBC Driver Path
Field Description	Choose the path to the jar containing the database driver. This is the jar entered in the JDBC JAR field.
Example	`/opt/oracle`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC Driver Class
Field Description	Enter the database driver class name.
Example	`oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver`
Notes	

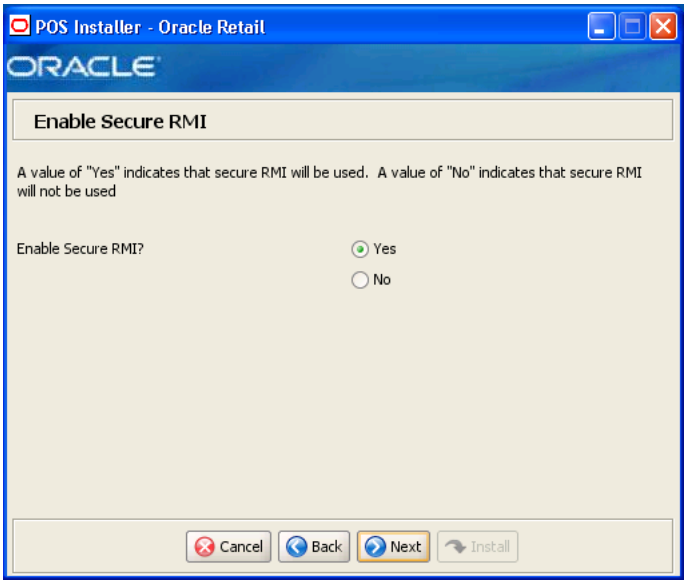
Field Title	JDBC URL
Field Description	Enter the URL used by the Point-of-Service application to access the database schema. For the expected syntax, see Appendix J.
Example	`jdbc:oracle:thin:@myhost:1521:mydatabase`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC JAR
Field Description	Enter the name of the jar containing the database driver.
Example	`ojdbc14.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Schema
Field Description	Enter the database user that owns the scratchpad database.
Example	DBUSER
Notes	

Field Title	Schema Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the database user that owns the scratchpad database.
Notes	

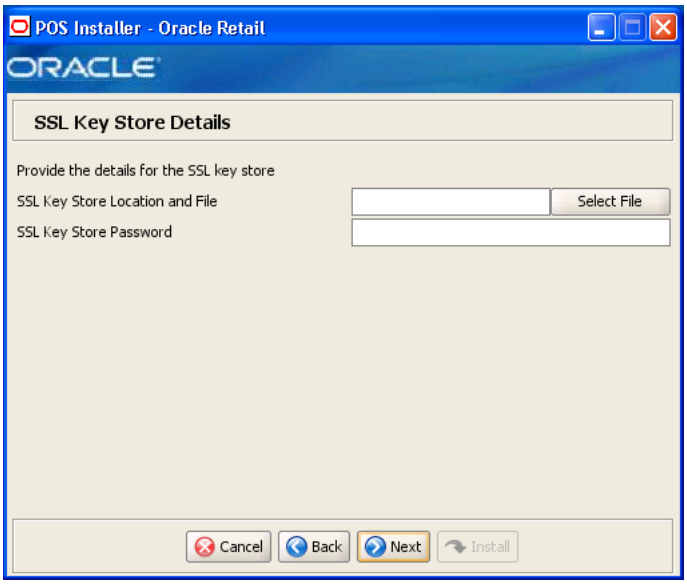
Figure A–21 Enable Secure RMI



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable SecureRMI?
Field Description	Select whether secure RMI is to be used for communication between the store server and registers.
Example	Yes
Notes	

Figure A–22 SSL Key Store Details

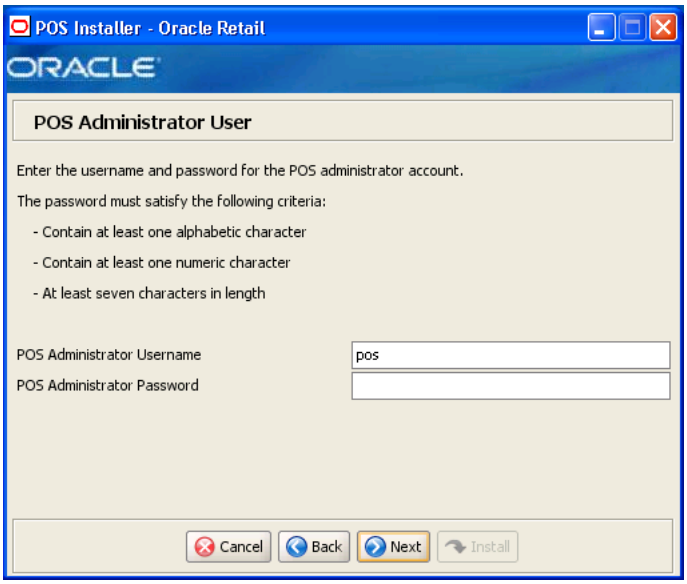


This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure RMI screen. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	SSL Key Store Location and File
Field Description	Choose the name of the Key Store file and the path to it. Any secure folder that Point-of-Service can access can be used.
Notes	

Field Title	SSL Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the Key Store.
Notes	

Figure A–23 POS Administrator User

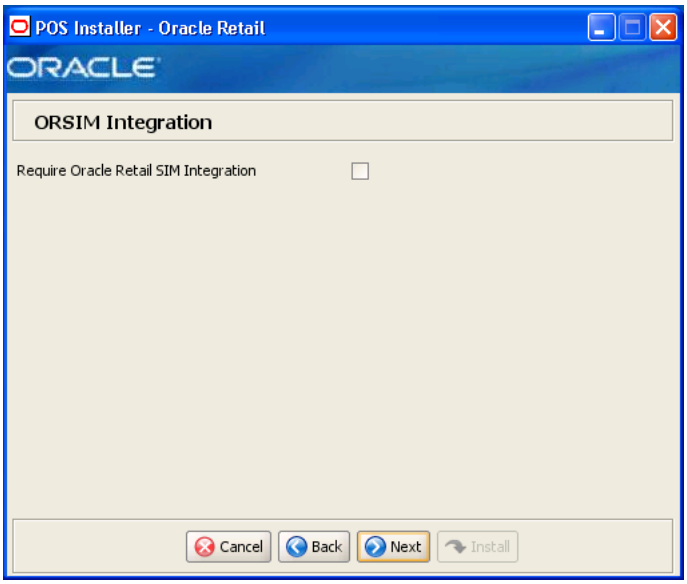


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	POS Administrator Username
Field Description	Enter the user name used for performing Point-of-Service administrative functions.
Example	pos
Notes	

Field Title	POS Administrator Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the administrator user.
Notes	

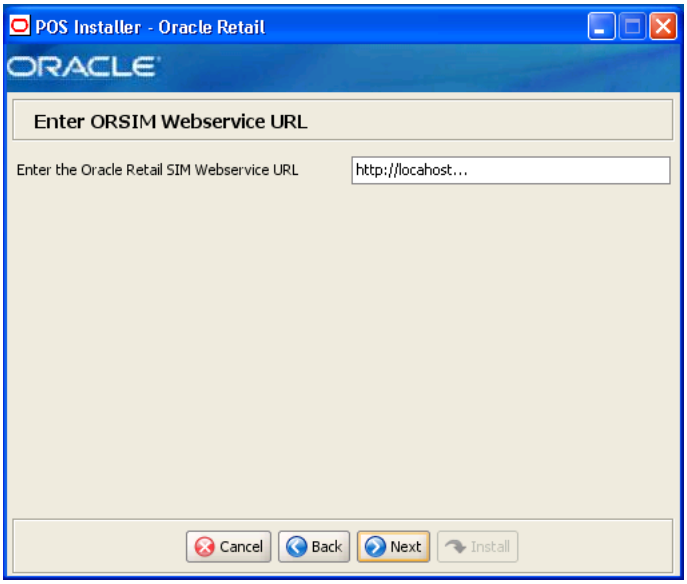
Figure A–24 ORSIM Integration



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Require Oracle Retail SIM Integration
Field Description	Check the box if integration with Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management is required. This box must be checked if the Item Inquiry feature of Point-of-Service is to be used.
Notes	

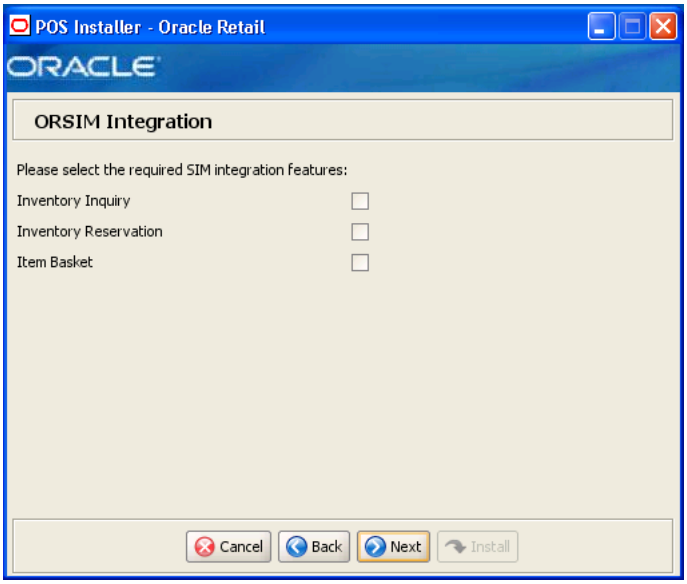
Figure A–25 Enter ORSIM Webservice URL



This screen is only displayed if **Require Oracle SIM Integration** is selected. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enter the Oracle Retail Webservice URL
Field Description	Enter the URL used by the Point-of-Service application to access Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM).
Notes	

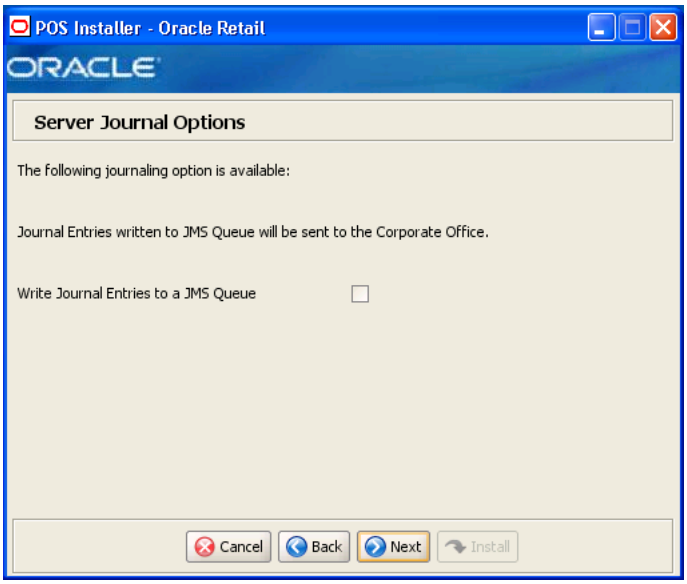
Figure A–26 ORSIM Integration



This screen is only displayed if **Require Oracle SIM Integration** is selected. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select the required SIM integration features
Field Description	Select the Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM) features that will be used in Point-of-Service: ▪ To inquire about inventory using SIM, select **Inventory Inquiry**. ▪ To reserve inventory using SIM, select **Inventory Reservation**. ▪ To enable item baskets created using SIM, select **Item Basket**.
Example	Inventory Inquiry
Notes	

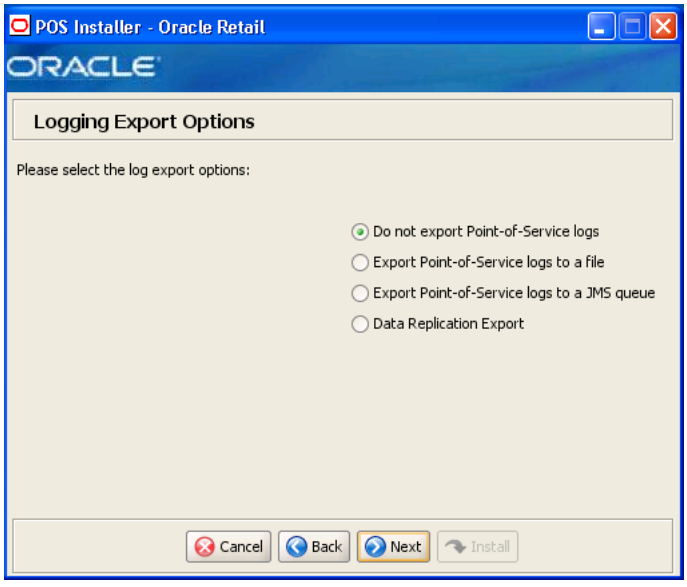
Figure A–27 Server Journal Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Server Journal Options
Field Description	If you want the journal entries sent to a JMS queue, choose **Write Journal Entries to a JMS Queue**.
Example	Write Journal Entries to a JMS Queue
Notes	

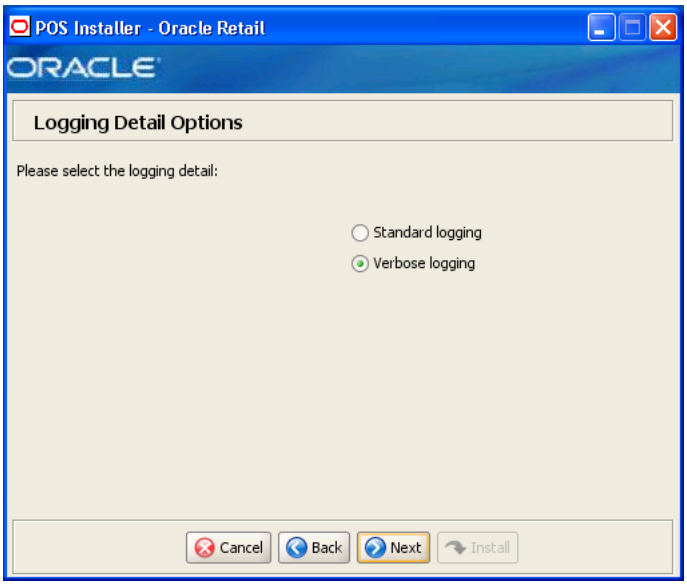
Figure A–28 Logging Export Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Logging Export Options
Field Description	Choose how the log is to be exported. ■ To not generate any logs, choose **Do not export Point-of-Service logs**. ■ To export the logs to a file, choose **Periodically export Point-of-Service logs to a file**. ■ To export the logs to a JMS queue, choose **Periodically export Point-of-Service logs to a JMS queue**. ■ To have the data pushed from the store to the corporate database using replication, choose **Data Replication Export**. **Note:** If you are using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, you must select **Data Replication Export**.
Example	Do not export Point-of-Service logs
Notes	

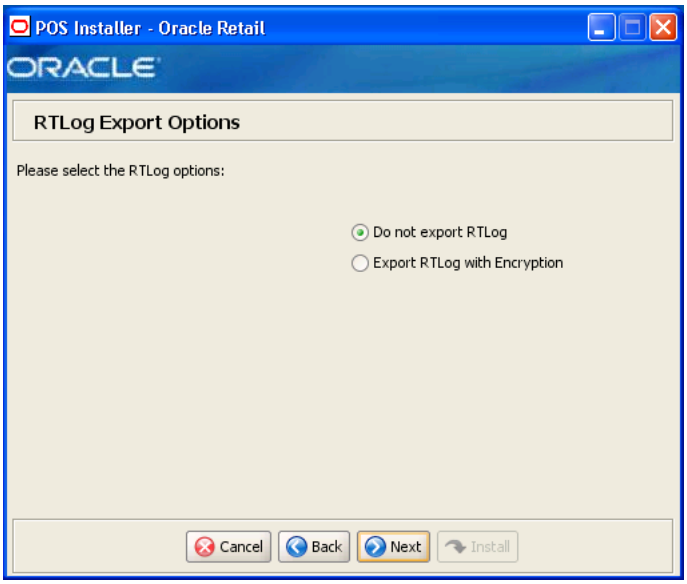
Figure A–29 Logging Detail Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Logging Detail Options
Field Description	Choose the level of client logging. ■ To only log some of the messages, choose **Standard Logging**. ■ To log all of the messages, choose **Verbose Logging**.
Example	Verbose logging
Notes	

Figure A–30 RTLog Export Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	RTLog Export Options
Field Description	Choose how the RTLog is to be exported. ▪ To not export the log, choose **Do not export RTLog**. ▪ To export the log, choose **Export RTLog with Encryption**.
Example	Do not export RTLog
Notes	

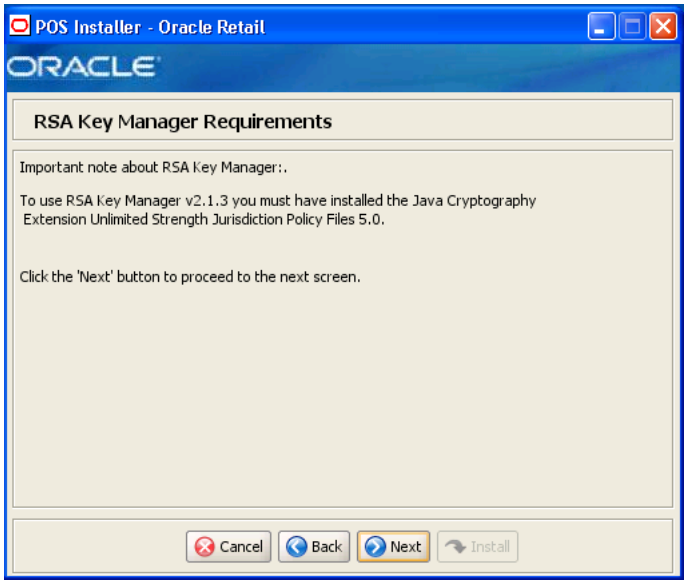
Figure A–31 Security Setup: Key Store Settings

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Hash Algorithm
Field Description	Enter the name of the algorithm used by the Key Store to hash sensitive data.
Example	SHA-256
Notes	

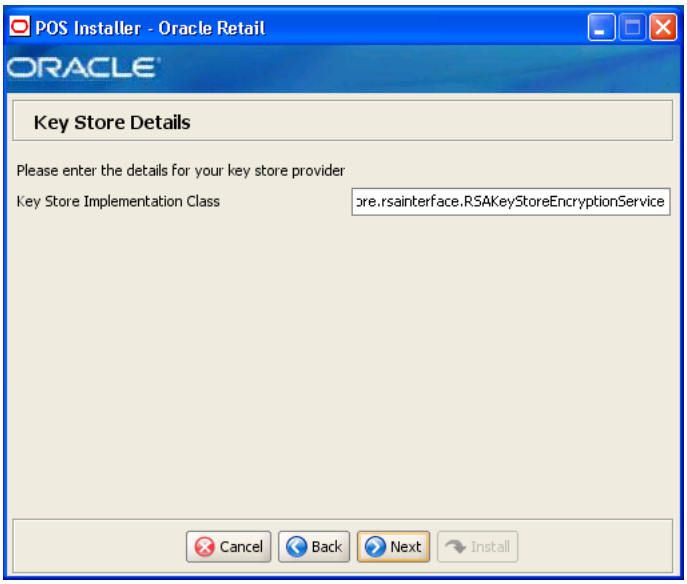
Field Title	Select Key Store Provider
Field Description	Provider for Key Store management. ■ To use the RSA key management package, select **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3**. The next screen displayed is Figure A–32. ■ To use the simulated key management package, select **Simulator**. The next screen displayed is Figure A–36. ■ To use a different key management provider, select **Other**. The next screen displayed is Figure A–38.
Example	RSA Key Manager v2.1.3
Notes	

Figure A–32 RSA Key Manager Requirements



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen. This informational screen explains the requirements to use the RSA Key Manager. Verify that you meet the requirements and then click **Next**.

Figure A–33 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3

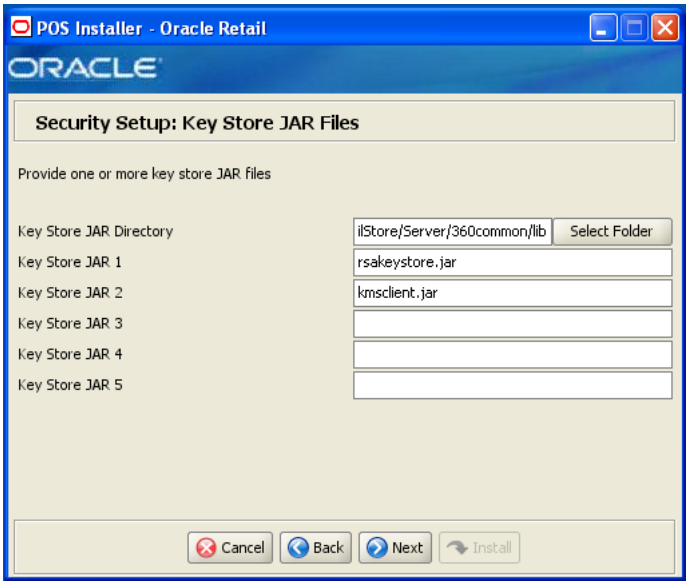


This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the RSA Key Manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.rsakeystore.rsainterface.RSAKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure A–34 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Example	`/opt/OracleRetailStore/Server/360common/lib`
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	rsakeystore.jar
Notes	

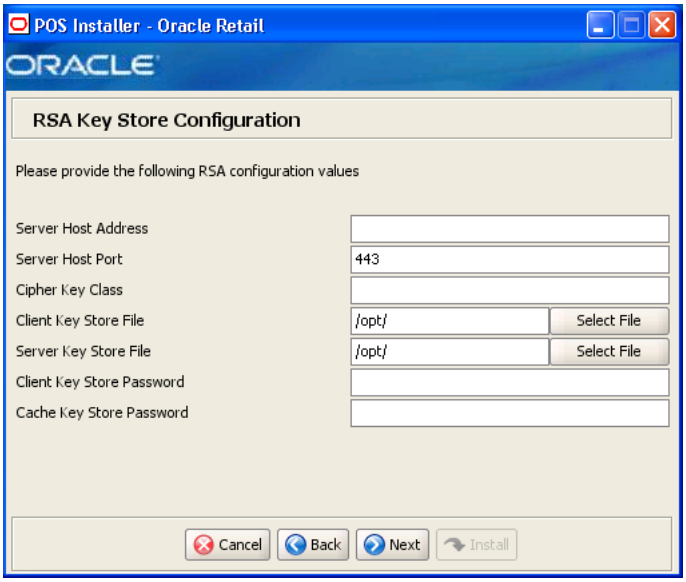
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	kmsclient.jar
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure A–35 RSA Key Store Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Server Host Address
Field Description	Enter the IP address of the RSA server host.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Host Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the RSA server host.
Example	443 443 is the default used by the RSA Key Manager.
Notes	

Field Title	Cipher Key Class
Field Description	Enter the RSA Key Manager cipher key class.
Notes	

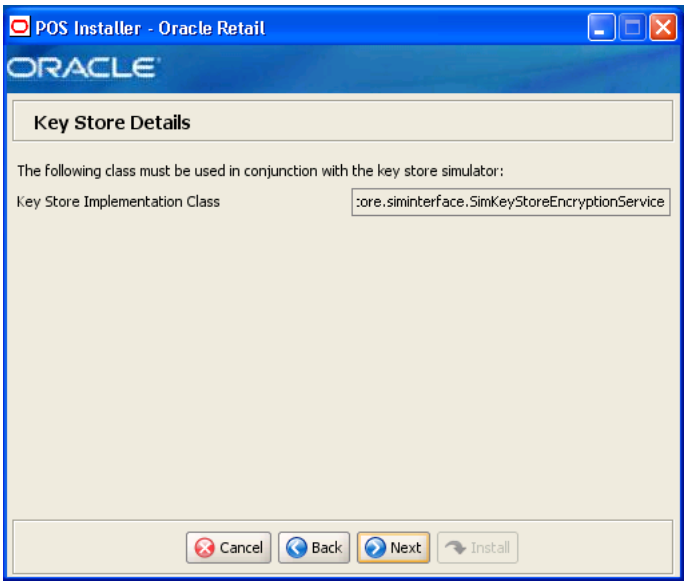
Field Title	Client Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager client Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager server Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Client Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager client Key Store.
Notes	

Field Title	Cache Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager cache.
Notes	

Figure A–36 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager

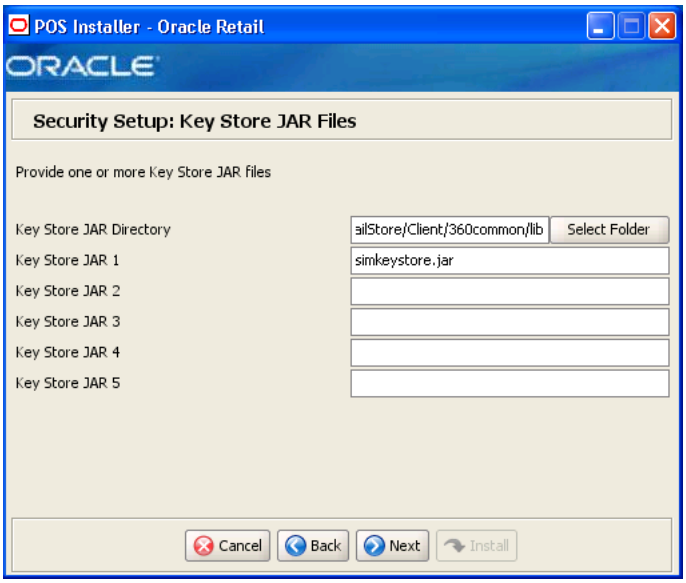


This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the simulated key manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.simkeystore.siminterface.SimKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure A–37 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located. **Note:** If you are using the simulated key management package bundled with Point-of-Service, enter the directory where you saved the `simkeystore.jar` file.
Example	`/opt/OracleRetailStore/Server/360common/lib`
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	simkeystore.jar
Notes	

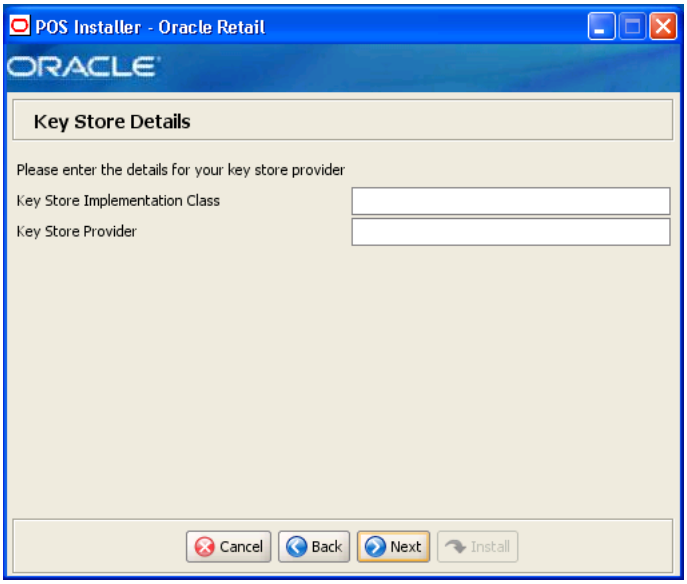
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure A–38 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager



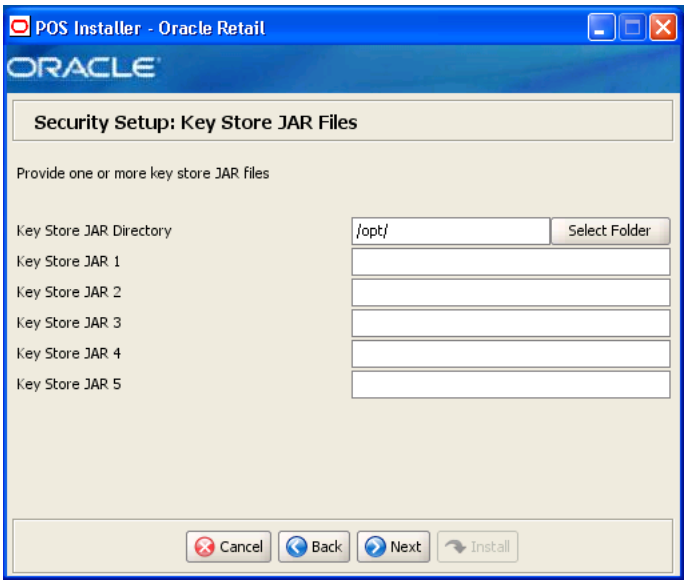
This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the key manager interface.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store Provider
Field Description	Enter the name of the provider for the Key Store.
Notes	

Figure A–39 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

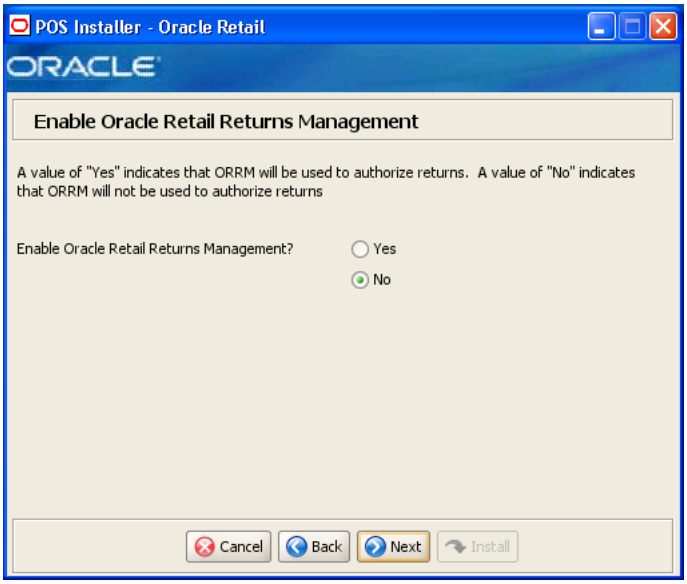
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

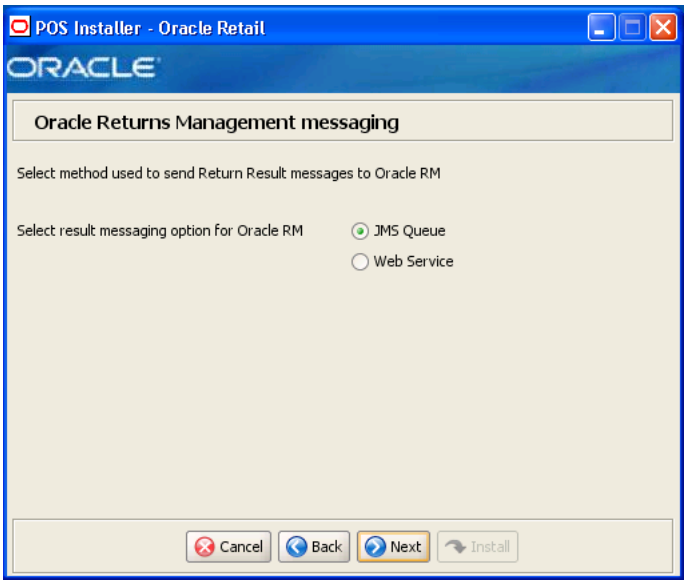
Figure A–40 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose whether Oracle Retail Returns Management is used to authorize returns.
Example	No If No is selected, the next screen displayed is Figure A–45.
Notes	

Figure A–41 Oracle Returns Management Messaging

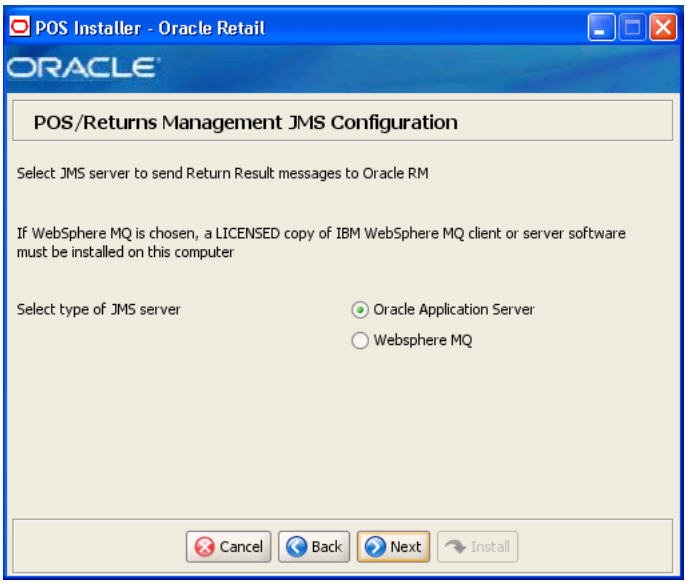


This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select result messaging option for Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose the method to use to send return result messages to Oracle Retail Returns Management. ▪ If you want messages sent to a JMS queue, choose **JMS Queue**. The next screen displayed is Figure A–42. ▪ If you want to use a web service to send the messages, choose **Web Service**. The next screen displayed is Figure A–44.
Example	JMS Queue
Notes	

Figure A–42 POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration

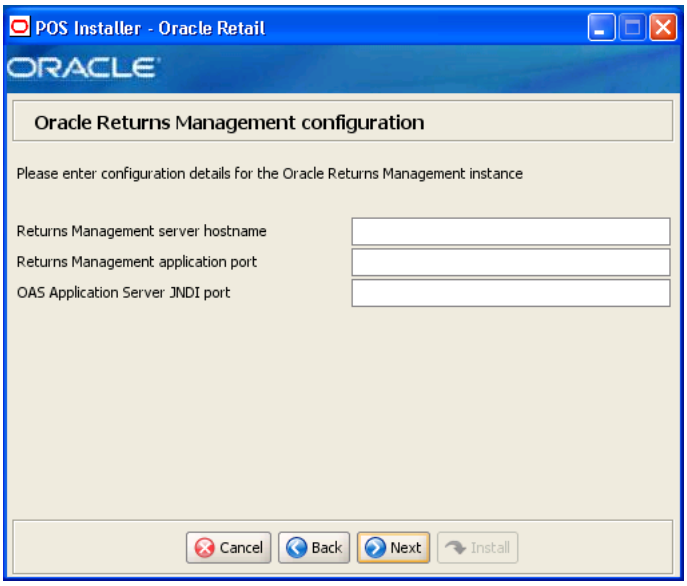


This screen is only displayed if **JMS Queue** is selected on the Oracle Returns Management Messaging screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select result messaging option for Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose the type of JMS server to use to send return result messages to Oracle Retail Returns Management. Choose **Oracle Application Server**.
Example	Oracle Application Server
Notes	

Figure A–43 Oracle Returns Management Configuration for JMS Queue Used for Messaging



This screen is only displayed if **Oracle Application Server** is selected on the POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration screen.

To find the JNDI port number for the Oracle Application Server, the information is available in:

<Oracle Application Server install>`/opmn/conf/opmn.xml`. Locate the Central Office instance. The port number is defined in the `port id="rmi"` entry. You can also check the port number by using the following command:

```
<Oracle Application Server install>/opmn/conf/opmn.xml status -l <instance name>
```

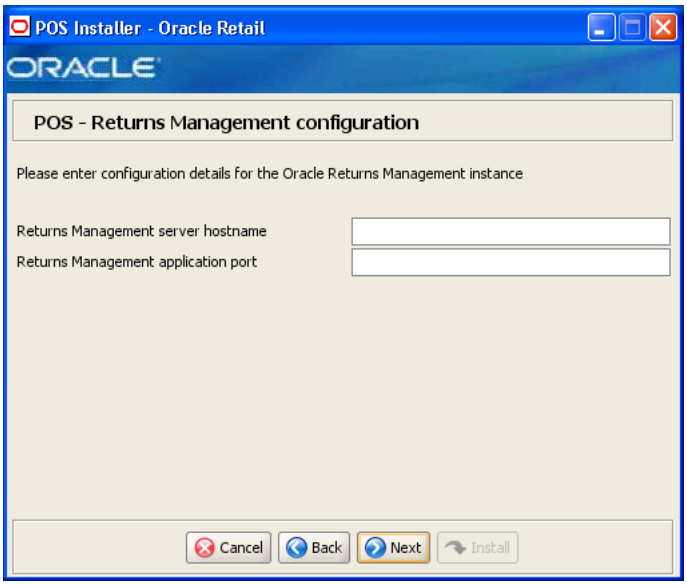
The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Returns Management Server Hostname
Field Description	Enter the name for the Oracle Retail Returns Management server.
Notes	

Field Title	Returns Management Application Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Retail Returns Management application.
Notes	

Field Title	OAS Application Server JNDI Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Application Server.
Notes	

Figure A–44 POS - Returns Management Configuration for Web Service Used for Messaging



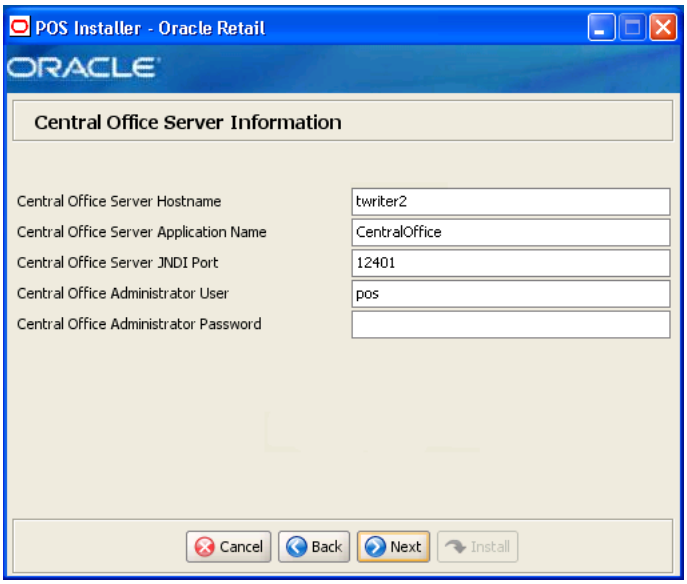
This screen is only displayed if **Web Service** is selected on the Oracle Returns Management Messaging screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Returns Management Server Hostname
Field Description	Enter the name for the Oracle Retail Returns Management server.
Notes	

Field Title	Returns Management Application Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Retail Returns Management application.
Notes	

Figure A–45 Central Office Server Information



To find the JNDI port number, the information is available in:

<Oracle Application Server install>/opmn/conf/opmn.xml. Locate the Central Office instance. The port number is defined in the `port id="rmi"` entry. You can also check the port number by using the following command:

```
<Oracle Application Server install>/opmn/conf/opmn.xml status -l <instance name>
```

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Central Office Server Hostname
Field Description	Enter the host name for the Central Office application.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

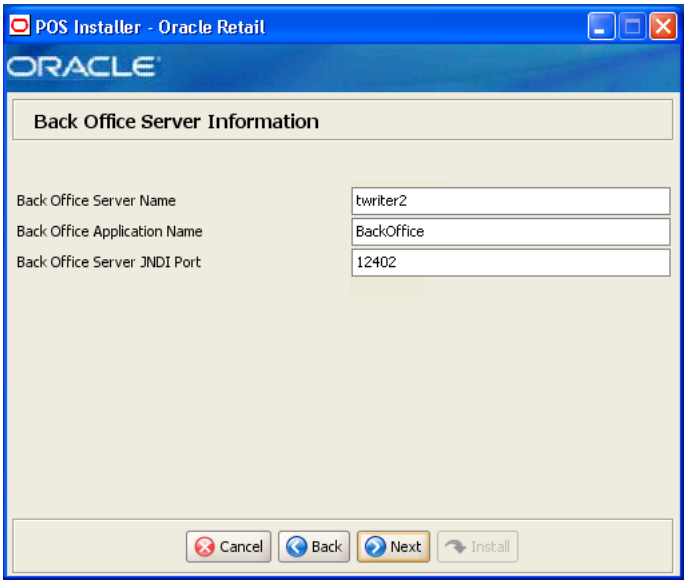
Field Title	Central Office Server Application Name
Field Description	Enter the name for the Central Office application.
Example	CentralOffice
Notes	

Field Title	Central Office Server JNDI Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Central Office application.
Example	12401
Notes	

Field Title	Central Office Administrator User
Field Description	Enter the user name used for performing Central Office administrative functions.
Example	coadmin
Notes	

Field Title	Central Office Administrator Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the Central Office administrator user.
Notes	

Figure A–46 Back Office Server Information



To find the JNDI port number, the information is available in:

<Oracle Application Server install>/opmn/conf/opmn.xml. Locate the Back Office instance. The port number is defined in the `port id="rmi"` entry. You can also check the port number by using the following command:

```
<Oracle Application Server install>/opmn/conf/opmn.xml status -l <instance name>
```

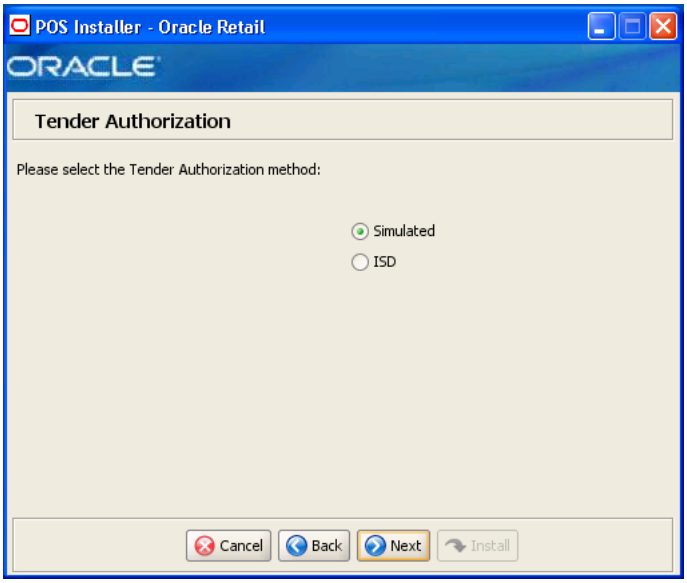
The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Back Office Server Name
Field Description	Enter the host name for the Back Office application.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

Field Title	Back Office Application Name
Field Description	Enter the name for the Back Office application.
Example	BackOffice
Notes	

Field Title	Back Office Server JNDI Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Back Office application.
Example	12402
Notes	

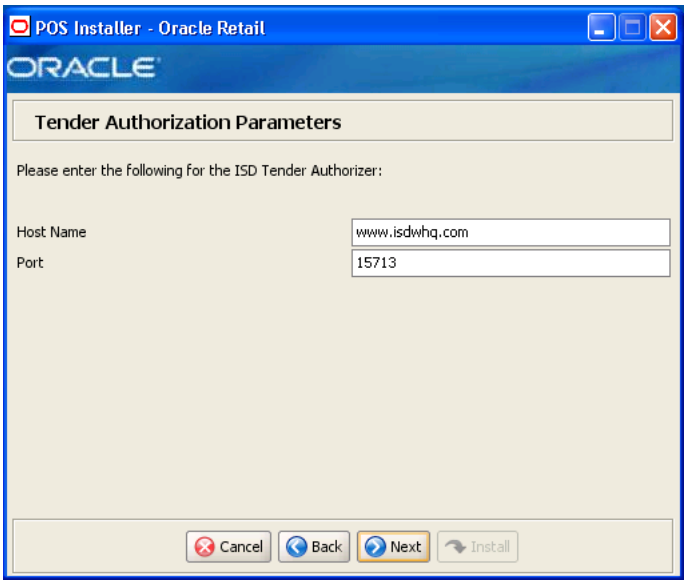
Figure A–47 Tender Authorization



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select Tender Authorizer
Field Description	Choose where tender authorizations are sent. ▪ If approvals do not leave the store server and are based on values and certain numbers, choose **Simulated**. ▪ If approvals are sent to a third party system to approve the authorizations, choose **ISD**. **Note:** Demo installations should use the Simulated option.
Example	Simulated
Notes	

Figure A–48 Tender Authorization Parameters

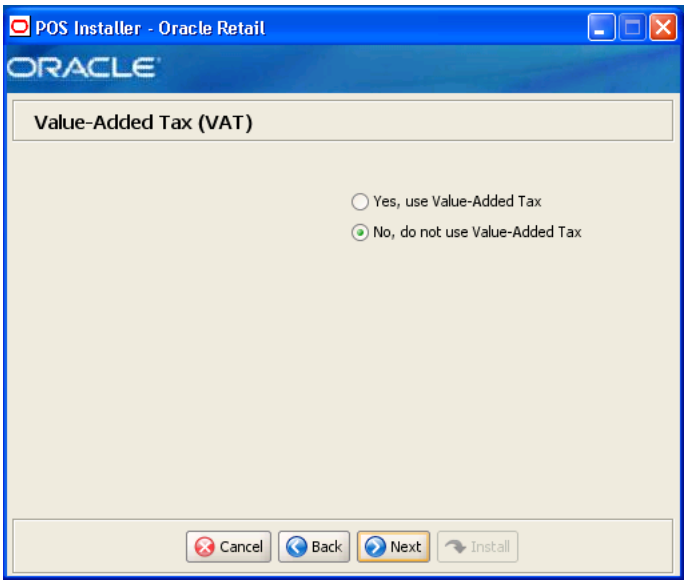


This screen is only displayed if **ISD** is selected for the Tender Authorization. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	**Host Name**
Field Description	Enter the host name of the tender authorizer.
Example	www.isdwhq.com
Notes	

Field Title	**Host Port**
Field Description	Enter the port number used for the communication between the store server and the tender authorizer.
Example	15713
Notes	

Figure A–49 Value-Added Tax (VAT)



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Value-Added Tax
Field Description	Choose whether Value-Added Tax is used.
Example	No, do not use Value-Added Tax
Notes	

Figure A–50 Installation Progress

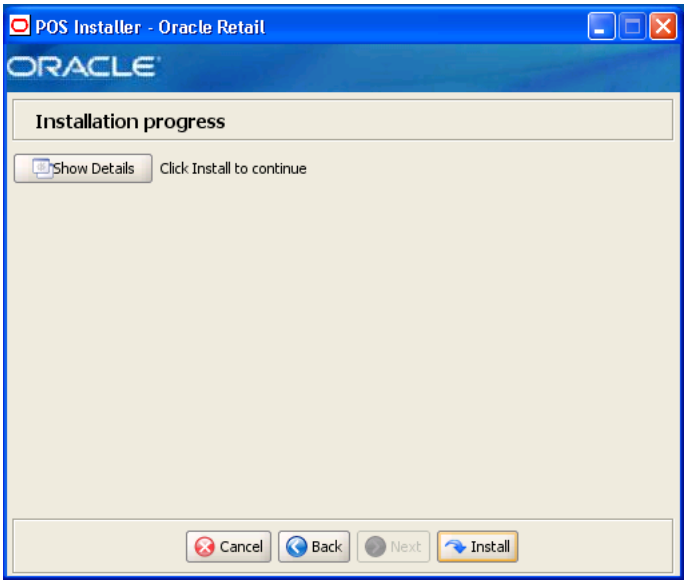
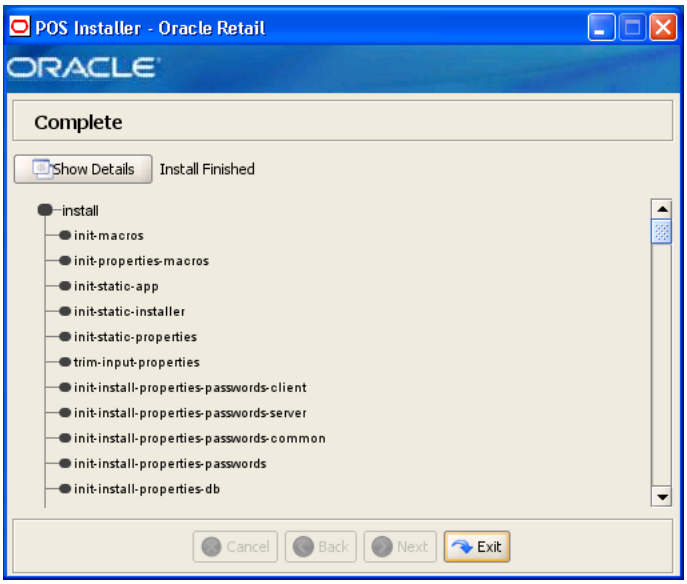


Figure A–51 Install Complete



B

Appendix: Installer Screens Server Installation on Windows

You need specific details about your environment for the installer to successfully install the Point-of-Service application on the Oracle Stack on Windows. This appendix shows the screens that are displayed during the installation of the Point-of-Service server. Depending on the options you select, you may not see some screens or fields.

For each field on a screen, a table is included in this appendix that describes the field. If you want to document any specific information about your environment for any field, a Notes row is provided in each table for saving that information.

For the installer screens for a client installation, see Appendix C.

Figure B–1 Introduction

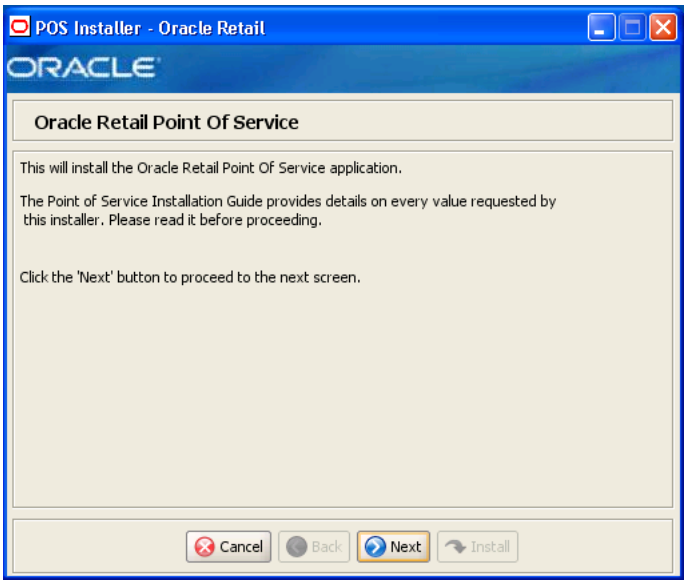


Figure B–2 Previous POS Install

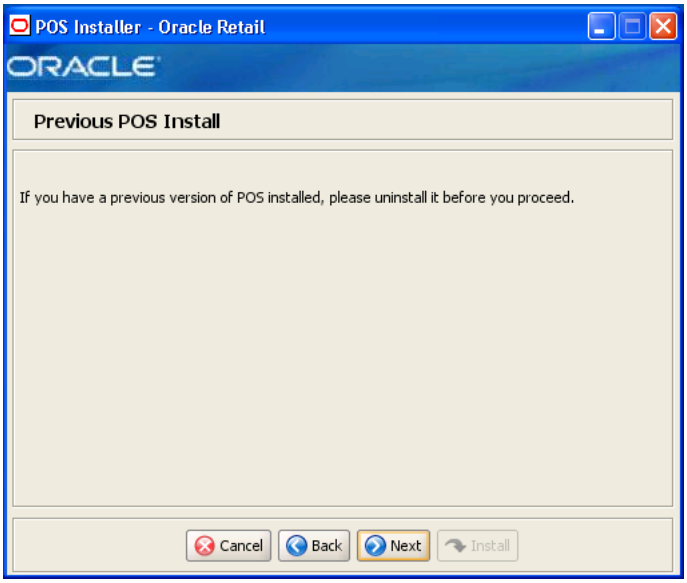
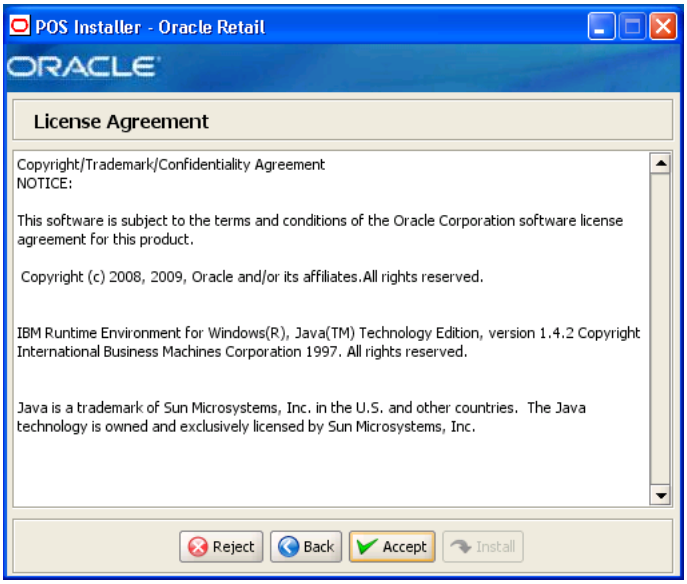
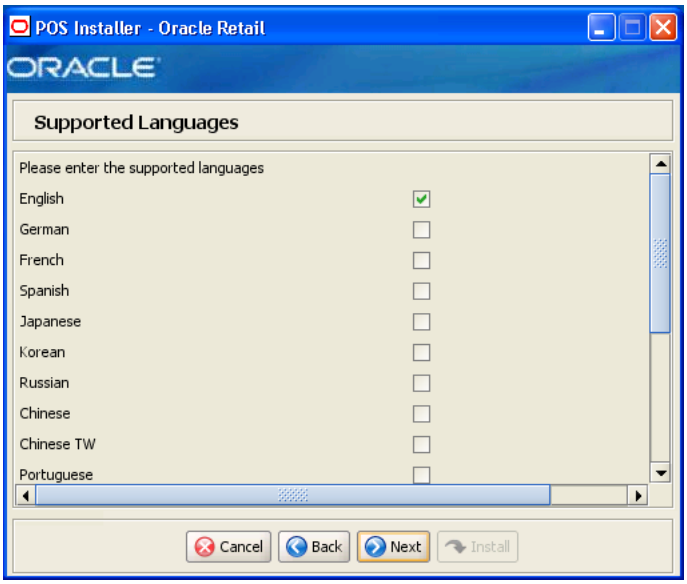


Figure B–3 License Agreement



Note: You must choose to accept the terms of the license agreement in order for the installation to continue.

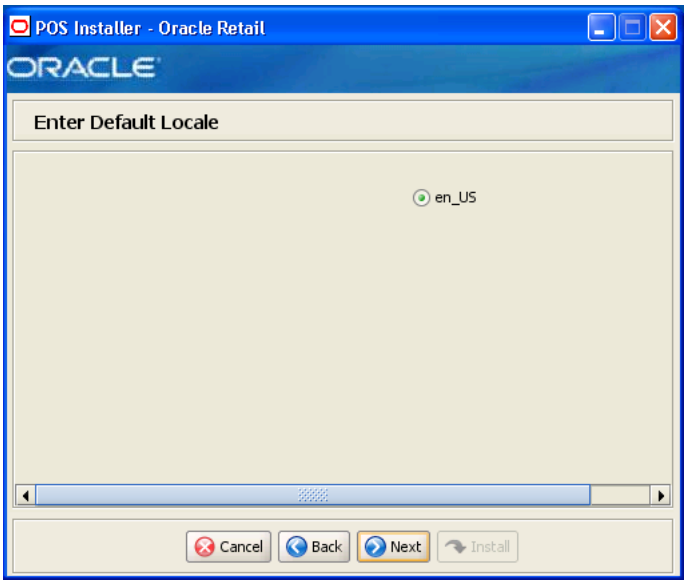
Figure B–4 Supported Languages



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Please enter the supported languages
Field Description	Select the languages that will be available for the Point-of-Service application. The languages selected on this screen determine the available choices on the Enter Default Locale screen.
Example	English
Notes	

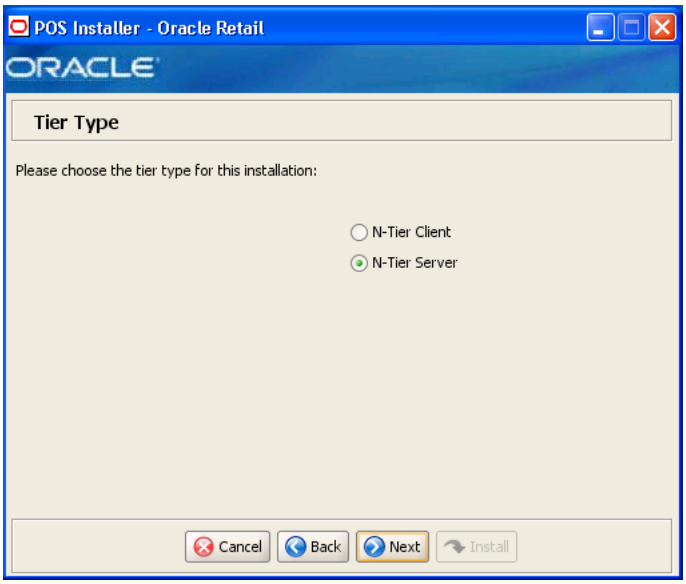
Figure B–5 Enter Default Locale



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enter Default Locale
Field Description	Locale support in Point-of-Service enables the date, time, currency, calendar, address, and phone number to be displayed in the format for the selected default locale. The choices for default locale are dependent on the selections made on the Supported Languages screen. For each selected language, the default locale for that language is displayed on the Enter Default Locale screen. For example, if English and French are selected on the Supported Languages screen, en_US and fr_FR are the available choices for the default locale.
Example	en_US
Notes	

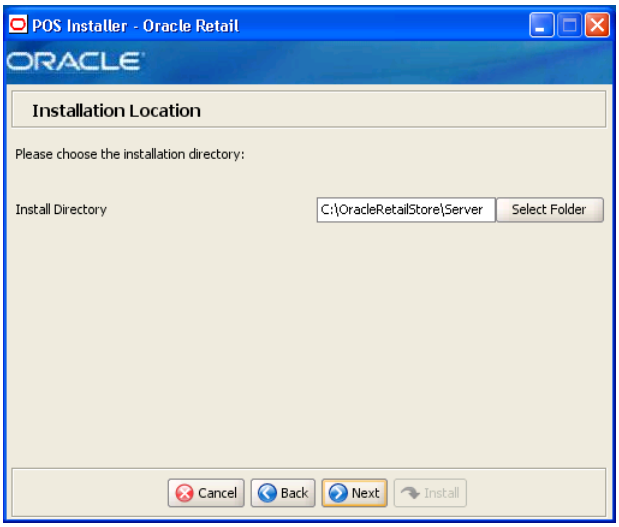
Figure B–6 Tier Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Tier Type
Field Description	Choose the server tier type for this installation. For more information, see "Determining Tier Type" in Chapter 3. To install the N-Tier version of the server, choose **N-Tier Server**.
Example	N-Tier Server
Notes	

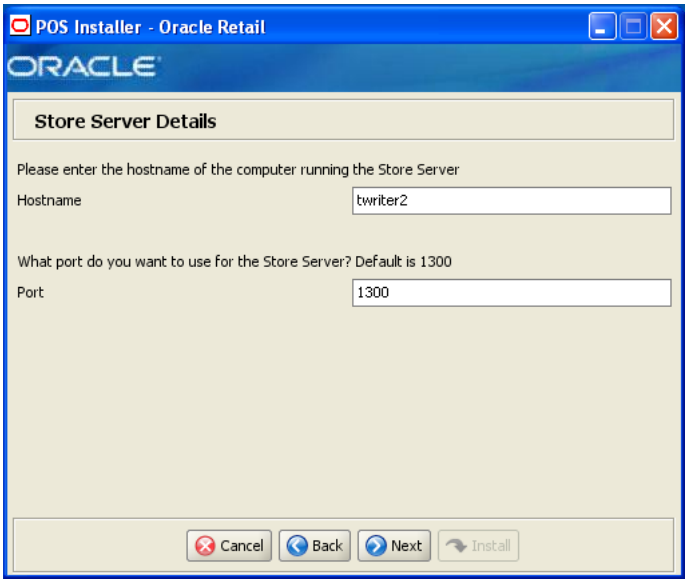
Figure B–7 Installation Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Install Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory into which the Point-of-Service files are copied. The default for the first directory in the path is `OracleRetailStore`. This directory should be the same for all Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions products. When installing for Windows and **N-Tier Server** is selected for the Tier Type, the default installation directory is `OracleRetailStore\Server`. **Note:** The server and the client must not be installed into the same directory. When installing for Linux, the default directory is `OracleRetailStore`. In this guide, *<POS_install_directory>* refers to the selected installation directory for the server or client. Files specific to Point-of-Service are copied to the `\pos` subdirectory of `<POS_install_directory>`.
Example	`C:\OracleRetailStore\Server`
Notes	

Figure B–8 Store Server Details

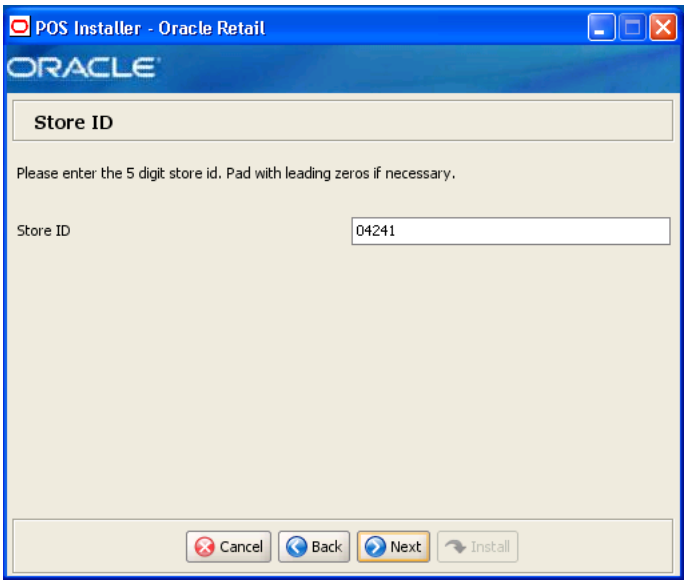


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Hostname
Field Description	Enter the host name of the store server.
Example	TWRITER2
Notes	

Field Title	Port
Field Description	Enter the port number of the store server used for the communication between the store server and the host computer.
Example	1300
Notes	

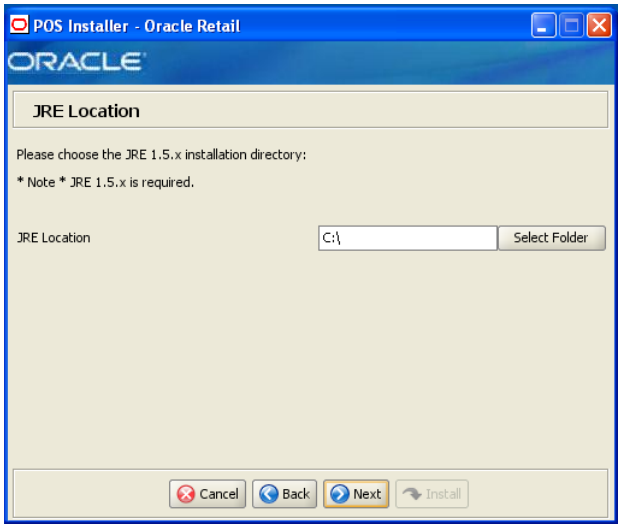
Figure B–9 Store ID



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Store ID
Field Description	Enter the store ID.
Example	04241
Notes	

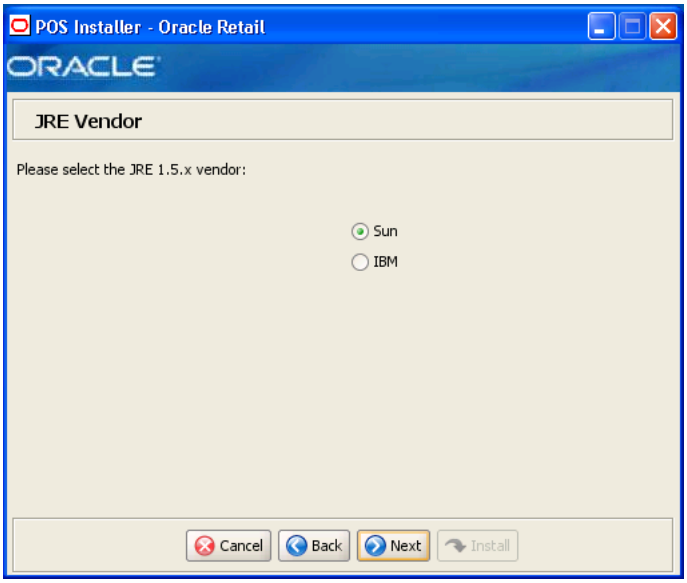
Figure B–10 JRE Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Folder
Field Description	Enter the location where the JRE is installed.
Example	`C:\Java\jre1.5`
Notes	

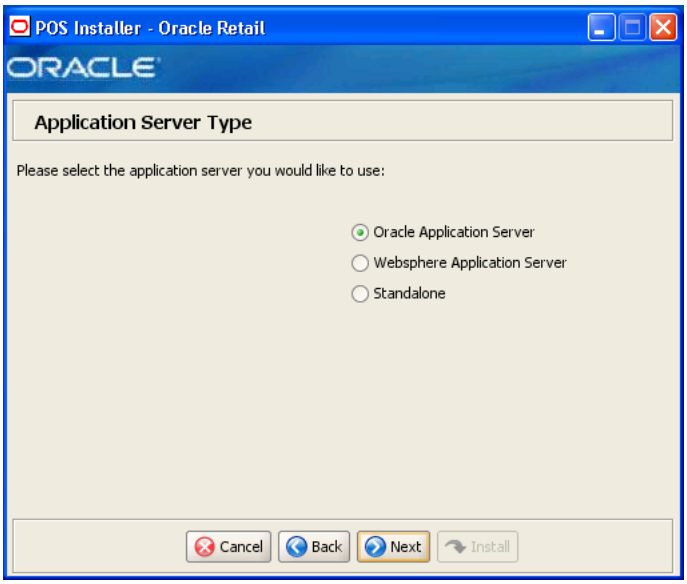
Figure B–11 JRE Vendor



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Vendor
Field Description	Select the vendor for the JRE entered on the JRE Location screen: ▪ Sun ▪ IBM Choose **Sun**.
Example	Sun
Notes	

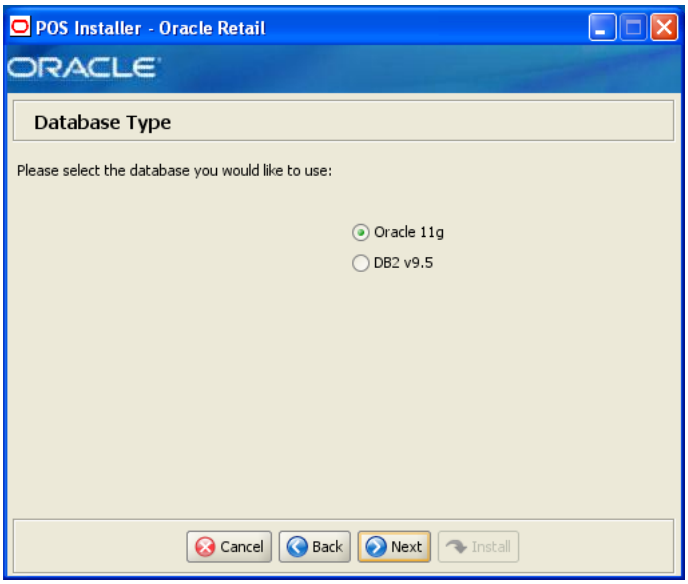
Figure B–12 Application Server Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Application Server Type
Field Description	Select the application server to be used for the store server. ▪ Oracle Application Server ▪ Websphere Application Server ▪ Standalone Choose **Oracle Application Server**.
Example	Oracle Application Server
Notes	

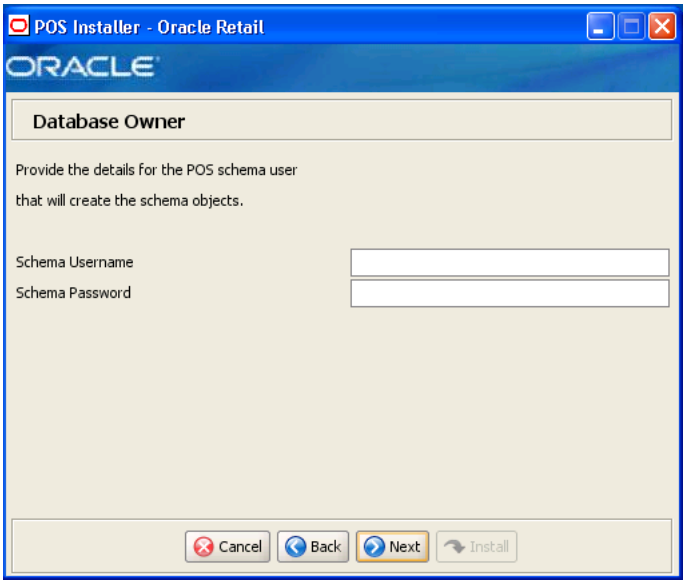
Figure B–13 Database Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Database Type
Field Description	Select the database provider that is used for the OracleRetailStore database.
Example	Oracle 11g
Notes	

Figure B–14 Database Owner

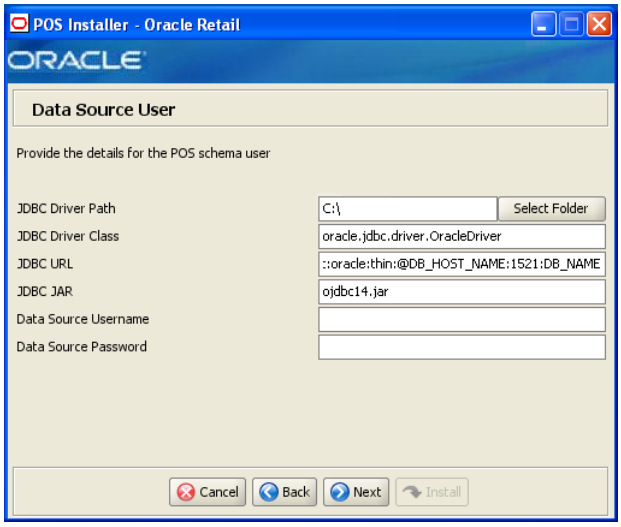


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Schema Username
Field Description	Schema user name that manages the objects in the schema. This user has Create, Drop, and Alter privileges in the schema, that is, Data Definition Language (DDL) execution privileges. For information on creating this user, see "Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users" in Chapter 3. **Note:** This user creates the database objects used by Point-of-Service.
Example	DBOWNER
Notes	

Field Title	Schema Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the database owner.
Notes	

Figure B–15 Database Source User for Oracle 11g



The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	JDBC Driver Path
Field Description	Choose the path to the jar containing the database driver. This is the jar entered in the JDBC JAR field.
Example	`c:\oracle`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC Driver
Field Description	Enter the database driver class name.
Example	`oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver`
Notes	

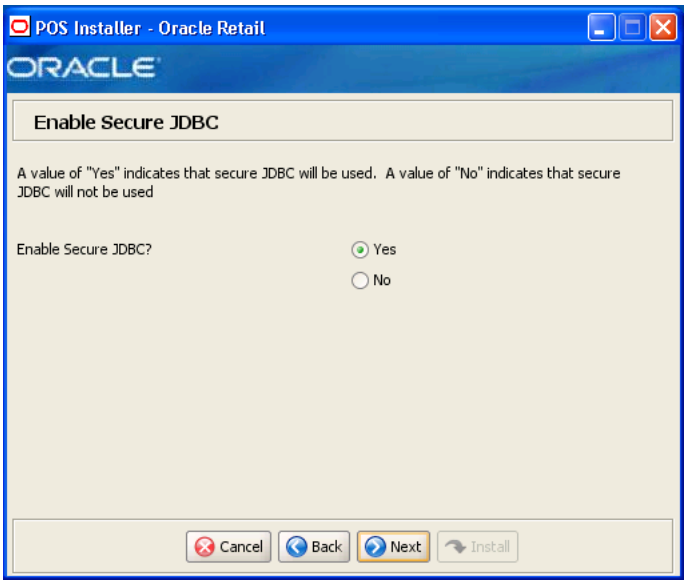
Field Title	JDBC URL
Field Description	Enter the URL used by the Point-of-Service application to access the database schema. For the expected syntax, see Appendix J.
Example	`jdbc:oracle:thin:@myhost:1521:mydatabase`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC JAR
Field Description	Enter the name of the jar containing the database driver.
Example	`ojdbc14.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Data Source Username
Field Description	Database user name that can access and manipulate the data in the schema. This user can have Select, Insert, Update, Delete, and Execute privileges on objects in the schema, that is, Data Manipulation Language (DML) execution privileges. For information on creating this user, see "Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users" in Chapter 3. **Note:** This schema user is used by Point-of-Service to access the database.
Example	DBUSER
Notes	

Field Title	Data Source Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the data source user.
Notes	

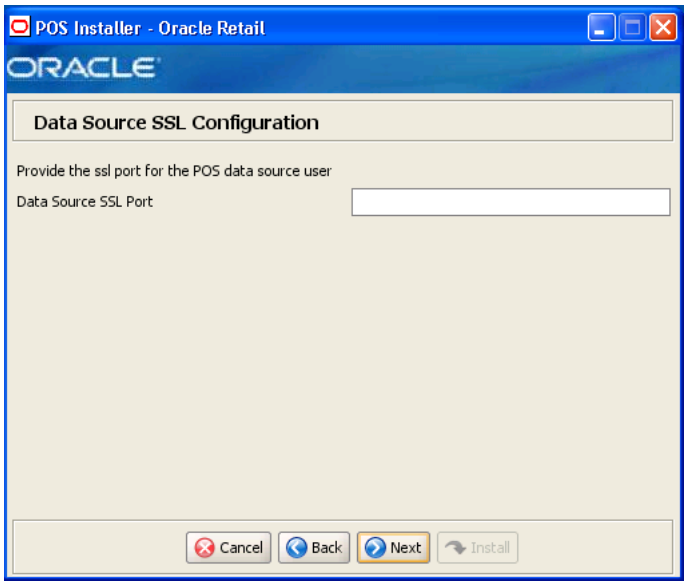
Figure B–16 Enable Secure JDBC



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable Secure JDBC?
Field Description	Select whether secure JDBC is to be used for communication with the database.
Example	Yes
Notes	

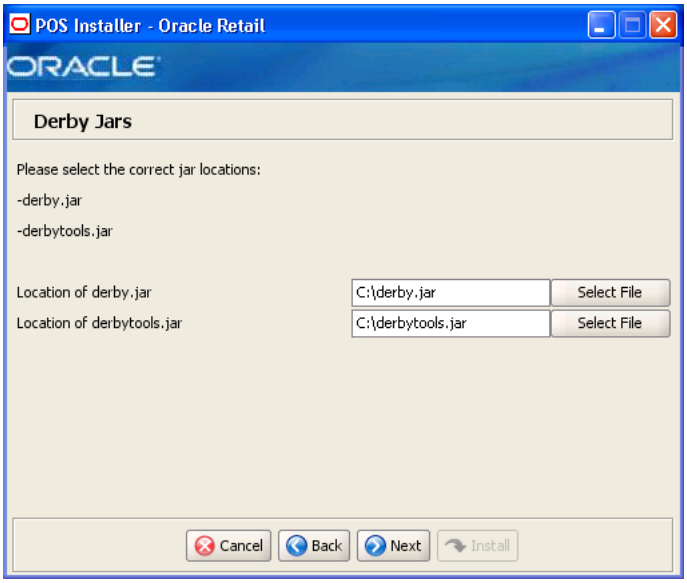
Figure B–17 Data Source SSL Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure JDBC screen. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Data Source SSL Port
Field Description	SSL port used to access the database.
Example	2484
Notes	

Figure B–18 Derby Jars

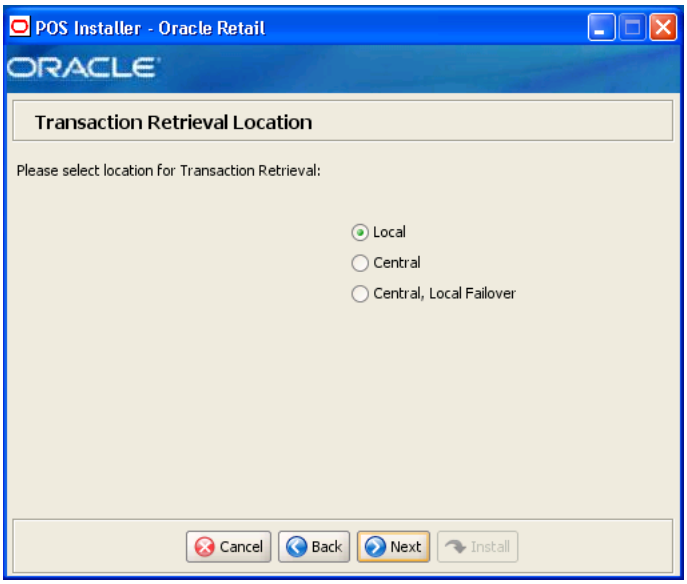


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Location of derby.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derby.jar` file.
Example	`C:\thirdparty\apache-derby-10.2.2\lib\derby.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Location of derbytools.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derbytools.jar` file.
Example	`C:\thirdparty\apache-derby-10.2.2\lib\derbytools.jar`
Notes	

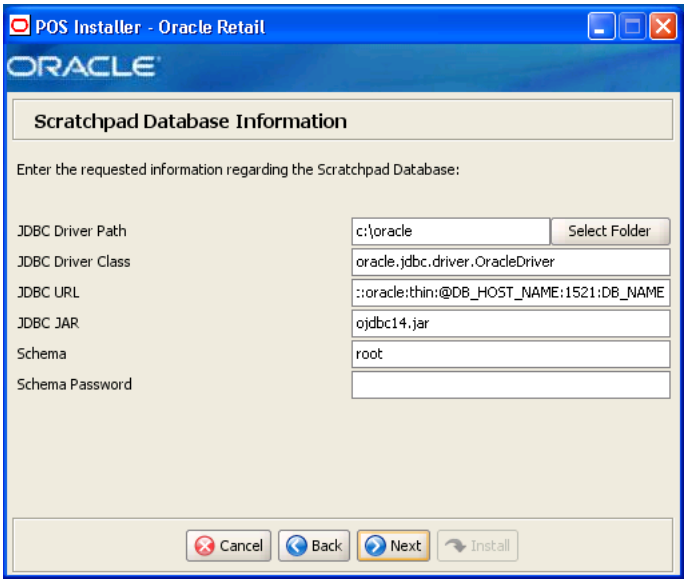
Figure B–19 Transaction Retrieval Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Transaction retrieval location
Field Description	Choose the location for retrieving transactions. ▪ If transactions should only be retrieved from the store database, choose **Local**. ▪ If transactions should only be retrieved from the corporate database, choose **Central**. ▪ If transactions should be retrieved from the corporate database, and if not found, then retrieved from the store database, choose **Central, Local Failover**. **Note:** You must choose the same location for both the store server and client installations.
Example	Local
Notes	

Figure B–20 Scratchpad Database Information



This screen is only displayed if **Oracle 10g** is selected for the Database Type and **Central** or **Central, Local Failover** is selected for the Transaction Retrieval Location. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	**JDBC Driver Path**
Field Description	Choose the path to the jar containing the database driver. This is the jar entered in the JDBC JAR field.
Example	`C:\oracle`
Notes	

Field Title	**JDBC Driver Class**
Field Description	Enter the database driver class name.
Example	`oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver`
Notes	

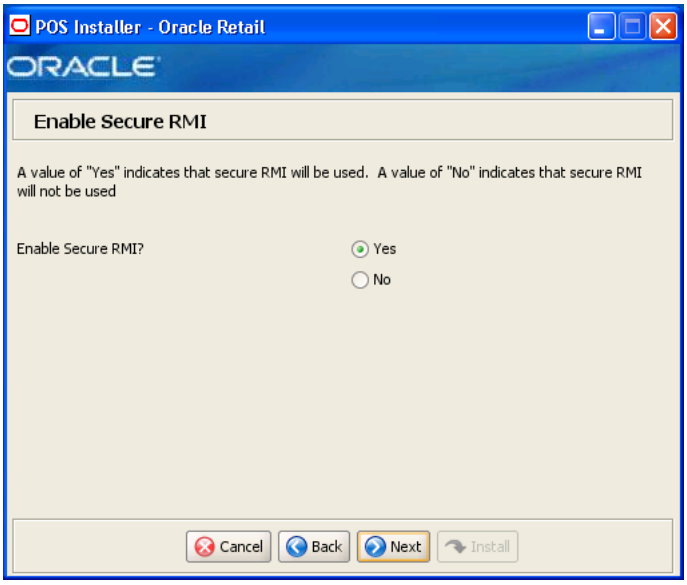
Field Title	**JDBC URL**
Field Description	Enter the URL used by the Point-of-Service application to access the database schema. For the expected syntax, see Appendix J.
Example	`jdbc:oracle:thin:@myhost:1521:mydatabase`
Notes	

Field Title	**JDBC JAR**
Field Description	Enter the name of the jar containing the database driver.
Example	`ojdbc14.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Schema
Field Description	Enter the database user that owns the scratchpad database.
Example	DBUSER
Notes	

Field Title	Schema Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the database user that owns the scratchpad database.
Notes	

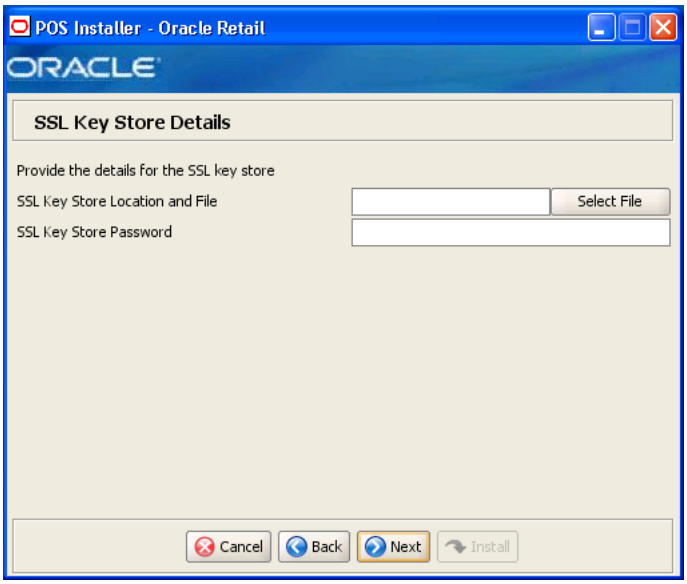
Figure B–21 Enable Secure RMI



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable SecureRMI?
Field Description	Select whether secure RMI is to be used for communication between the store server and registers.
Example	Yes
Notes	

Figure B–22 SSL Key Store Details

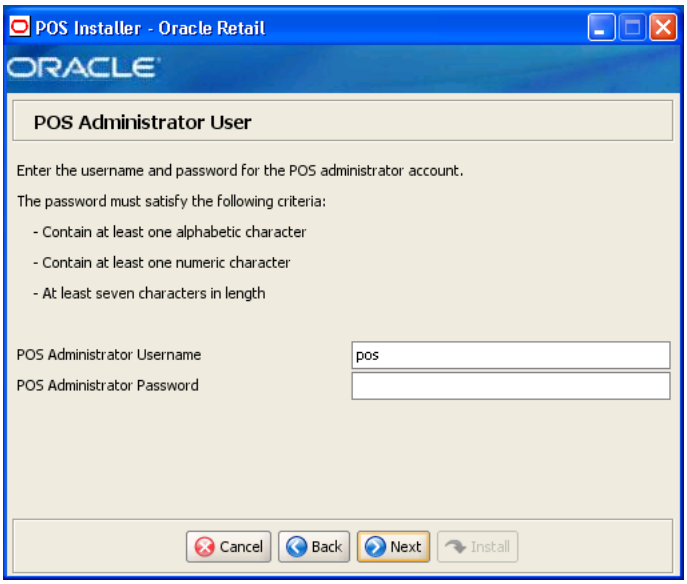


This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure RMI screen. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	SSL Key Store Location and File
Field Description	Choose the name of the Key Store file and the path to it. Any secure folder that Point-of-Service can access can be used.
Notes	

Field Title	SSL Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the Key Store.
Notes	

Figure B–23 POS Administrator User

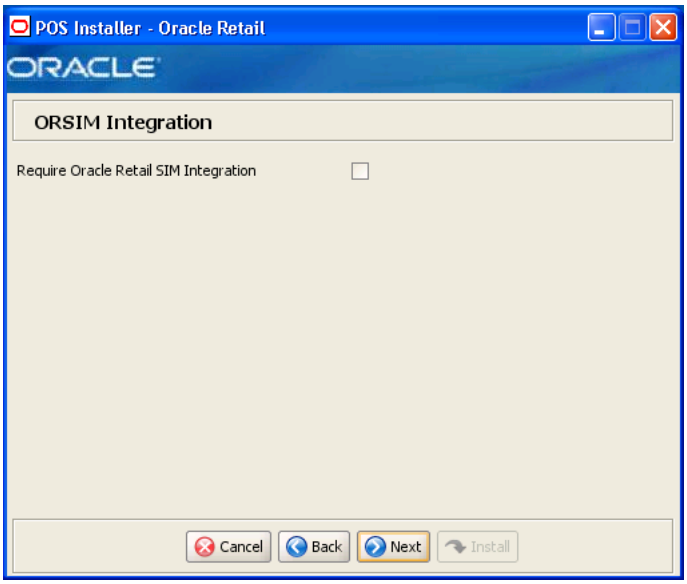


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	POS Administrator Username
Field Description	Enter the user name used for performing Point-of-Service administrative functions.
Example	pos
Notes	

Field Title	POS Administrator Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the administrator user.
Notes	

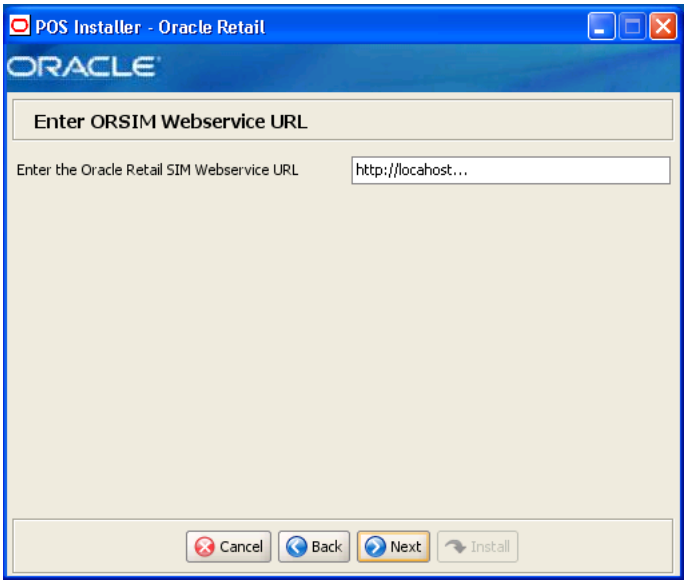
Figure B–24 ORSIM Integration



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Require Oracle Retail SIM Integration
Field Description	Check the box if integration with Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management is required. This box must be checked if the Item Inquiry feature of Point-of-Service is to be used.
Notes	

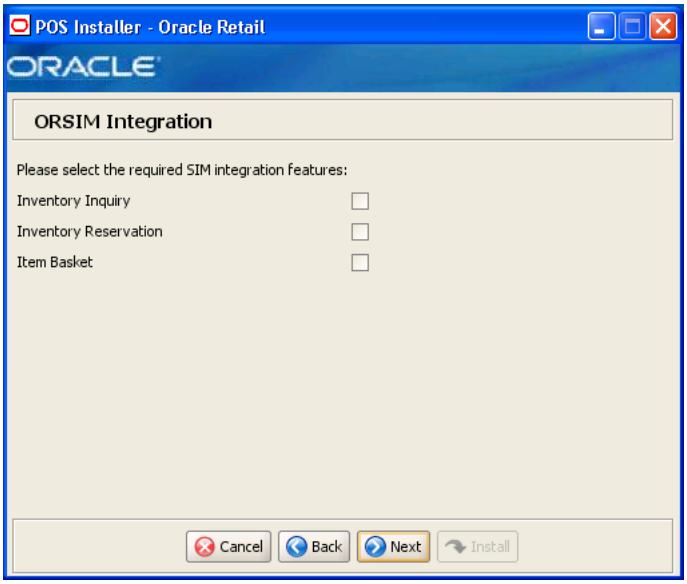
Figure B–25 Enter ORSIM Webservice URL



This screen is only displayed if **Require Oracle SIM Integration** is selected. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enter the Oracle Retail Webservice URL
Field Description	Enter the URL used by the Point-of-Service application to access Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management.
Notes	

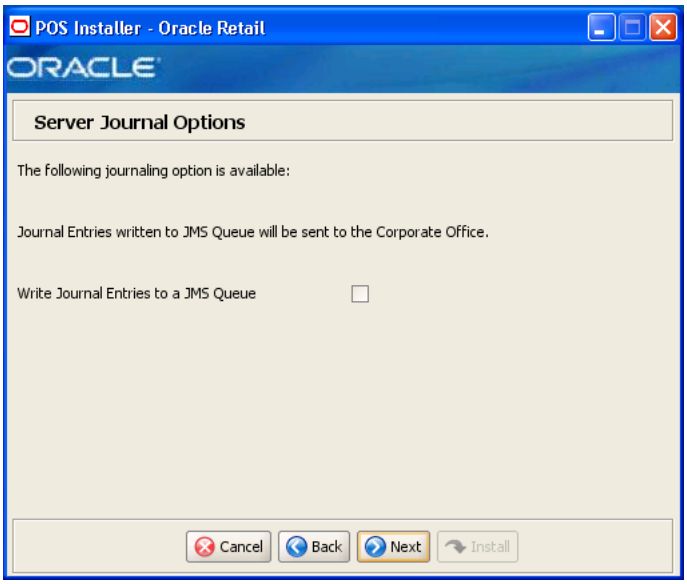
Figure B–26 ORSIM Integration



This screen is only displayed if **Require Oracle SIM Integration** is selected. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select the required SIM integration features
Field Description	Select the Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM) features that will be used in Point-of-Service: ■ To inquire about inventory using SIM, select **Inventory Inquiry**. ■ To reserve inventory using SIM, select **Inventory Reservation**. ■ To enable item baskets created using SIM, select **Item Basket**.
Example	Inventory Inquiry
Notes	

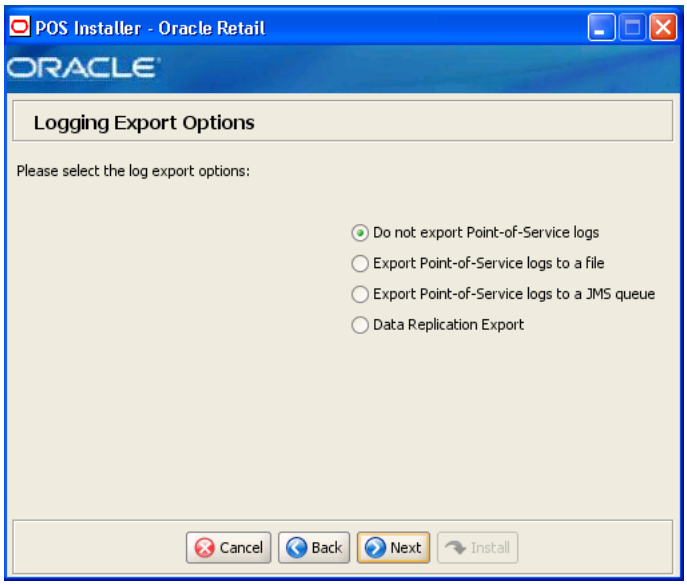
Figure B–27 Server Journal Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Server Journal Options
Field Description	Choose where journal entries will be sent. If you want the journal entries sent to a JMS queue, choose **Write Journal Entries to a JMS Queue**.
Example	Write Journal Entries to a JMS Queue
Notes	

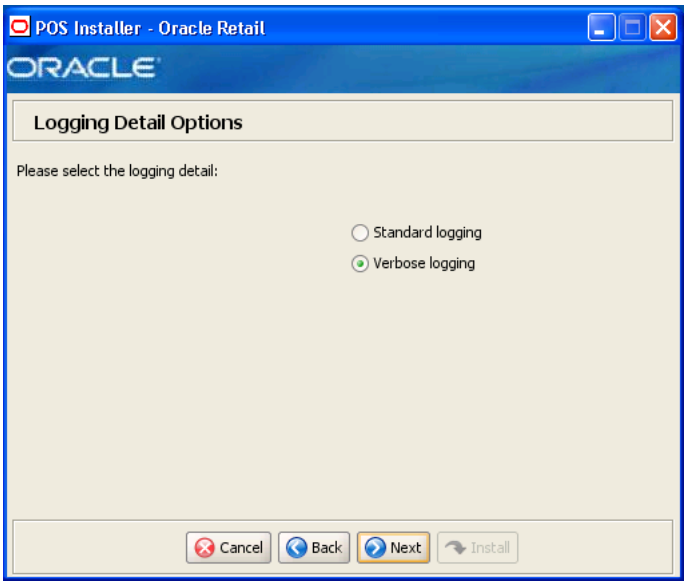
Figure B–28 Logging Export Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Logging Export Options
Field Description	Choose how the log is to be exported. ■ To not generate any logs, choose **Do not export Point-of-Service logs**. ■ To export the logs to a file, choose **Periodically export Point-of-Service logs to a file**. ■ To export the logs to a JMS queue, choose **Periodically export Point-of-Service logs to a JMS queue**. ■ To have the data pushed from the store to the corporate database using replication, choose **Data Replication Export**. **Note:** If you are using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, you must select **Data Replication Export**.
Example	Do not export Point-of-Service logs
Notes	

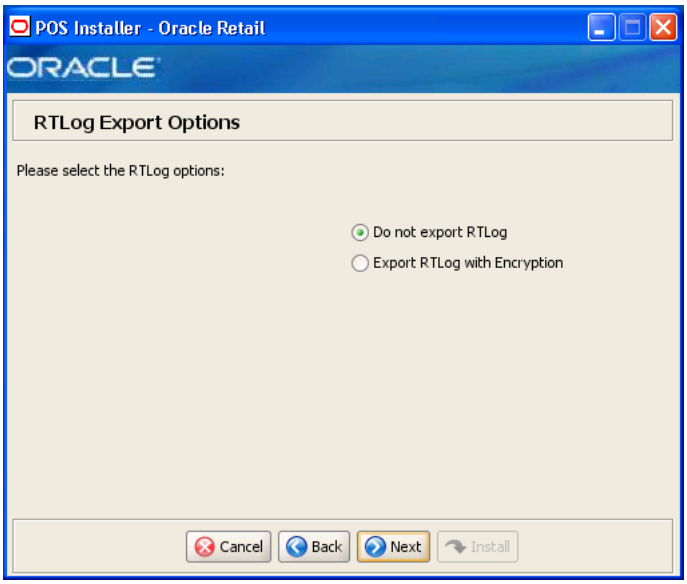
Figure B–29 Logging Detail Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Logging Detail Options
Field Description	Choose the level of client logging. ■ To only log some of the messages, choose **Standard Logging**. ■ To log all of the messages, choose **Verbose Logging**.
Example	Verbose logging
Notes	

Figure B–30 RTLog Export Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	RTLog Export Options
Field Description	Choose how the RTLog is to be exported. ▪ To not export the log, choose **Do not export RTLog**. ▪ To export the log, choose **Export RTLog with Encryption**.
Example	Do not export RTLog
Notes	

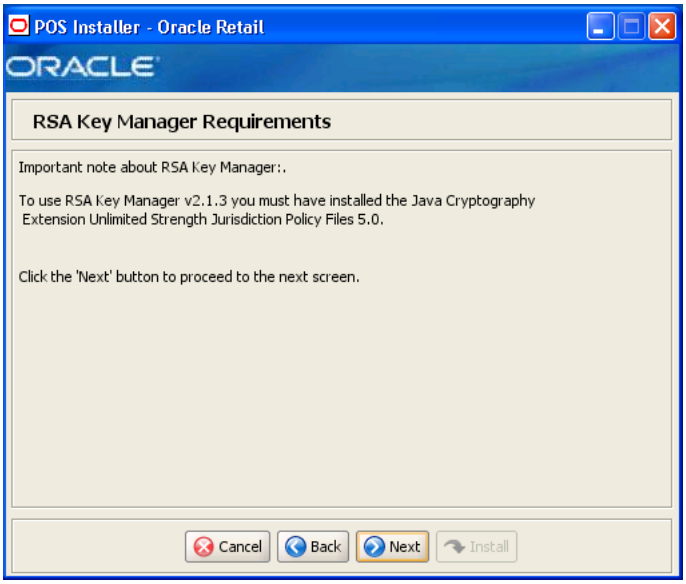
Figure B–31 Security Setup: Key Store Settings

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Hash Algorithm
Field Description	Enter the name of the algorithm used by the Key Store to hash sensitive data.
Example	SHA-256
Notes	

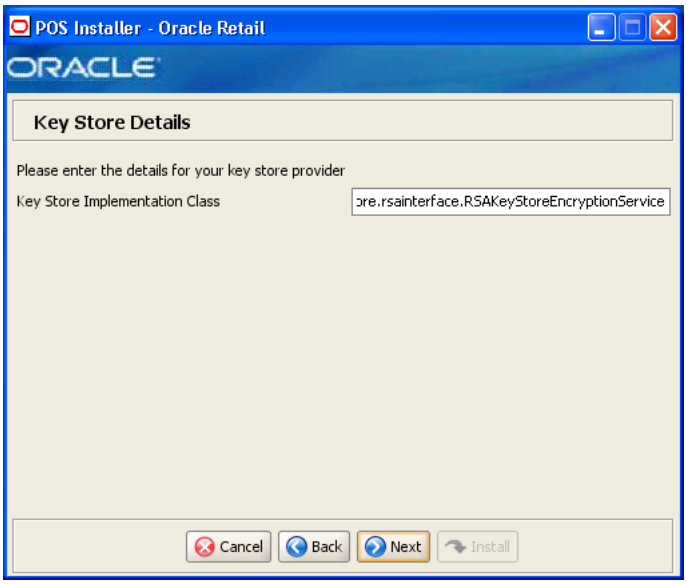
Field Title	Select Key Store Provider
Field Description	Provider for Key Store management. ■ To use the RSA key management package, select **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3**. The next screen displayed is Figure B–32. ■ To use the simulated key management package, select **Simulator**. The next screen displayed is Figure B–36. ■ To use a different key management provider, select **Other**. The next screen displayed is Figure B–38.
Example	RSA Key Manager v2.1.3
Notes	

Figure B–32 RSA Key Manager Requirements



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen. This informational screen explains the requirements to use the RSA Key Manager. Verify that you meet the requirements and then click **Next**.

Figure B–33 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3

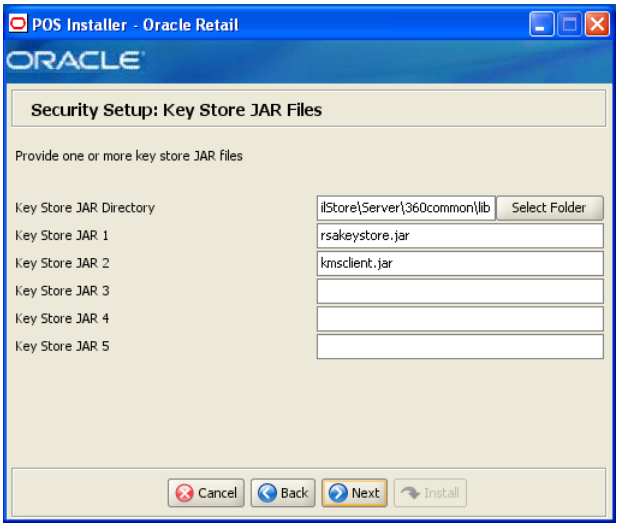


This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the RSA Key Manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.rsakeystore.rsainterface.RSAKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure B–34 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Example	`C:\OracleRetailStore\Server\360common\lib`
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	rsakeystore.jar
Notes	

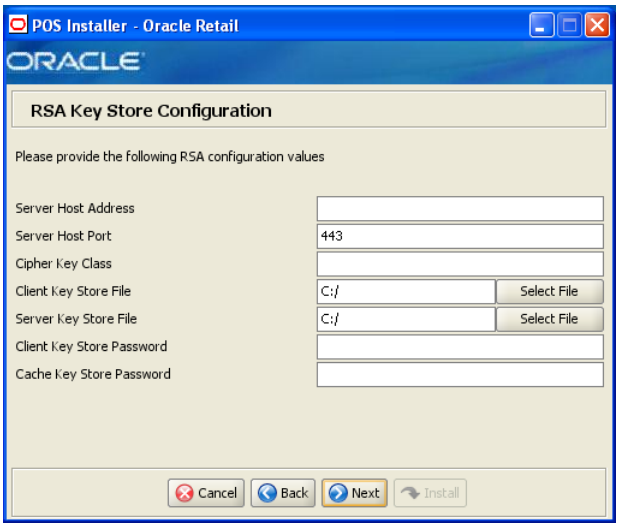
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	kmsclient.jar
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure B–35 RSA Key Store Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Server Host Address
Field Description	Enter the IP address of the RSA server host.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Host Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the RSA server host.
Example	443 443 is the default used by the RSA Key Manager.
Notes	

Field Title	Cipher Key Class
Field Description	Enter the RSA Key Manager cipher key class.
Notes	

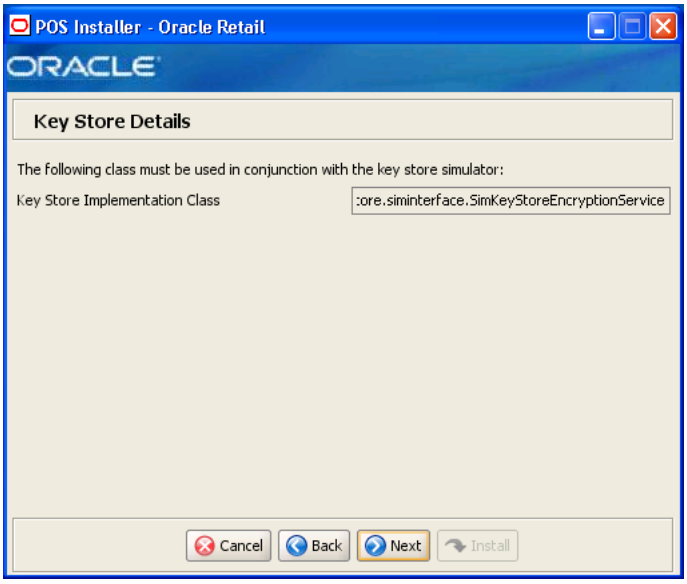
Field Title	Client Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager client Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager server Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Client Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager client Key Store.
Notes	

Field Title	Cache Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager cache.
Notes	

Figure B–36 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager

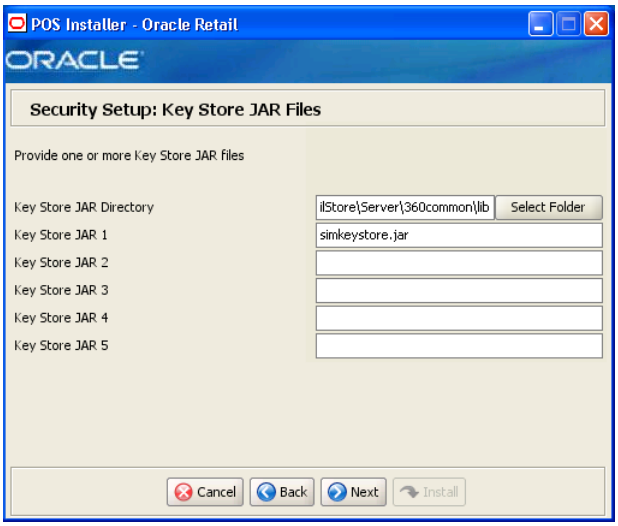


This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the simulated key manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.simkeystore.siminterface.SimKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure B–37 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located. **Note:** If you are using the simulated key management package bundled with Point-of-Service, enter the directory where you saved the `simkeystore.jar` file.
Example	`C:\OracleRetailStore\Server\360common\lib`
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	simkeystore.jar
Notes	

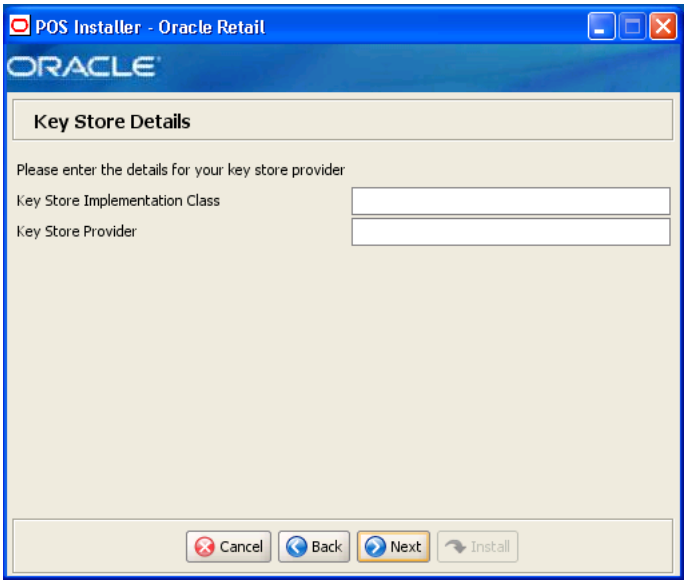
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure B–38 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager



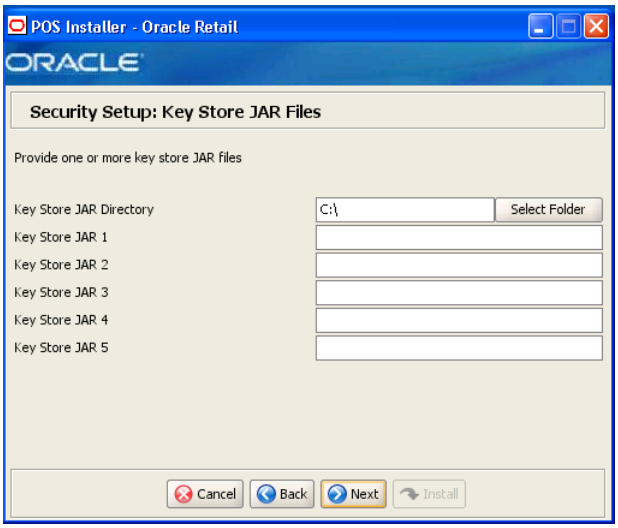
This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the key manager interface.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store Provider
Field Description	Enter the name of the provider for the Key Store.
Notes	

Figure B–39 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

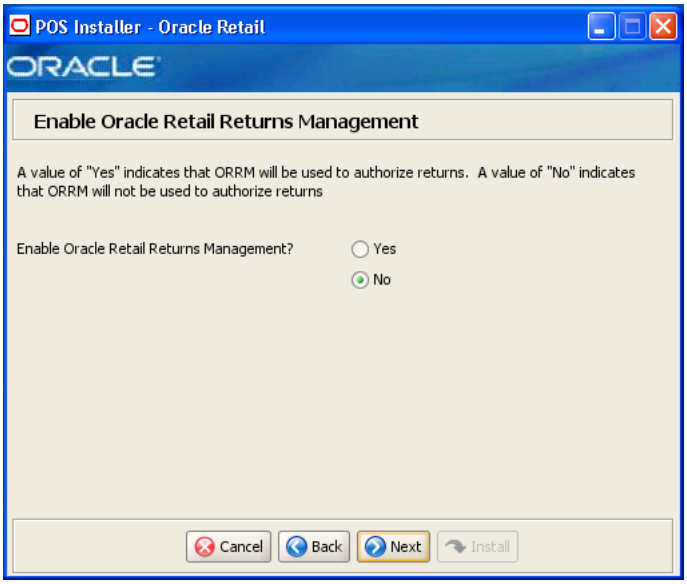
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

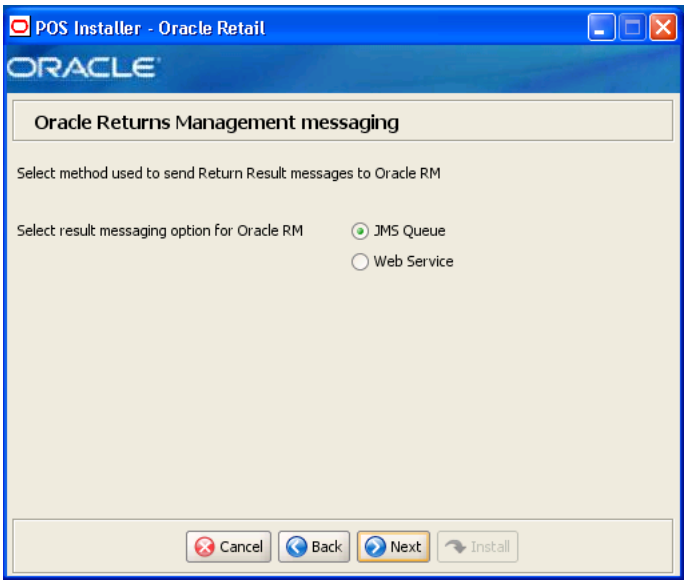
Figure B–40 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose whether Oracle Retail Returns Management is used to authorize returns.
Example	No If No is selected, the next screen displayed is Figure B–45.
Notes	

Figure B–41 Oracle Returns Management Messaging

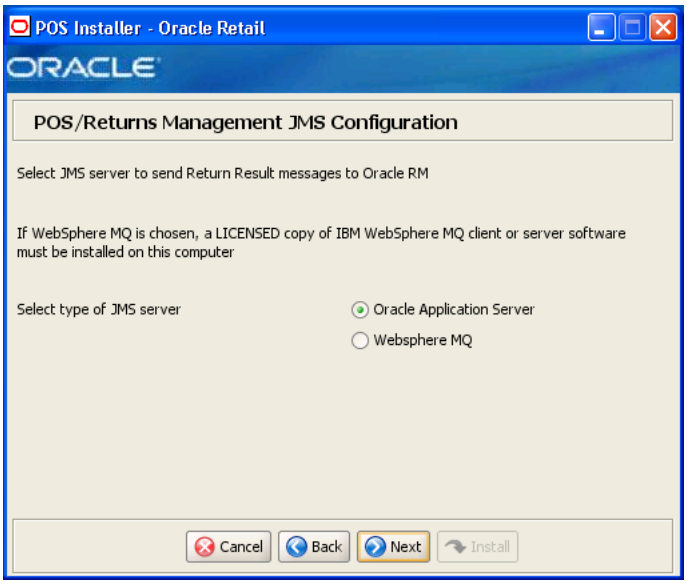


This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select result messaging option for Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose the method to use to send return result messages to Oracle Retail Returns Management. ▪ If you want messages sent to a JMS queue, choose **JMS Queue**. The next screen displayed is Figure B–42. ▪ If you want to use a web service to send the messages, choose **Web Service**. The next screen displayed is Figure B–44.
Example	JMS Queue
Notes	

Figure B–42 POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration

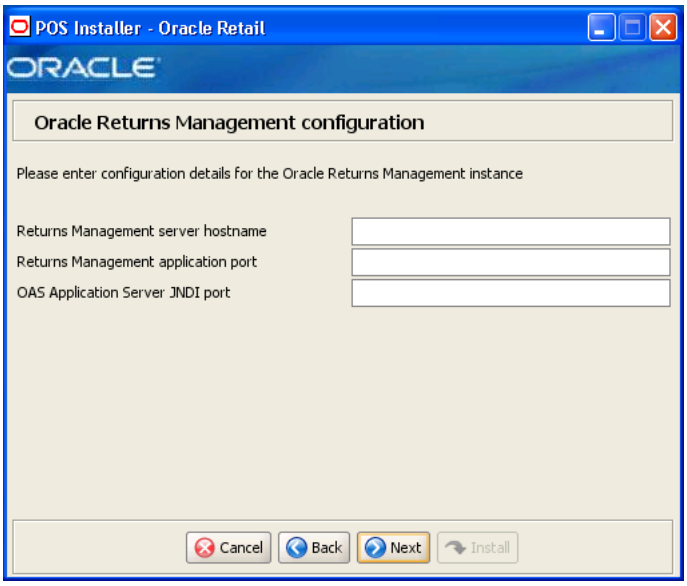


This screen is only displayed if **JMS Queue** is selected on the Oracle Returns Management Messaging screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select result messaging option for Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose the type of JMS server to use to send return result messages to Oracle Retail Returns Management. Choose **Oracle Application Server**.
Example	Oracle Application Server
Notes	

Figure B–43 Oracle Returns Management Configuration for JMS Queue Used for Messaging



This screen is only displayed if **Oracle Application Server** is selected on the POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration screen.

To find the JNDI port number for the Oracle Application Server, the information is available in:

<Oracle Application Server install>\opmn\conf\opmn.xml. Locate the Central Office instance. The port number is defined in the `port id="rmi"` entry. You can also check the port number by using the following command:

```
<Oracle Application Server install>\opmn\conf\opmn.xml status -l <instance name>
```

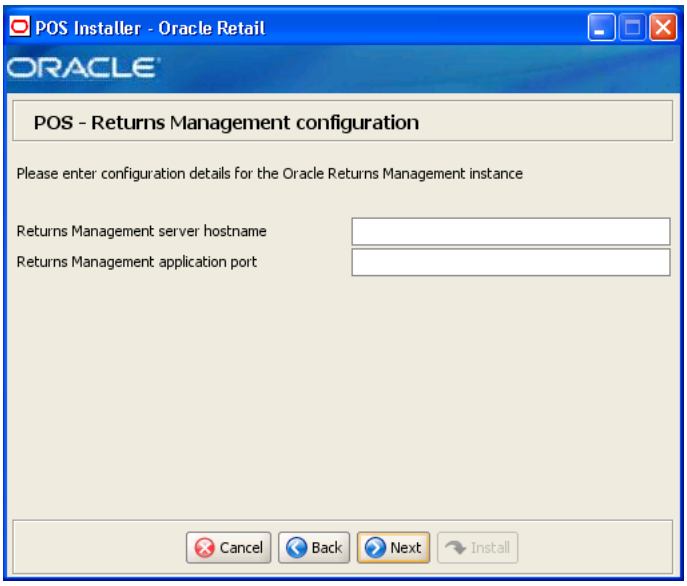
The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Returns Management Server Hostname
Field Description	Enter the name for the Oracle Retail Returns Management server.
Notes	

Field Title	Returns Management Application Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Retail Returns Management application.
Notes	

Field Title	OAS Application Server JNDI Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Application Server.
Notes	

Figure B–44 POS - Returns Management Configuration for Web Service Used for Messaging



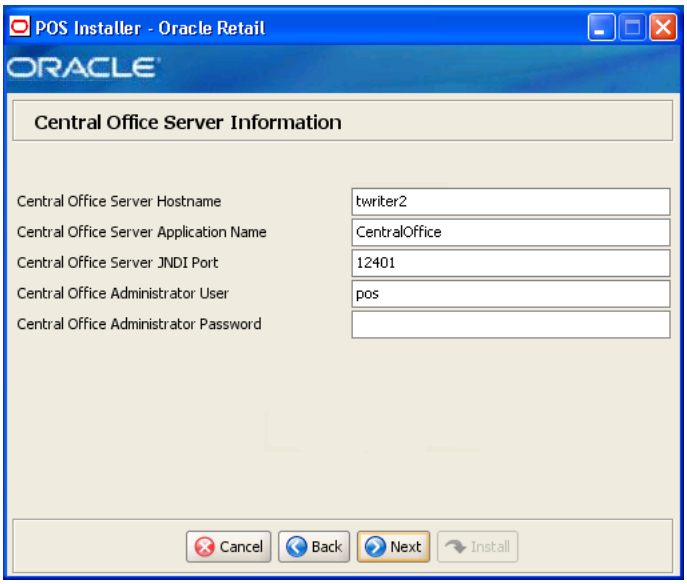
This screen is only displayed if **Web Service** is selected on the Oracle Returns Management Messaging screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Returns Management Server Hostname
Field Description	Enter the name for the Oracle Retail Returns Management server.
Notes	

Field Title	Returns Management Application Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Retail Returns Management application.
Notes	

Figure B–45 Central Office Server Information



To find the JNDI port number, the information is available in:

<Oracle Application Server install>\opmn\conf\opmn.xml. Locate the Central Office instance. The port number is defined in the `port id="rmi"` entry. You can also check the port number by using the following command:

```
<Oracle Application Server install>\opmn\conf\opmn.xml status -l <instance name>
```

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

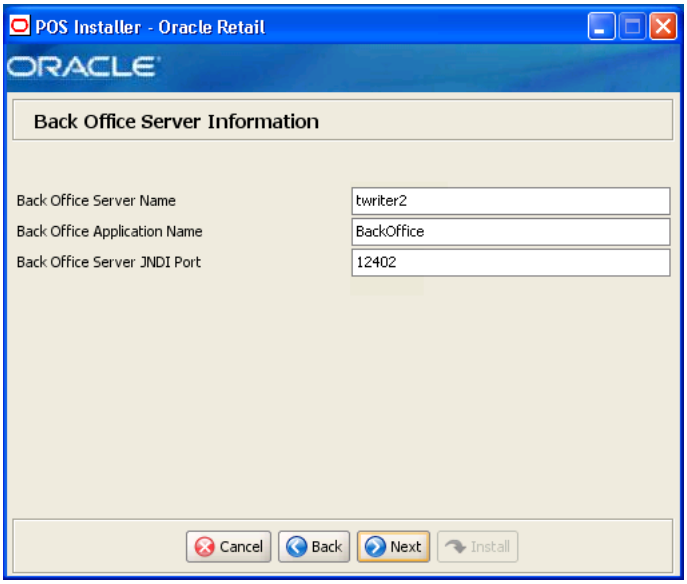
Field Title	Central Office Hostname
Field Description	Enter the host name for the Central Office application.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

Field Title	Central Office Server JNDI Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Central Office application.
Example	12401
Notes	

Field Title	Central Office Administrator User
Field Description	Enter the user name used for performing Central Office administrative functions.
Example	coadmin
Notes	

Field Title	Central Office Administrator Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the Central Office administrator user.
Notes	

Figure B–46 Back Office Server Information



To find the JNDI port number, the information is available in:

`<Oracle Application Server install>\opmn\conf\opmn.xml`. Locate the Back Office instance. The port number is defined in the `port id="rmi"` entry. You can also check the port number by using the following command:

```
<Oracle Application Server install>\opmn\conf\opmn.xml status -l <instance name>
```

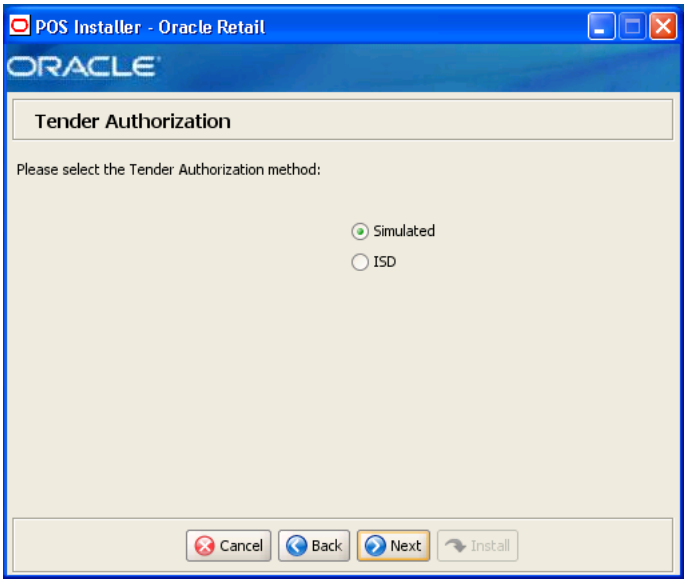
The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Back Office Server Name
Field Description	Enter the host name for the Back Office application.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

Field Title	Back Office Application Name
Field Description	Enter the name for the Back Office application.
Example	BackOffice
Notes	

Field Title	Back Office Server JNDI Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Back Office application.
Example	12402
Notes	

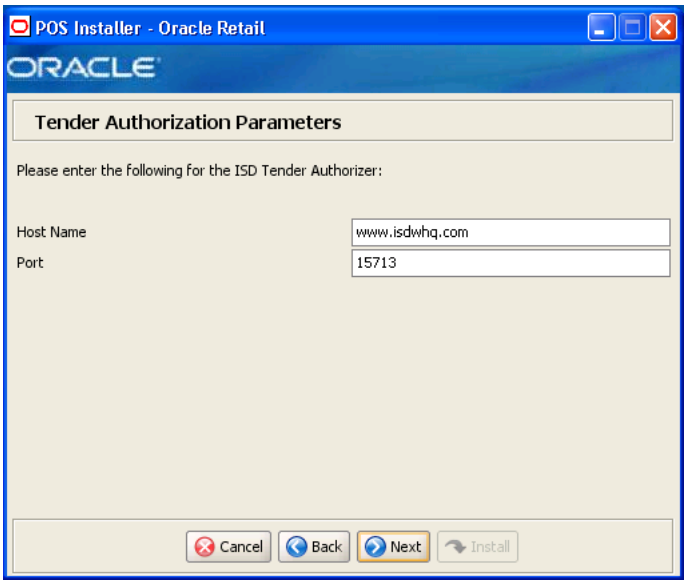
Figure B–47 Tender Authorization



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select Tender Authorizer
Field Description	Choose where tender authorizations are sent. ▪ If approvals do not leave the store server and are based on values and certain numbers, choose **Simulated**. ▪ If approvals are sent to a third party system to approve the authorizations, choose **ISD**. **Note:** Demo installations should use the Simulated option.
Example	Simulated
Notes	

Figure B–48 Tender Authorization Parameters

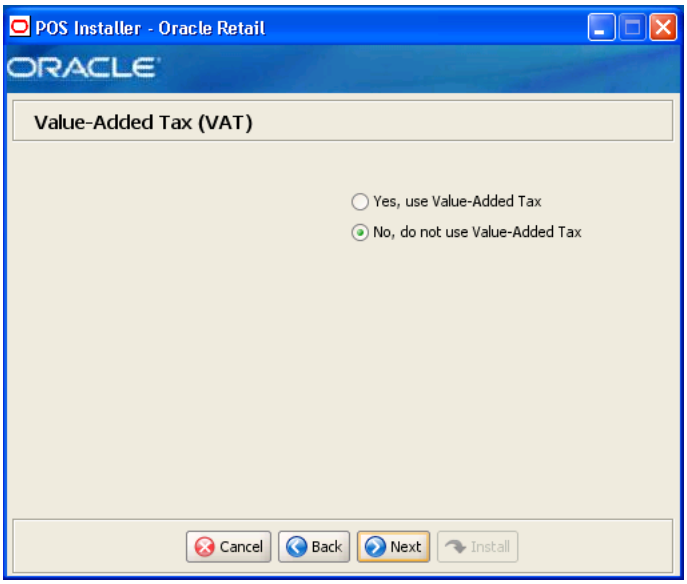


This screen is only displayed if **ISD** is selected for the Tender Authorization. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	**Host Name**
Field Description	Enter the host name of the tender authorizer.
Example	www.isdwhq.com
Notes	

Field Title	**Host Port**
Field Description	Enter the port number used for the communication between the store server and the tender authorizer.
Example	15713
Notes	

Figure B–49 Value-Added Tax (VAT)



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Value-Added Tax
Field Description	Choose whether Value-Added Tax is used.
Example	No, do not use Value-Added Tax
Notes	

Figure B–50 Installation Progress

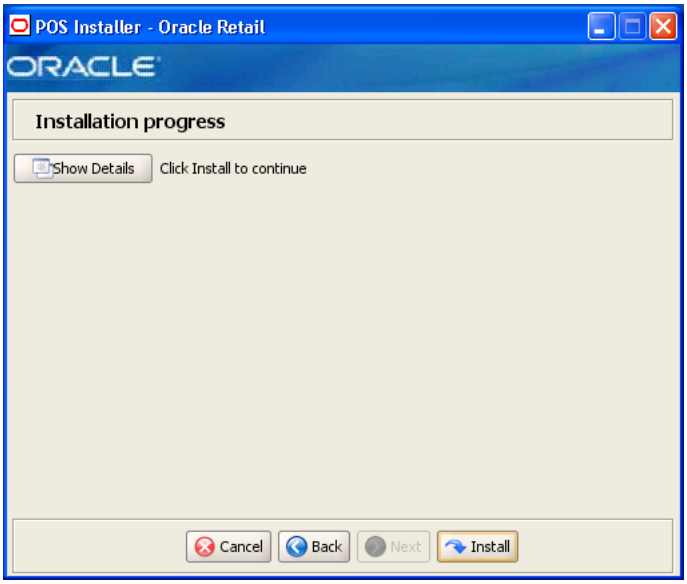
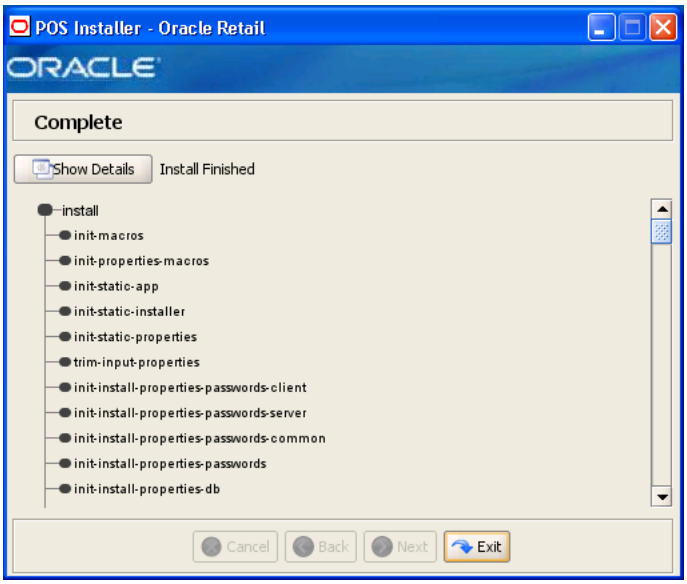


Figure B–51 Install Complete



C

Appendix: Installer Screens for Client Installation on the Oracle Stack

You need the following details about your environment for the installer to successfully install the Point-of-Service application. This appendix shows the screens that are displayed during the installation of the Point-of-Service client on the Oracle stack. Depending on the options you select, you may not see some screens or fields.

> **Note:** The flow of the screens and selections on the screens shown in this appendix follow the installation of the client using the supported software and hardware selections for the Oracle stack as shown in Chapter 1.

For each field on a screen, a table is included in this appendix that describes the field. If you want to document any specific information about your environment for any field, a Notes row is provided in each table for saving that information.

For the installer screens for a server installation on Linux, see Appendix A. For the installer screens for a server installation on Windows, see Appendix B.

Figure C–1 Introduction

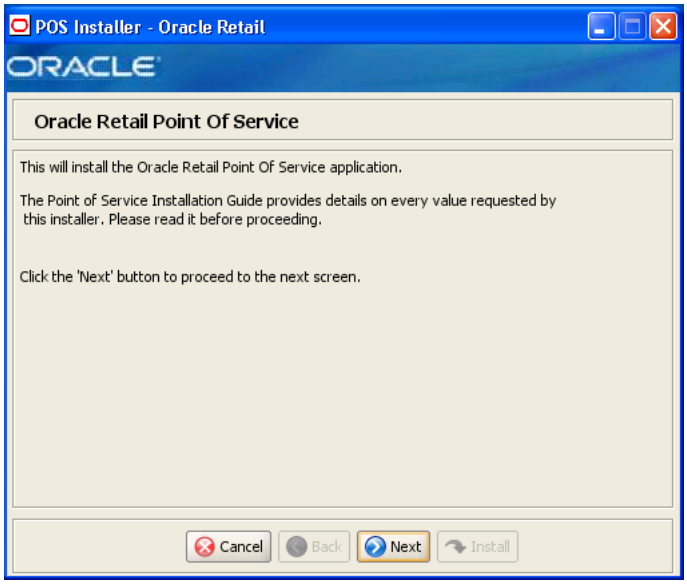


Figure C–2 Previous POS Install

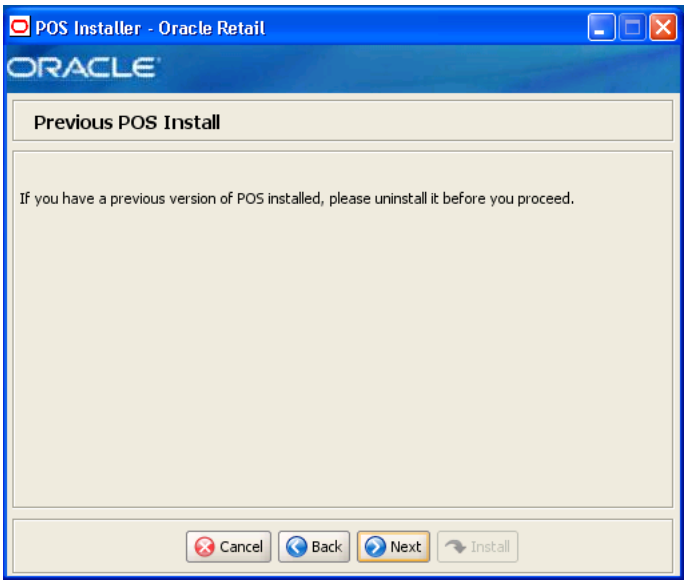
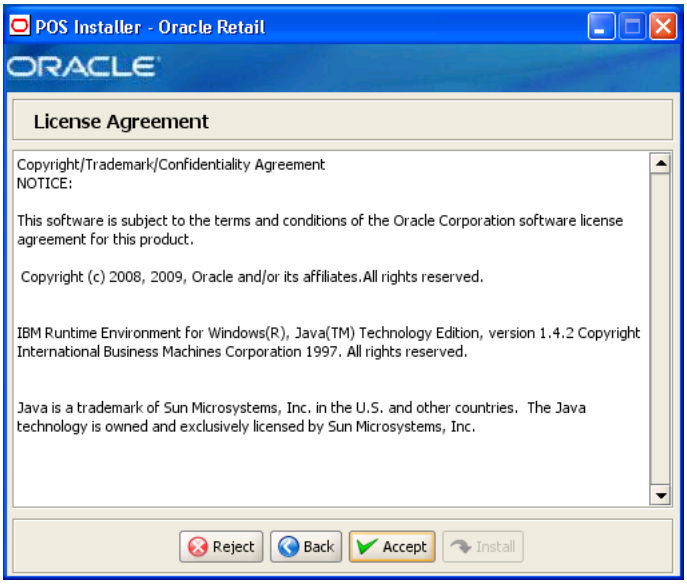
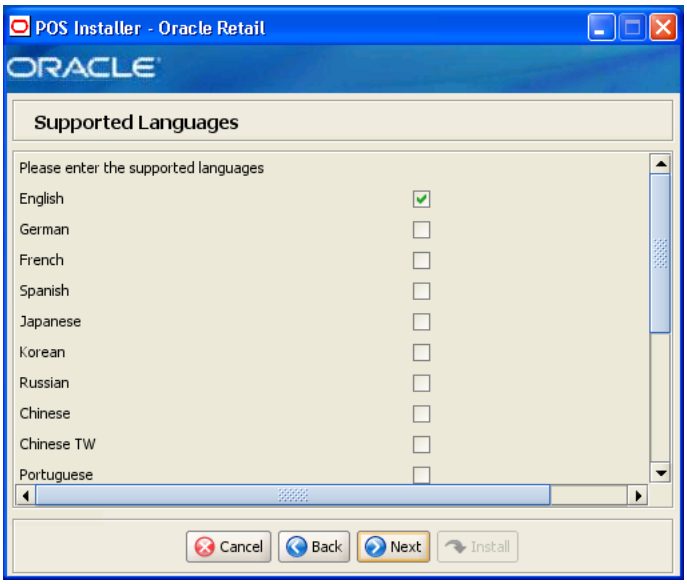


Figure C–3 License Agreement



Note: You must choose to accept the terms of the license agreement in order for the installation to continue.

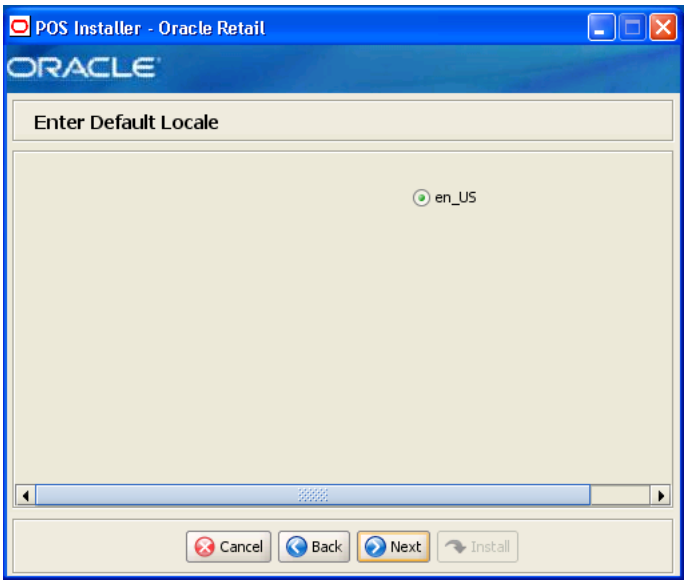
Figure C–4 Supported Languages



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Please enter the supported languages
Field Description	Select the languages that will be available for the Point-of-Service application. The languages selected on this screen determine the available choices on the Enter Default Locale screen.
Example	English
Notes	

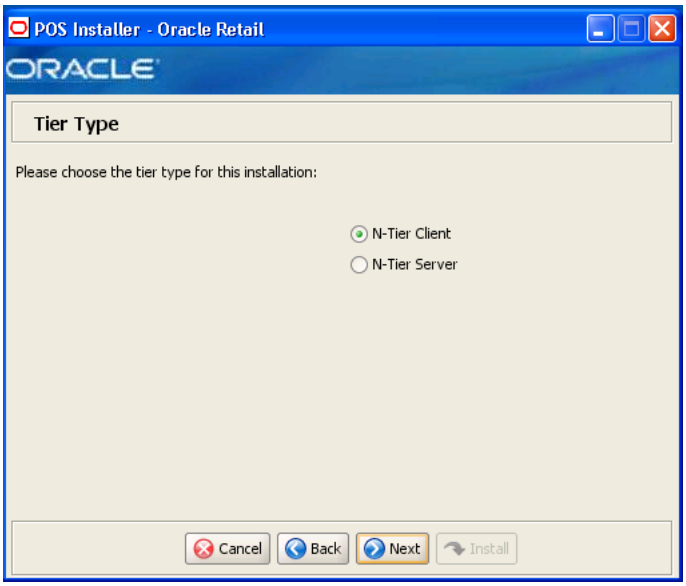
Figure C–5 Enter Default Locale



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enter Default Locale
Field Description	Locale support in Point-of-Service enables the date, time, currency, calendar, address, and phone number to be displayed in the format for the selected default locale. The choices for default locale are dependent on the selections made on the Supported Languages screen. For each selected language, the default locale for that language is displayed on the Enter Default Locale screen. For example, if English and French are selected on the Supported Languages screen, en_US and fr_FR are the available choices for the default locale.
Example	en_US
Notes	

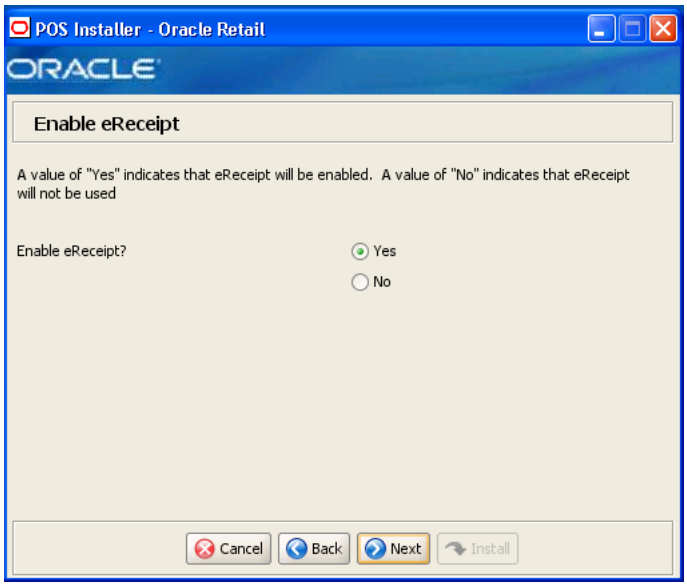
Figure C–6 Tier Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Tier Type
Field Description	Choose the server tier type for this installation. For more information on Linux, see "Determining Tier Type" in Chapter 2. For more information on Windows, see "Determining Tier Type" in Chapter 3. To install the N-Tier version of the client, choose **N-Tier Client**.
Example	N-Tier Client
Notes	

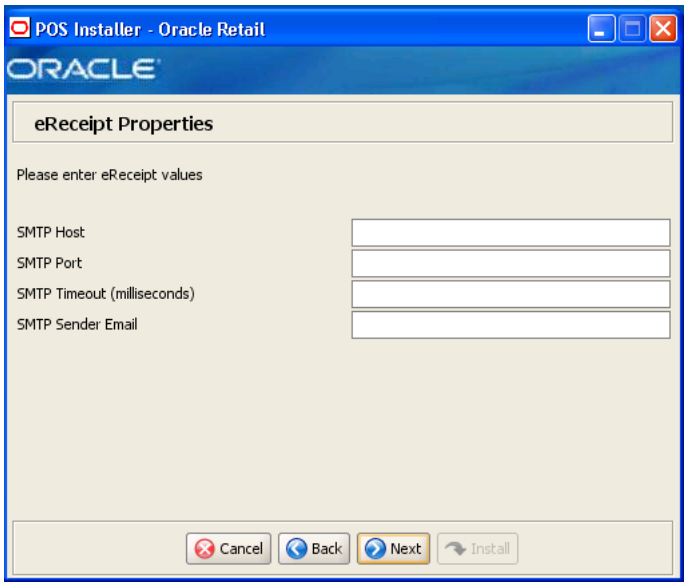
Figure C–7 Enable eReceipt



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable eReceipt?
Field Description	Choose whether the use of eReceipts is enabled.
Example	Yes
Notes	

Figure C–8 eReceipt Properties



This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable eReceipt screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

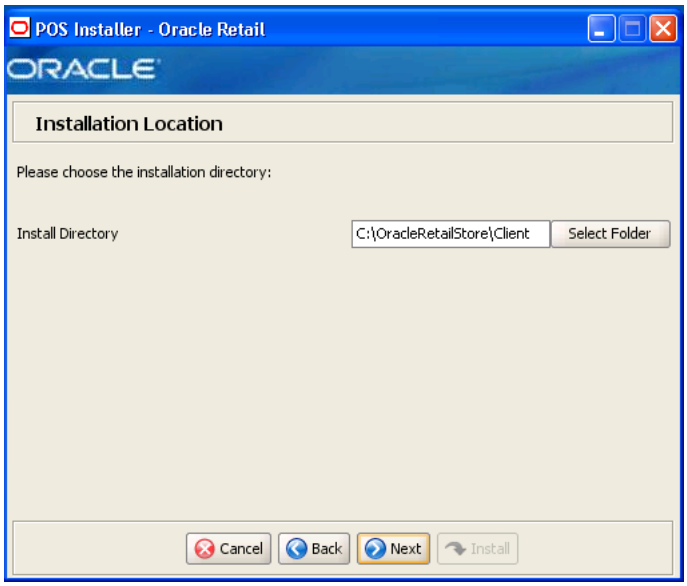
Field Title	SMTP Host
Field Description	Enter the host name for the SMTP server.
Notes	

Field Title	SMTP Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the SMTP server.
Notes	

Field Title	SMTP Timeout (milliseconds)
Field Description	Enter the amount of time to wait for the SMTP server.
Notes	

Field Title	SMTP Sender Email
Field Description	Enter the e-mail address to use for the from address in e-mails generated by Point-of-Service.
Notes	

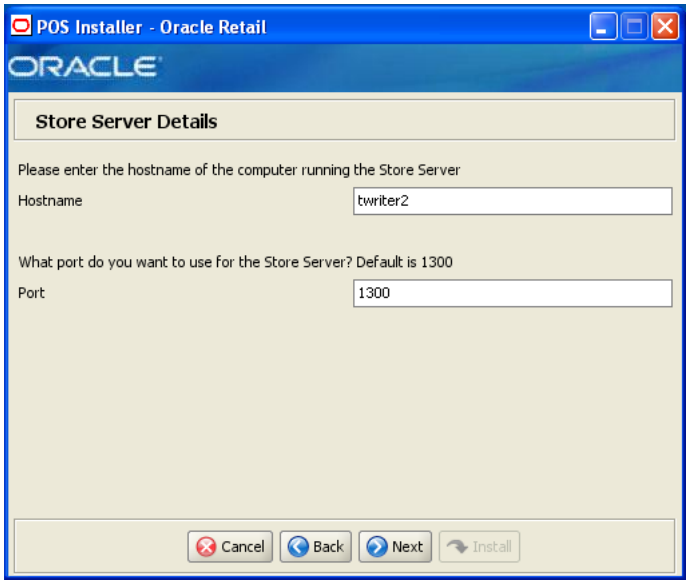
Figure C–9 Installation Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Install Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory into which the Point-of-Service files are copied. The default for the first directory in the path is `OracleRetailStore`. This directory should be the same for all Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions products. When **N-Tier Client** is selected for the Tier Type, the default installation directory is `OracleRetailStore\Client`. **Note:** The server and the client must not be installed into the same directory. In this guide, *<POS_install_directory>* refers to the selected installation directory for the server or client. Files specific to Point-of-Service are copied to the `\pos` subdirectory of `<POS_install_directory>`.
Example	`C:\OracleRetailStore\Client`
Notes	

Figure C–10 Store Server Details

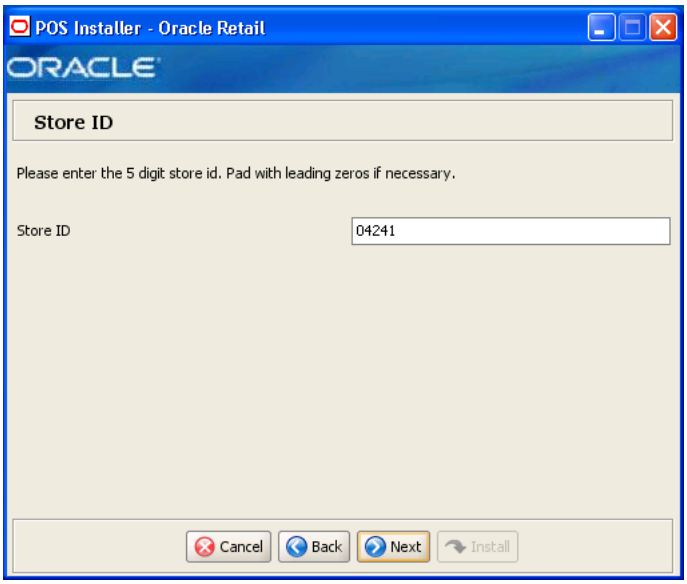


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Hostname
Field Description	Enter the host name of the store server.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

Field Title	Port
Field Description	Enter the port number of the store server used for the communication between the store server and the host computer.
Example	1300
Notes	

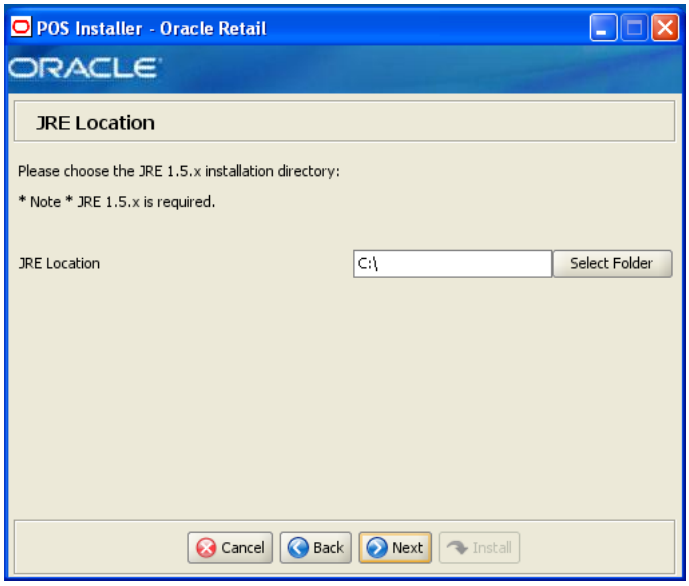
Figure C–11 Store ID



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Store ID
Field Description	Enter the store ID.
Example	04241
Notes	

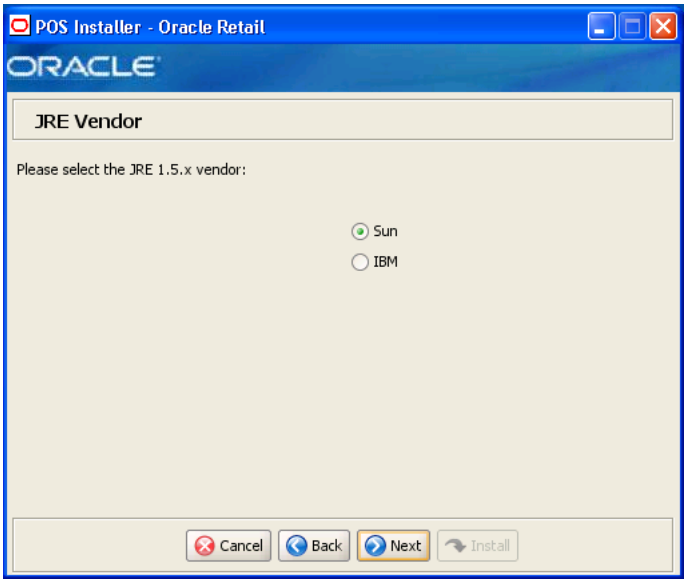
Figure C–12 JRE Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Location
Field Description	Choose the location where the JRE is installed.
Example	`C:\Program Files\Java\jre1.5`
Notes	

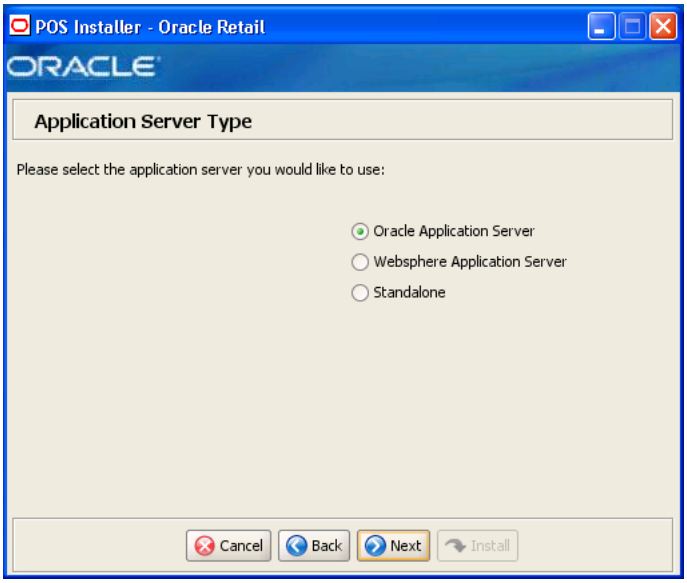
Figure C–13 JRE Vendor



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Vendor
Field Description	Select the vendor for the JRE entered on the previous screen: ▪ Sun ▪ IBM Choose **IBM**.
Example	IBM
Notes	

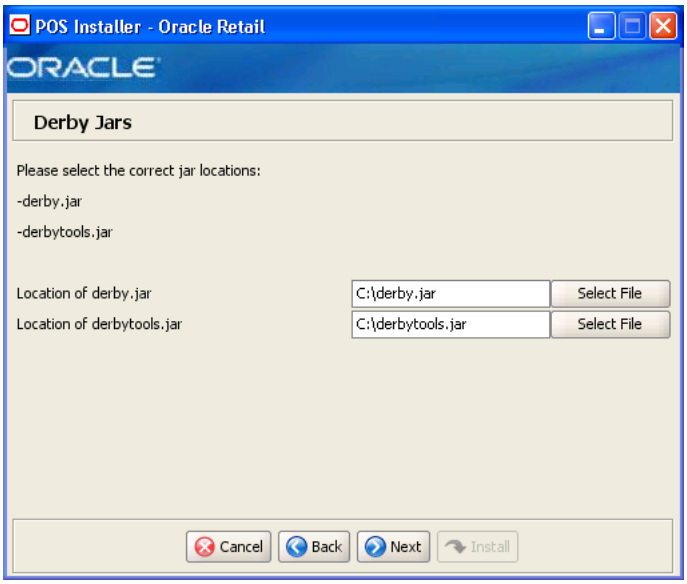
Figure C–14 Application Server Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Application Server Type
Field Description	Select the application server to be used for the store server. ▪ Oracle Application Server ▪ Websphere Application Server ▪ Standalone Choose **Oracle Application Server**.
Example	Oracle Application Server
Notes	

Figure C–15 Derby Jars

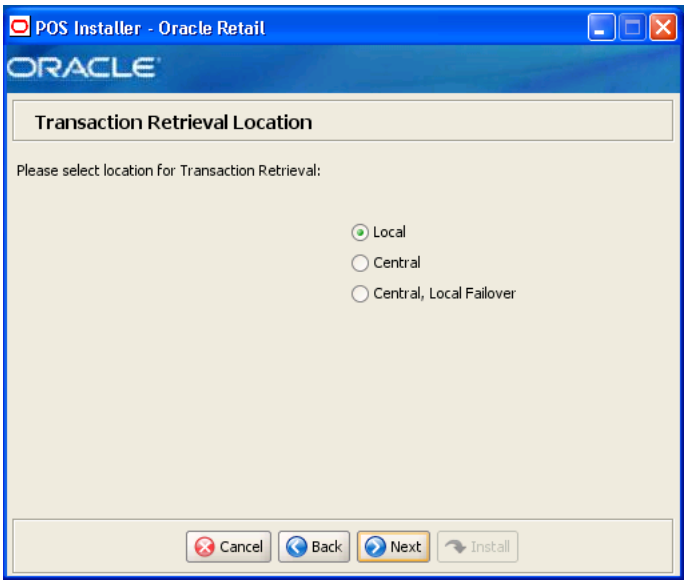


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Location of derby.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derby.jar` file.
Example	`C:\thirdparty\apache-derby-10.2.2\lib\derby.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Location of derbytools.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derbytools.jar` file.
Example	`C:\thirdparty\apache-derby-10.2.2\lib\derbytools.jar`
Notes	

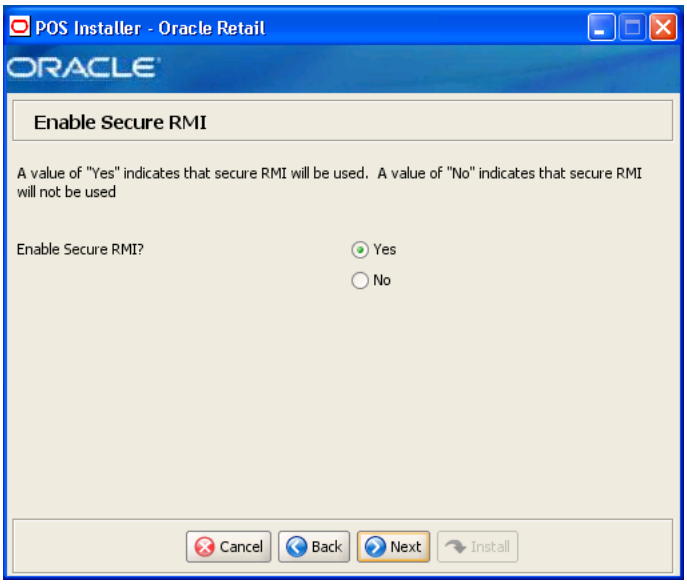
Figure C–16 Transaction Retrieval Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Transaction retrieval location
Field Description	Choose the location for retrieving transactions. ▪ If transactions should only be retrieved from the store database, choose **Local**. ▪ If transactions should only be retrieved from the corporate database, choose **Central**. ▪ If transactions should be retrieved from the corporate database, and if not found, then retrieved from the store database, choose **Central, Local Failover**. **Note:** You must choose the same location for both the store server and client installations.
Example	Local
Notes	

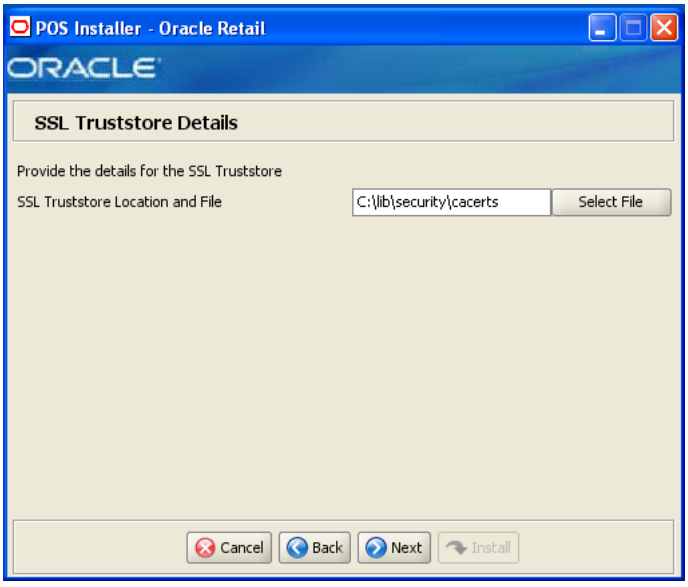
Figure C–17 Enable Secure RMI



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable SecureRMI?
Field Description	Select whether secure RMI is to be used for communication between the store server and registers.
Example	Yes
Notes	

Figure C–18 SSS Truststore Details

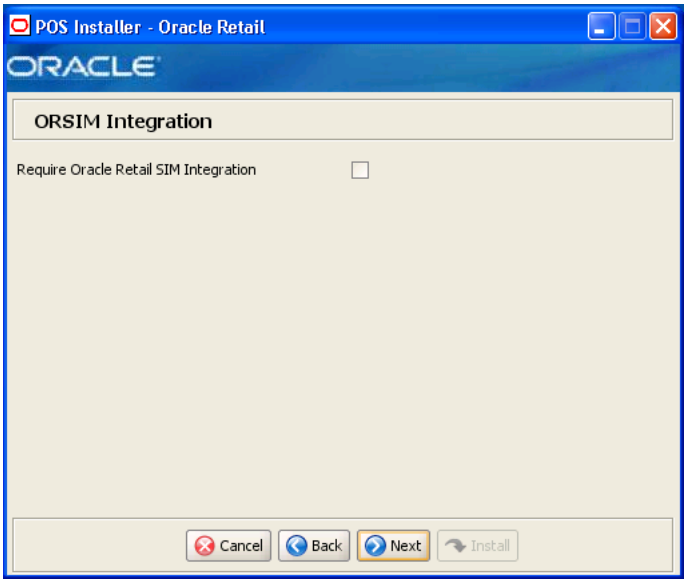


This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure RMI screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	SSL Truststore Location and File
Field Description	Choose the name of the truststore file and the path to it.
Example	`C:\lib\security\cacerts`
Notes	

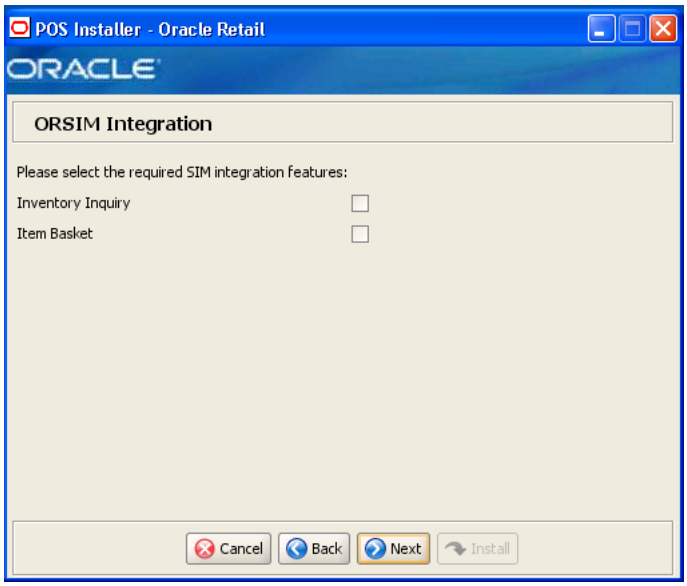
Figure C–19 ORSIM Integration



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Require Oracle Retail SIM Integration
Field Description	Check the box if integration with Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management is required. This box must be checked if the Item Inquiry feature of Point-of-Service is to be used.
Notes	

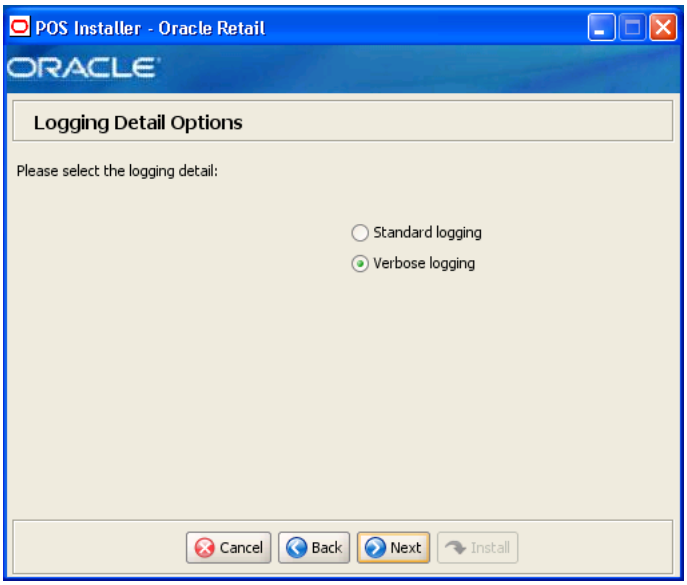
Figure C–20 ORSIM Integration



This screen is only displayed if **Require Oracle SIM Integration** is selected. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select the required SIM integration features
Field Description	Select the Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM) features that will be used in Point-of-Service: ▪ To inquire about inventory using SIM, select **Inventory Inquiry**. ▪ To enable item baskets created using SIM, select **Item Basket**.
Example	Inventory Inquiry
Notes	

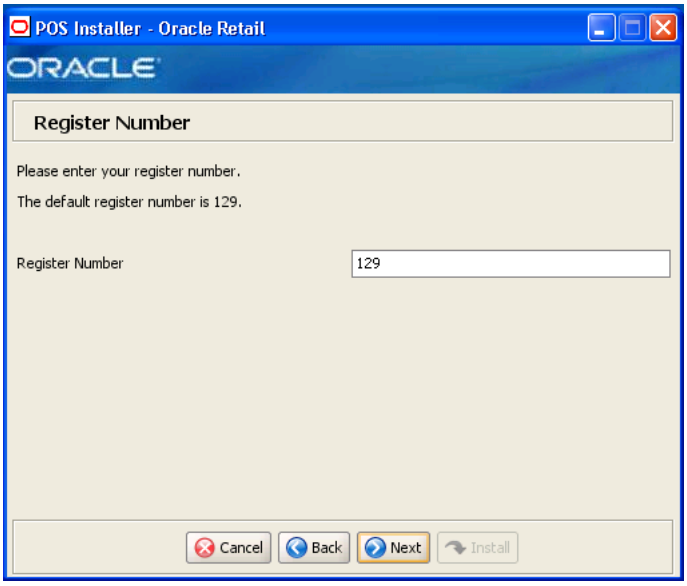
Figure C–21 Logging Detail Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Logging Detail Options
Field Description	Choose the level of client logging. ▪ To only log some of the messages, choose **Standard Logging**. ▪ To log all of the messages, choose **Verbose Logging**.
Example	Verbose logging
Notes	

Figure C–22 Register Number



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Register Number
Field Description	Enter the register number for this installation.
Example	129 **Note:** Only 1 to 245 is supported for the register number.
Notes	

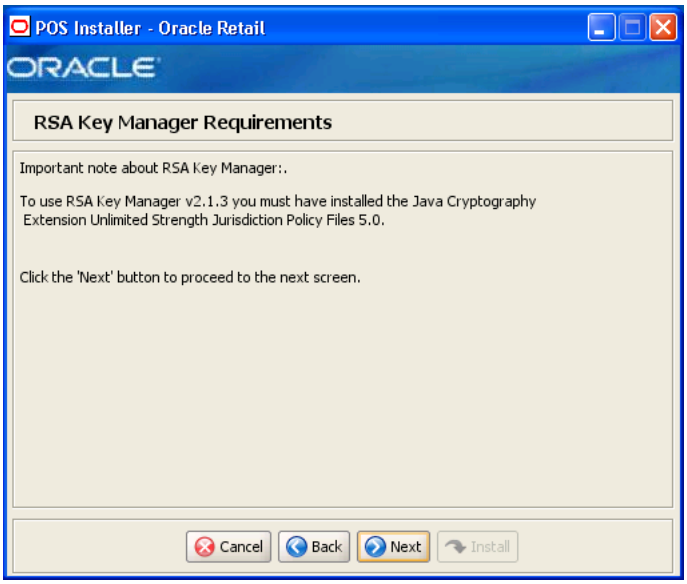
Figure C–23 Security Setup: Key Store Settings

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Hash Algorithm
Field Description	Enter the name of the algorithm used by the Key Store to hash sensitive data.
Example	SHA-256
Notes	

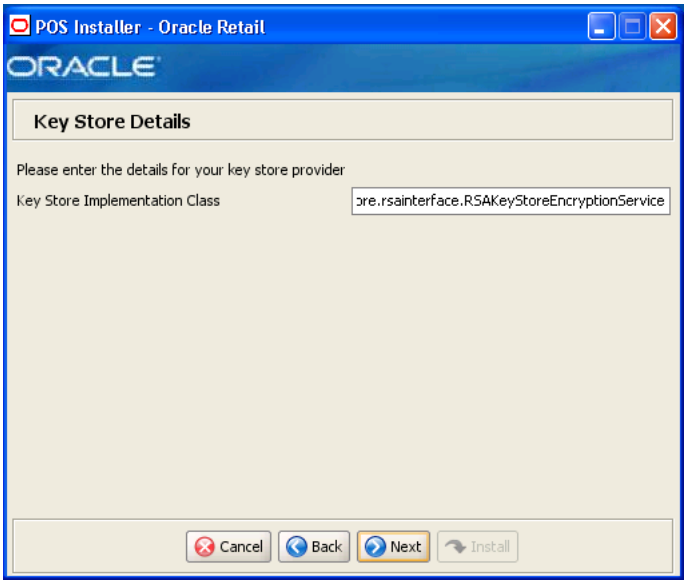
Field Title	Select Key Store Provider
Field Description	Provider for Key Store management. ▪ To use the RSA key management package, select **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3**. The next screen displayed is Figure C–24. ▪ To use the simulated key management package, select **Simulator**. The next screen displayed is Figure C–28. ▪ To use a different key management provider, select **Other**. The next screen displayed is Figure C–30.
Example	RSA Key Manager v2.1.3
Notes	

Figure C–24 RSA Key Manager Requirements



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen. This informational screen explains the requirements to use the RSA Key Manager. Verify that you meet the requirements and then click **Next**.

Figure C–25 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3

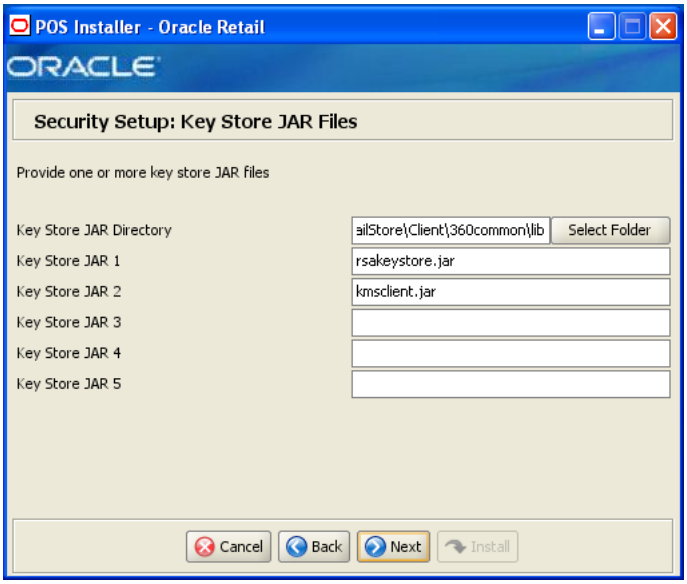


This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the RSA Key Manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.rsakeystore.rsainterface.RSAKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure C–26 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Example	`C:\OracleRetailStore\Server\360common\lib`
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	rsakeystore.jar
Notes	

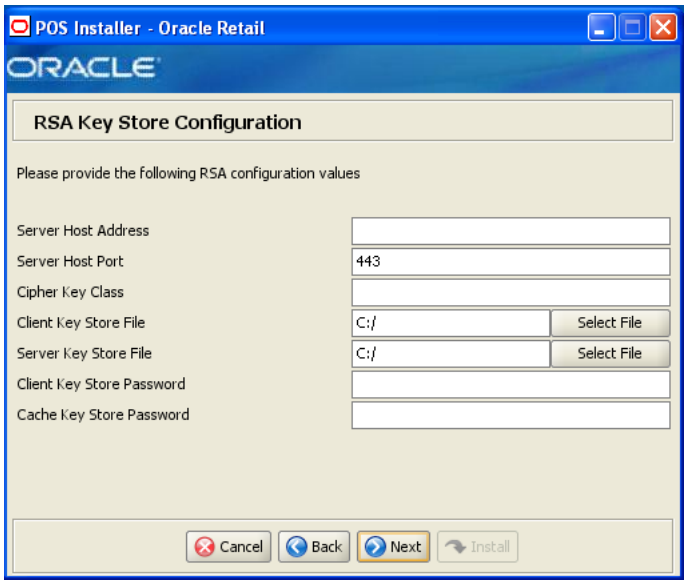
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	kmsclient.jar
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure C–27 RSA Key Store Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Server Host Address
Field Description	Enter the IP address of the RSA server host.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Host Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the RSA server host.
Example	443 443 is the default used by the RSA Key Manager.
Notes	

Field Title	Cipher Key Class
Field Description	Enter the RSA Key Manager cipher key class.
Notes	

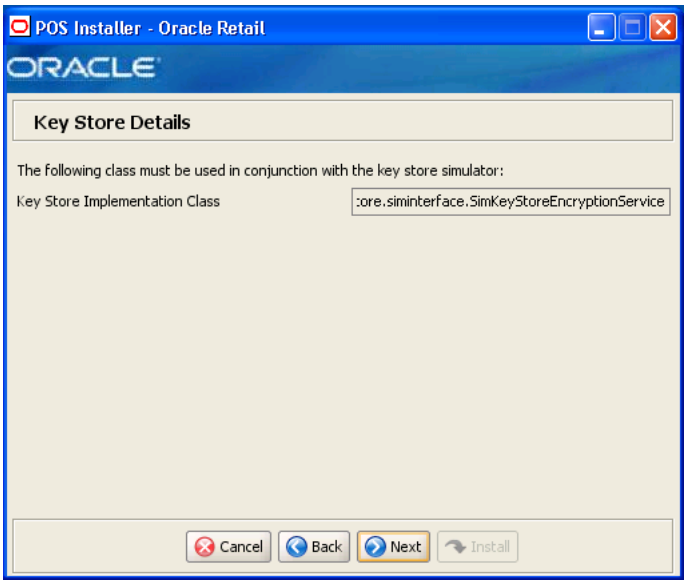
Field Title	Client Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager client Key Store file. **Note:** You must use forward slashes in the path name.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager server Key Store file. **Note:** You must use forward slashes in the path name.
Notes	

Field Title	Client Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager client Key Store.
Notes	

Field Title	Cache Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager cache.
Notes	

Figure C–28 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager

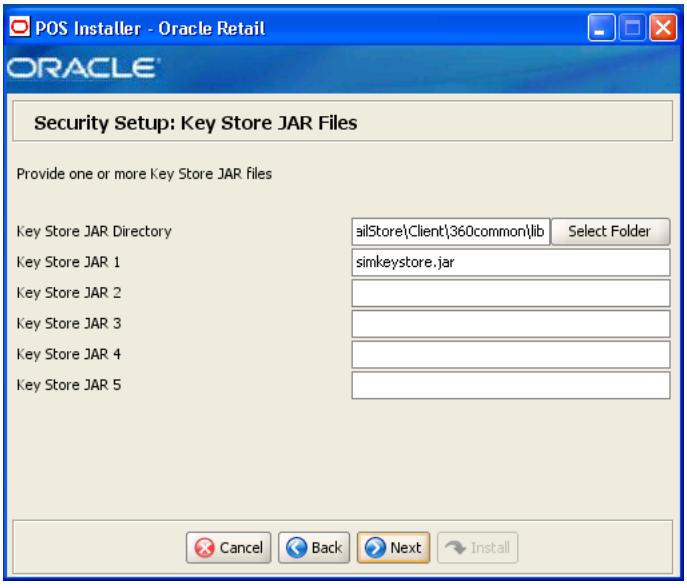


This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the simulated key manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.simkeystore.siminterface.SimKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure C–29 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager



The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located. **Note:** If you are using the simulated key management package bundled with Point-of-Service, enter the directory where you saved the `simkeystore.jar` file.
Example	`C:\OracleRetailStore\Server\360common\lib`
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	simkeystore.jar
Notes	

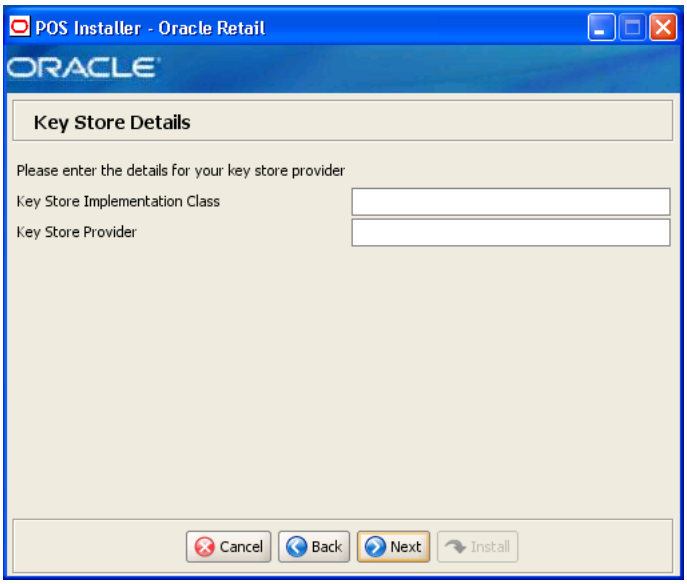
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure C–30 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager



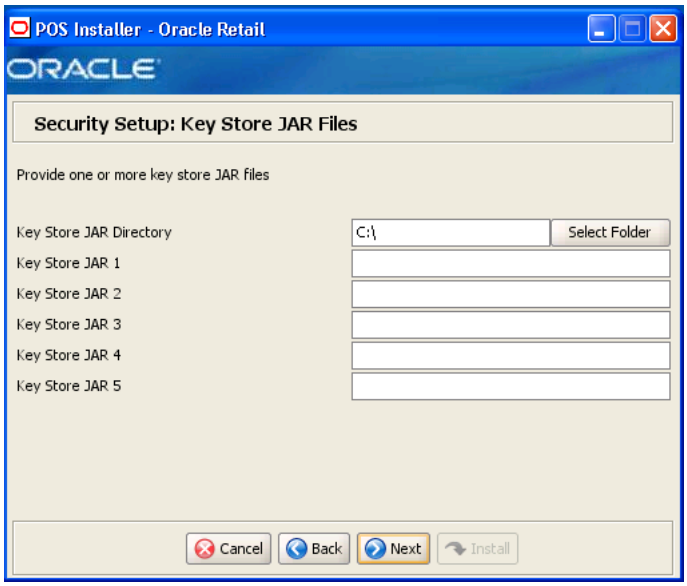
This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the key manager interface.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store Provider
Field Description	Enter the name of the provider for the Key Store.
Notes	

Figure C–31 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

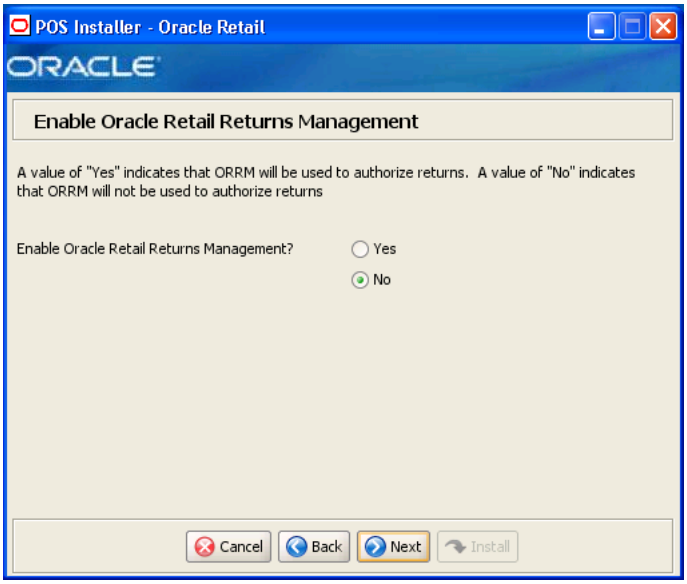
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

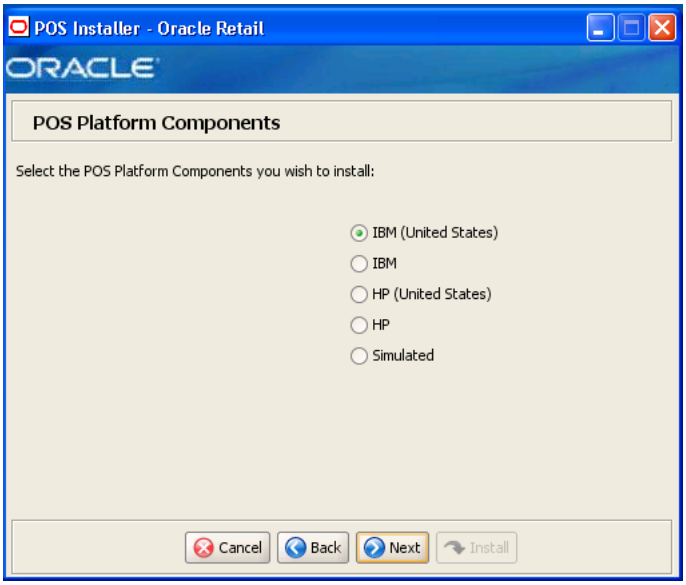
Figure C–32 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose whether Oracle Retail Returns Management is used to authorize returns.
Example	No
Notes	

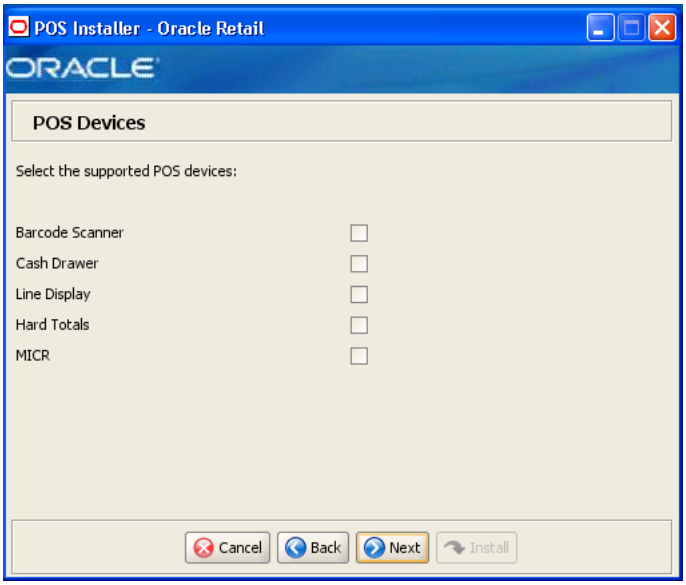
Figure C–33 POS Platform Components



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	POS Platform Components
Field Description	From the platform components, choose the type of register and whether the devices are intended for use in or outside the United States: ▪ To use an IBM register with devices intended for use in the United States, select **IBM (United States)**. ▪ To use an IBM register with devices intended for use outside the United States, select **IBM**. ▪ To use an HP register with devices intended for use in the United States, select **HP (United States)**. ▪ To use an HP register with devices intended for use outside the United States, select **HP**. ▪ To use a register with no devices, select **Simulated**. This should only be selected for a development environment. The next screen displayed is Figure C–39.
Example	IBM (United States)
Notes	

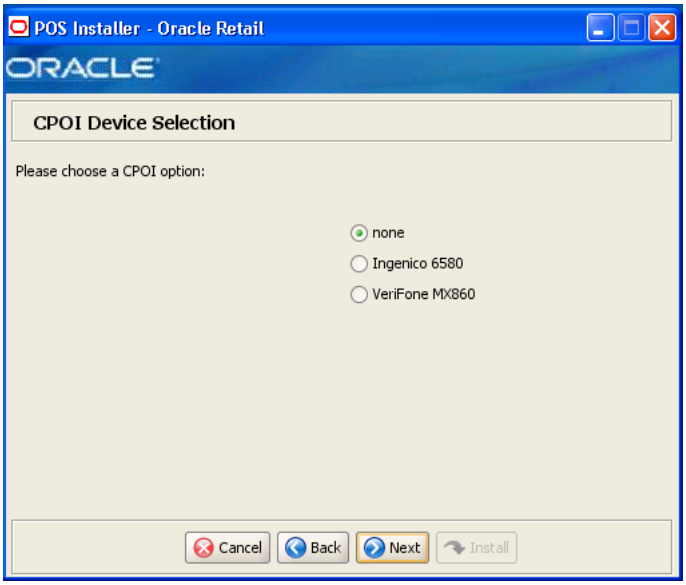
Figure C–34 POS Devices



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	POS Devices
Field Description	Choose the devices to be attached to the client register.
Example	Cash Drawer
Notes	

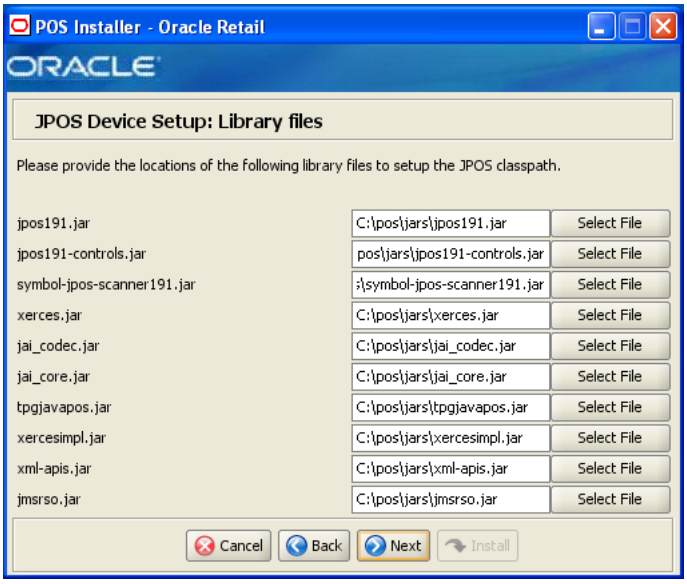
Figure C–35 CPOI Device Selection



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Please choose a CPOI option
Field Description	Choose the CPOI device to be used at the register. ▪ To not use a CPOI device, choose **none**. ▪ To use the Ingenico device, choose **Ingenico 6580**. ▪ To use the VeriFone device, choose **Verifone MX860**.
Example	none
Notes	

Figure C–36 JPOS Device Setup: Library Files



The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	jpos191.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	jpos191-controls.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	symbol-jpos-scanner191.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	xerces.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	jai_codec.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	jai_core.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

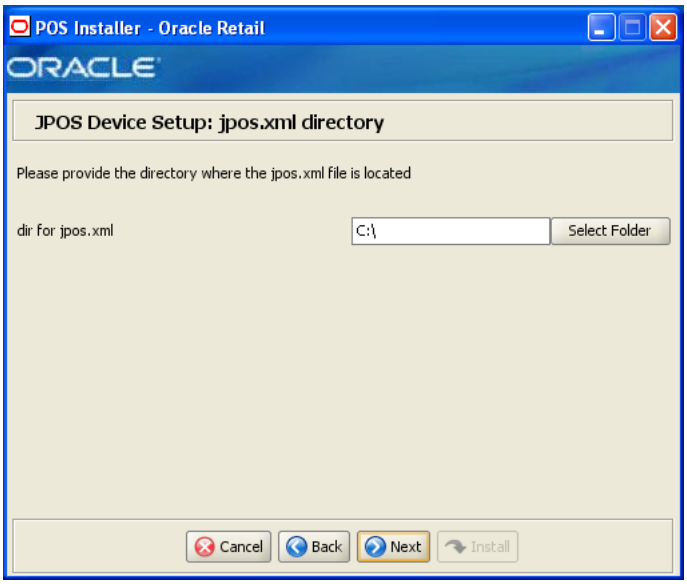
Field Title	tpgjavapos.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	xercesimpl.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	xml-apis.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	jmsrso.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

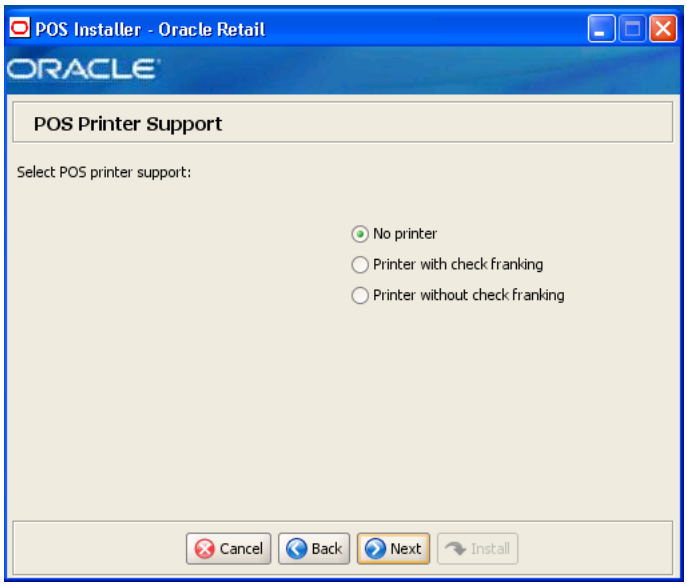
Figure C–37 JPOS Device Setup: jpos.xml directory



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	dir for jpos.xml
Field Description	Enter the location of the directory.
Notes	

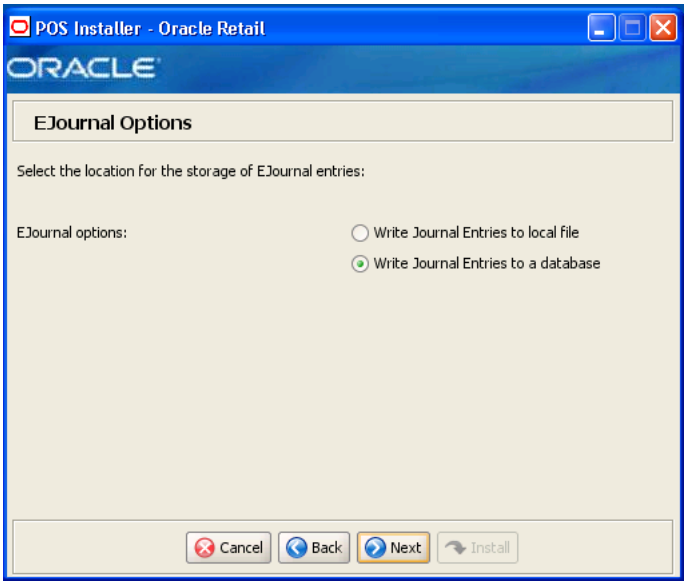
Figure C–38 POS Printer Support



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	POS Printer Support
Field Description	Choose what is supported for a printer attached to the register. If Ingenico 6580 or Verifone MX860 will be used for the CPOI device, select **Printer without check franking** on this screen.
Example	Printer with check franking
Notes	

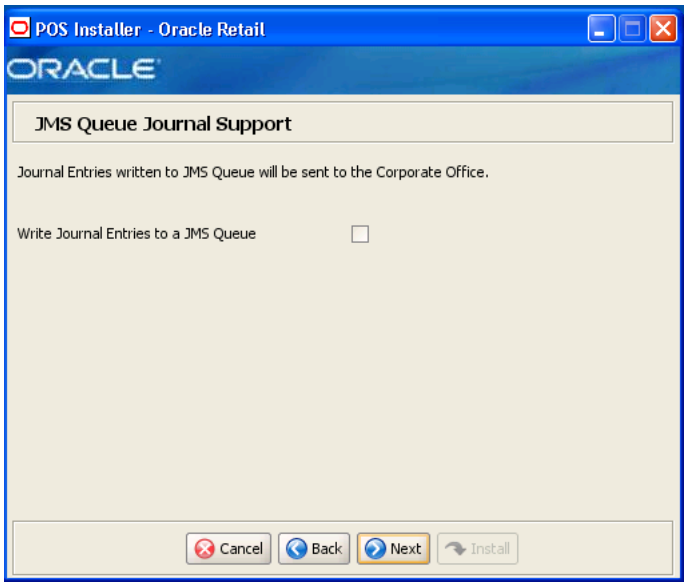
Figure C–39 EJournal Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	EJournal Options
Field Description	Choose where the journal entries are to be written. ▪ To write journal entries to a local file, choose **Write Journal Entries to local file**. ▪ To write journal entries to a database, choose **Write Journal Entries to a database**.
Example	Write Journal Entries to a database
Notes	

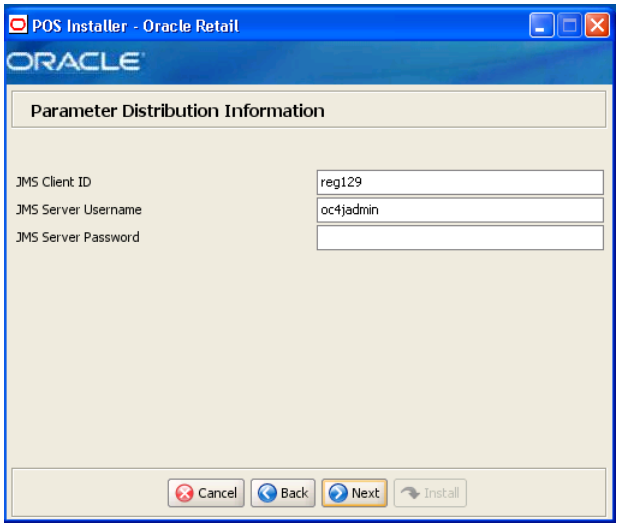
Figure C–40 JMS Queue Journal Support



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JMS Queue Journal Support
Field Description	Select if journal entries are to be written to a JMS queue and then sent to the corporate office.
Example	Write Journal Entries to a JMS queue
Notes	

Figure C–41 Parameter Distribution Information



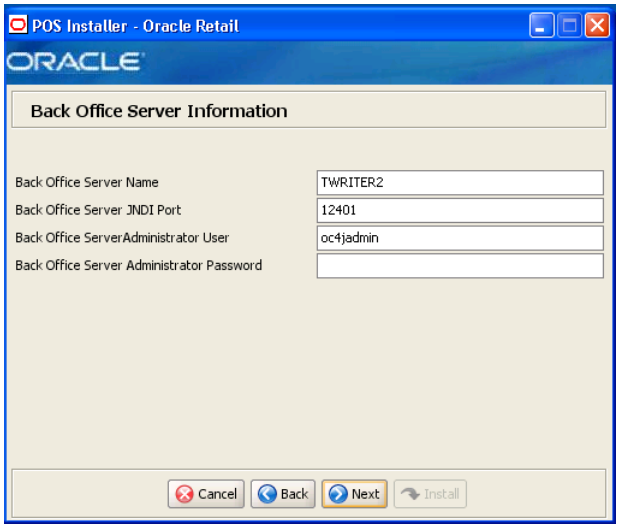
The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	JMS Client ID
Field Description	Identifier of the JMS client used for receiving parameter updates.
Example	`reg129`
Notes	

Field Title	JMS Username
Field Description	Identifier of the JMS user for receiving parameter updates.
Example	`oc4jadmin`
Notes	

Field Title	JMS Password
Field Description	Password of the JMS user receiving parameter updates.
Notes	

Figure C–42 Back Office Server Information



To find the JNDI port number, the information is available in:

<Oracle Application Server install>`/opmn/conf/opmn.xml`. Locate the Back Office instance. The port number is defined in the `port id="rmi"` entry. You can also check the port number by using the following command:

```
<Oracle Application Server install>/opmn/conf/opmn.xml status -l <instance name>
```

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

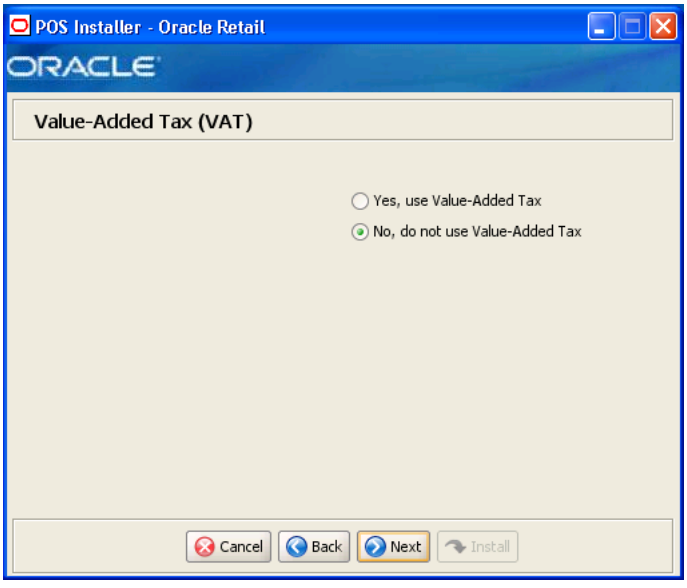
Field Title	Back Office Server Name
Field Description	Enter the host name for the Back Office application.
Example	TWRITER2
Notes	

Field Title	Back Office Server JNDI Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Back Office application.
Example	12401
Notes	

Field Title	Back Office Server Administrator User
Field Description	Enter the name for the Back Office server administrator user.
Example	oc4jadmin
Notes	

Field Title	Back Office Server Administrator Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the Back Office server administrator user.
Notes	

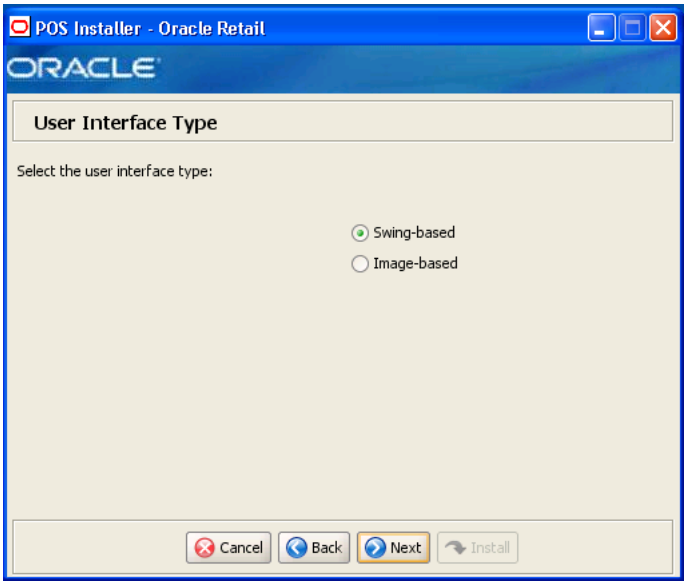
Figure C–43 Value-Added Tax (VAT)



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Value-Added Tax
Field Description	Choose whether Value-Added Tax is used.
Example	No, do not use Value-Added Tax
Notes	

Figure C–44 User Interface Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	User Interface Type
Field Description	Choose the user interface look and feel. ▪ To use a standard swing interface, choose **Swing-based**. ▪ To use custom images for buttons and other graphics, choose **Image-based**.
Example	Swing-based
Notes	

Figure C–45 Installation Progress

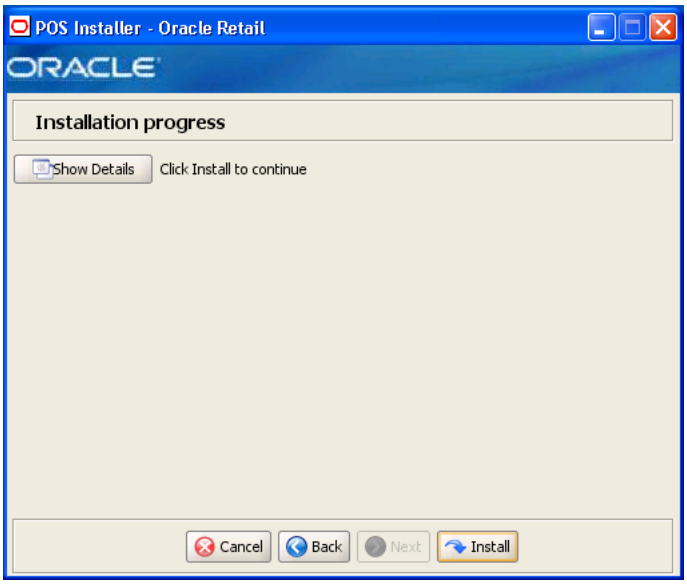
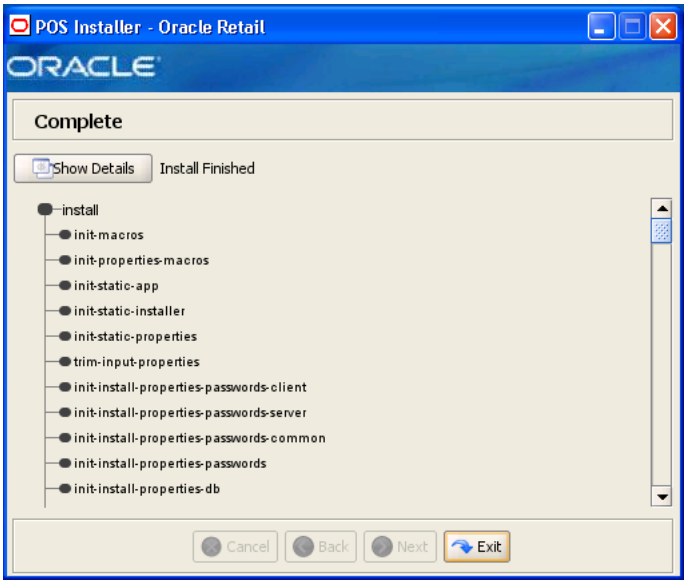


Figure C–46 Install Complete



D

Appendix: Installer Screens for Server Installation on the IBM Stack

You need specific details about your environment for the installer to successfully install the Point-of-Service application. This appendix shows the screens that are displayed during the installation of the Point-of-Service server on the IBM stack. Depending on the options you select, you may not see some screens or fields.

> **Note:** The flow of the screens and selections on the screens shown in this appendix follow the installation of the server using the supported software selections for the IBM stack as shown in Chapter 1.

For each field on a screen, a table is included in this appendix that describes the field. If you want to document any specific information about your environment for any field, a Notes row is provided in each table for saving that information.

For the installer screens for a client installation on the IBM stack, see Appendix E.

Figure D–1 Introduction

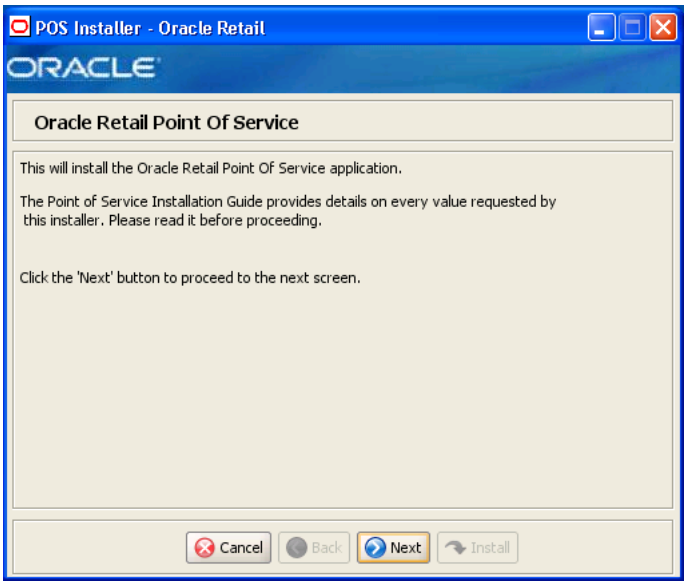


Figure D–2 Previous POS Install

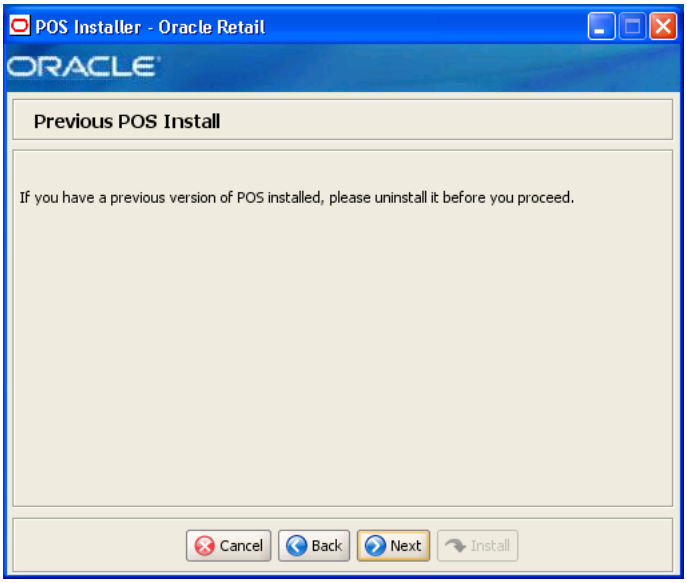
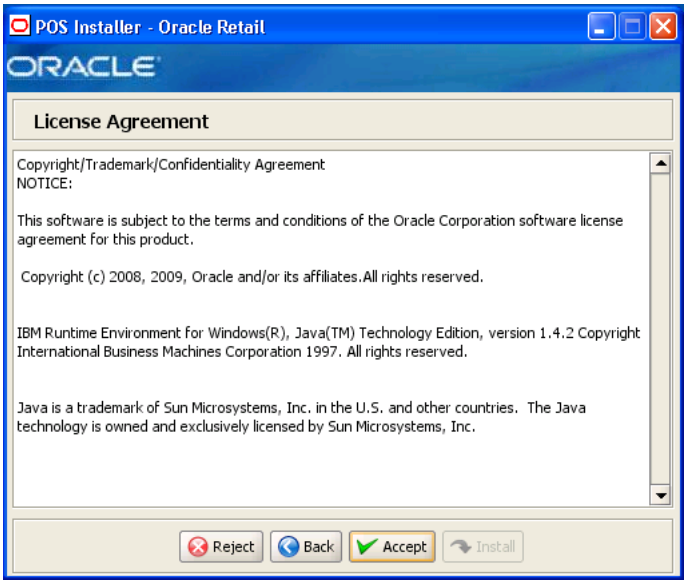
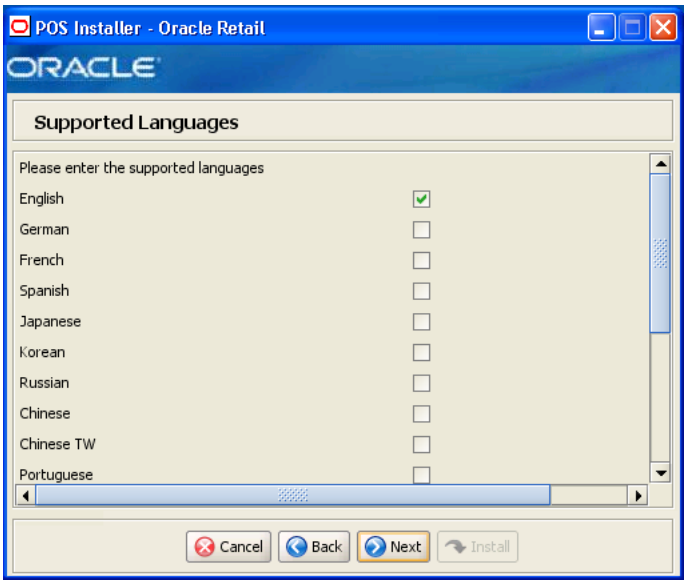


Figure D–3 License Agreement



Note: You must choose to accept the terms of the license agreement in order for the installation to continue.

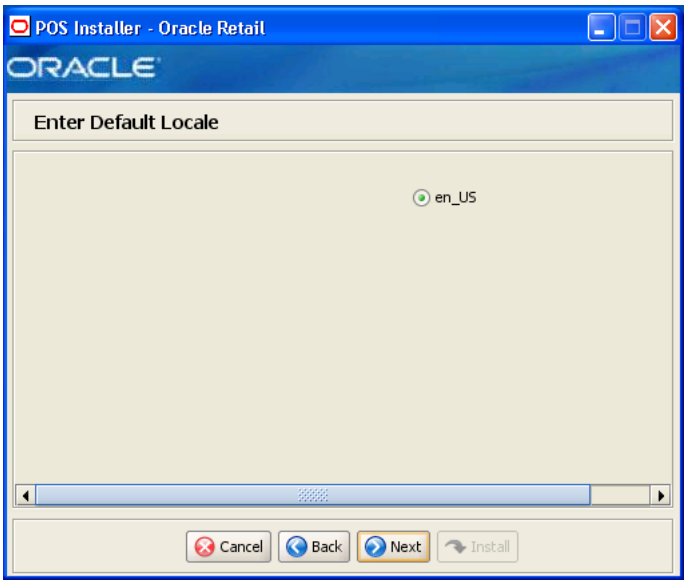
Figure D–4 Supported Languages



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Please enter the supported languages
Field Description	Select the languages that will be available for the Point-of-Service application. The languages selected on this screen determine the available choices on the Enter Default Locale screen.
Example	English
Notes	

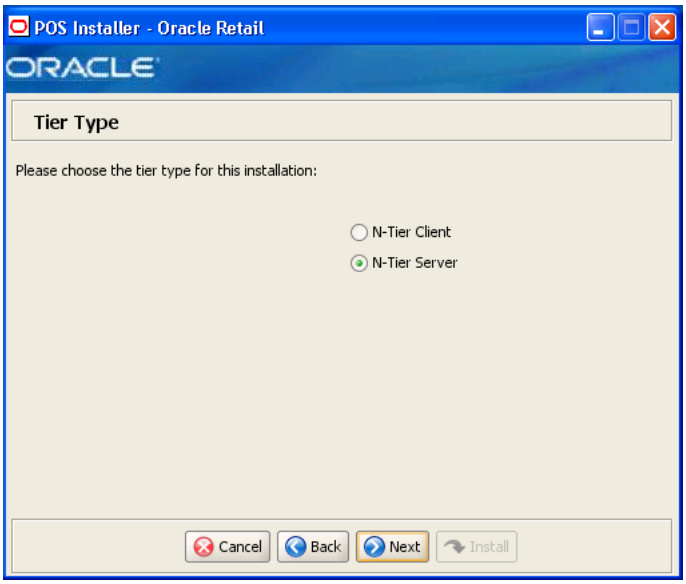
Figure D–5 Enter Default Locale



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enter Default Locale
Field Description	Locale support in Point-of-Service enables the date, time, currency, calendar, address, and phone number to be displayed in the format for the selected default locale. The choices for default locale are dependent on the selections made on the Supported Languages screen. For each selected language, the default locale for that language is displayed on the Enter Default Locale screen. For example, if English and French are selected on the Supported Languages screen, en_US and fr_FR are the available choices for the default locale.
Example	en_US
Notes	

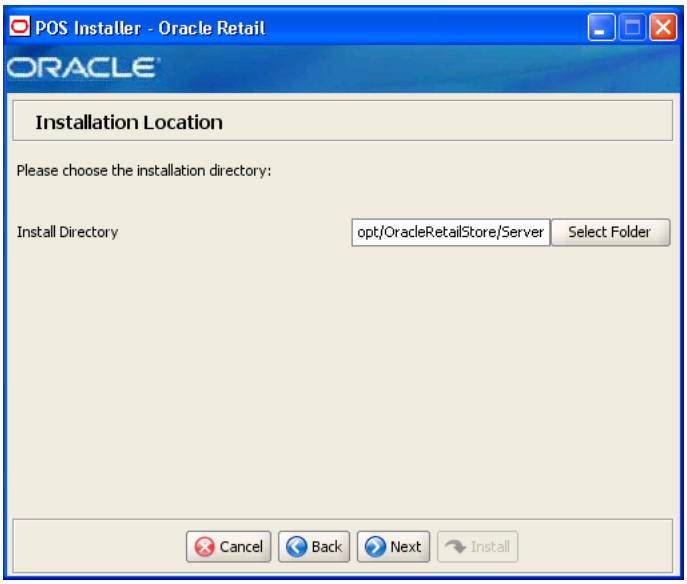
Figure D–6 Tier Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Tier Type
Field Description	Choose the server tier type for this installation. For more information, see "Determining Tier Type" in Chapter 4. To install the N-Tier version of the server, choose **N-Tier Server**.
Example	N-Tier Server
Notes	

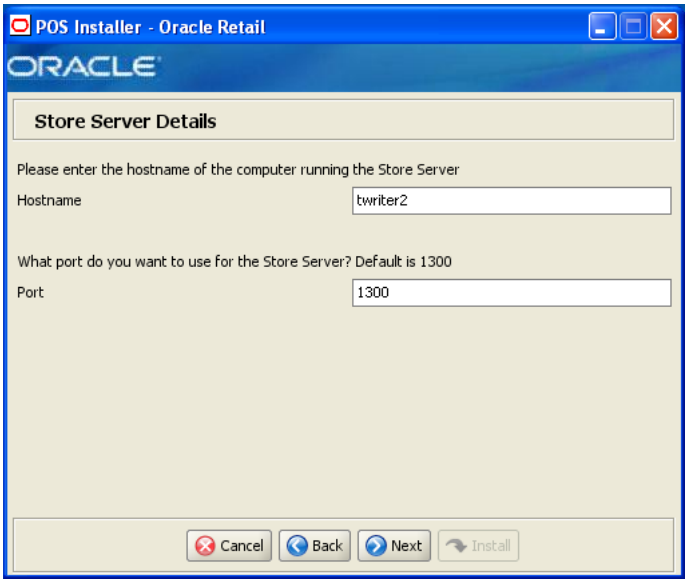
Figure D–7 Installation Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Install Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory into which the Point-of-Service files are copied. The default for the first directory in the path is `OracleRetailStore`. This directory should be the same for all Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions products. When installing for Windows and **N-Tier Server** is selected for the Tier Type, the default installation directory is `OracleRetailStore/Server`. **Note:** The server and the client must not be installed into the same directory. In this guide, *<POS_install_directory>* refers to the selected installation directory for the server or client. Files specific to Point-of-Service are copied to the `/pos` subdirectory of `<POS_install_directory>`.
Example	`/opt/OracleRetailStore/Server`
Notes	

Figure D–8 Store Server Details

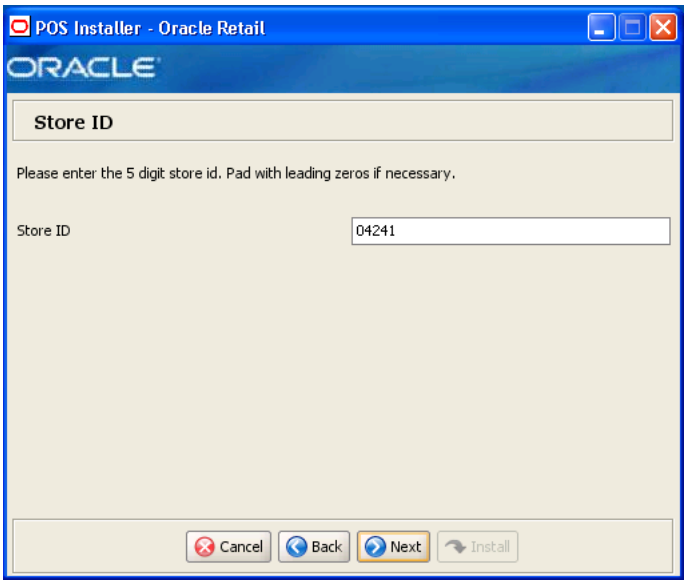


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Hostname
Field Description	Enter the host name of the store server.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

Field Title	Port
Field Description	Enter the port number of the store server used for the communication between the store server and the host computer.
Example	1300
Notes	

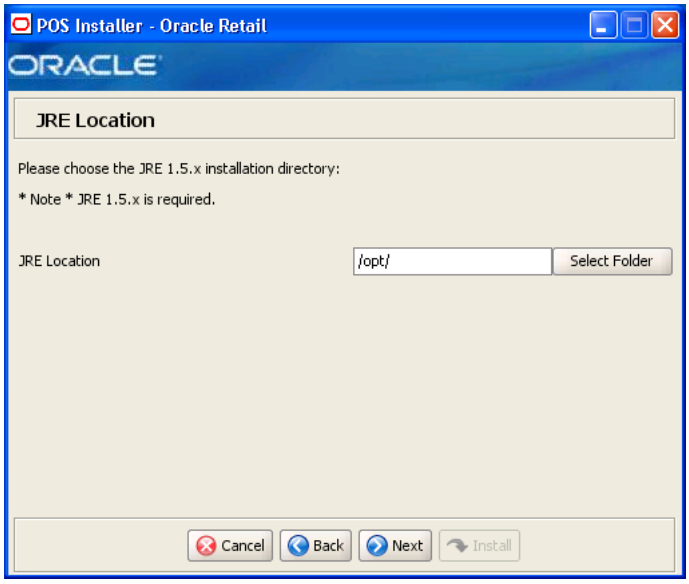
Figure D–9 Store ID



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Store ID
Field Description	Enter the store ID.
Example	04241
Notes	

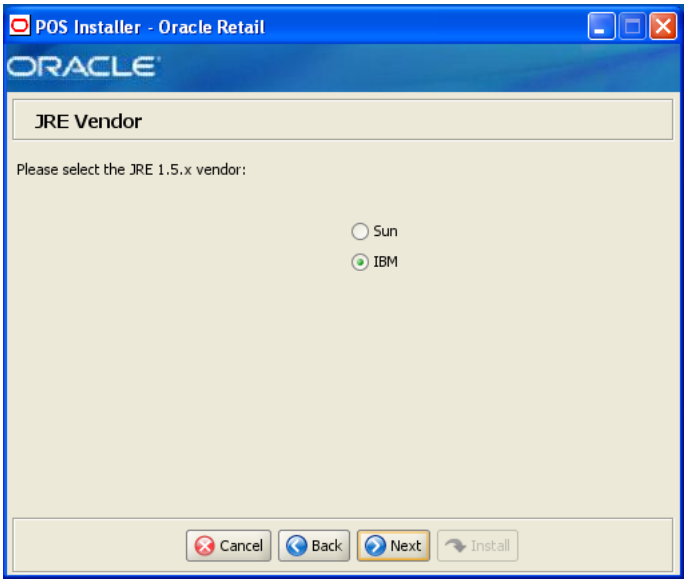
Figure D–10 JRE Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Location
Field Description	Enter the location where the JRE is installed.
Example	`/opt/Program Files/Java/jre1.5`
Notes	

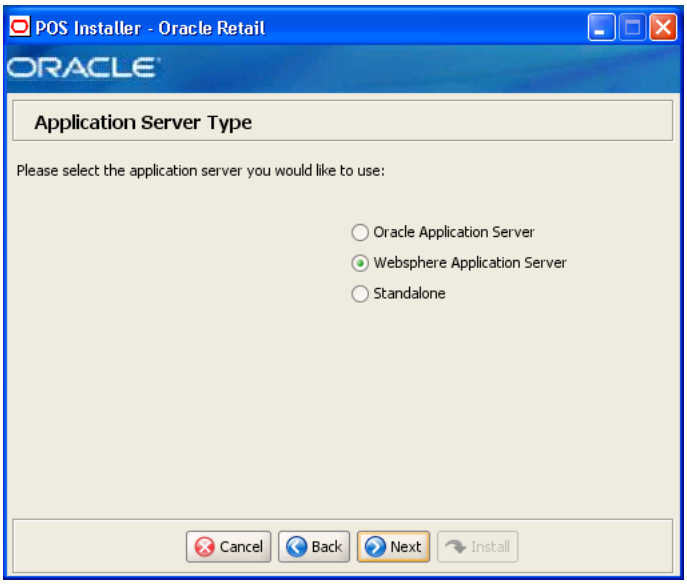
Figure D–11 JRE Vendor



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Vendor
Field Description	Select the vendor for the JRE entered on the JRE Location screen: ▪ Sun ▪ IBM Choose **IBM**.
Example	Sun
Notes	

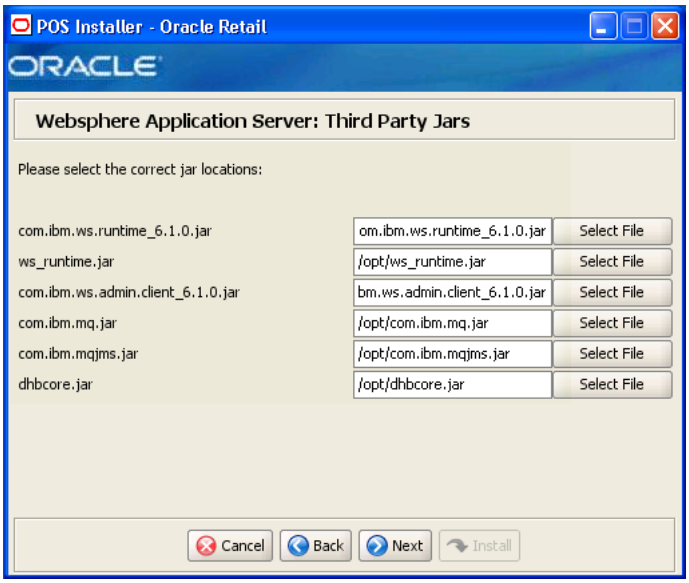
Figure D–12 Application Server Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Application Server Type
Field Description	Select the application server to be used for the store server. ▪ Oracle Application Server ▪ Websphere Application Server ▪ Standalone Choose **Websphere Application Server**. **Note:** Do not select Standalone if you are running Point-of-Service on the IBM stack.
Example	Websphere Application Server
Notes	

Figure D–13 Websphere Application Server: Third Party Jars



This screen is only displayed if **WebSphere Application Server** is selected for the Application Server Type. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	**com.ibm.ws.runtime_6.1.0.jar**
Field Description	Choose the location of the `com.ibm.ws.runtime_6.1.0.jar` file.
Example	*<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*`/WebSphere/AppServer/plugins/com.ibm.ws.runtime_6.1.0.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	**ws_runtime.jar**
Field Description	Choose the location of the `ws_runtime.jar` file.
Example	*<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*`/WebSphere/AppServer/dploytool/itp/plugins/com.ibm.websphere.v61_6.1.200/ws_runtime.jar`
Notes	

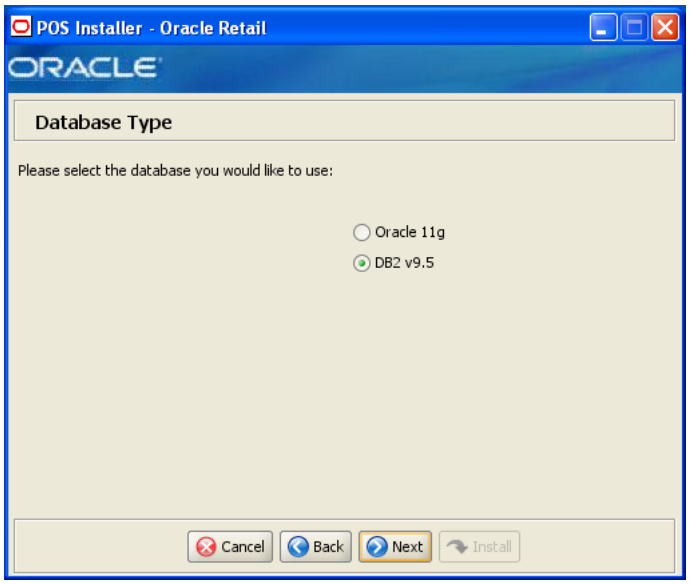
Field Title	**com.ibm.ws.admin.client_6.1.0.jar**
Field Description	Choose the location of the `com.ibm.ws.admin.client_6.1.0.jar` file.
Example	*<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*`/WebSphere/AppServer/runtime/com.ibm.ws.admin.client_6.1.0.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	com.ibm.mq.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `com.ibm.mq.jar` file.
Example	*<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*`/lib/WMQ/java/lib/com.ibm.mq.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	com.ibm.mqjms.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `com.ibm.mqjms.jar` file.
Example	*<MQ_install>*`/java/lib/com.ibm.mqjms.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	dhbcore.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `dhbcore.jar` file.
Example	*<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*`/lib/WMQ/java/lib/dhbcore.jar`
Notes	

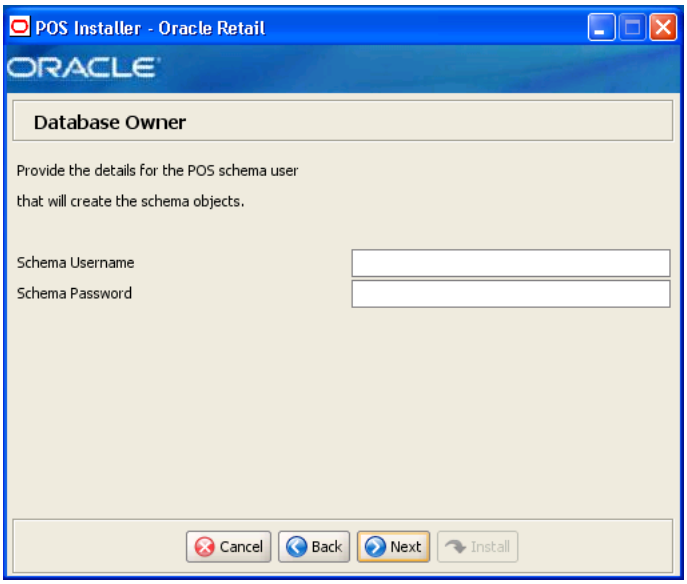
Figure D–14 Database Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Database Type
Field Description	Select the database provider that is used for the OracleRetailStore database.
Example	DB2 v9.1
Notes	

Figure D–15 Database Owner

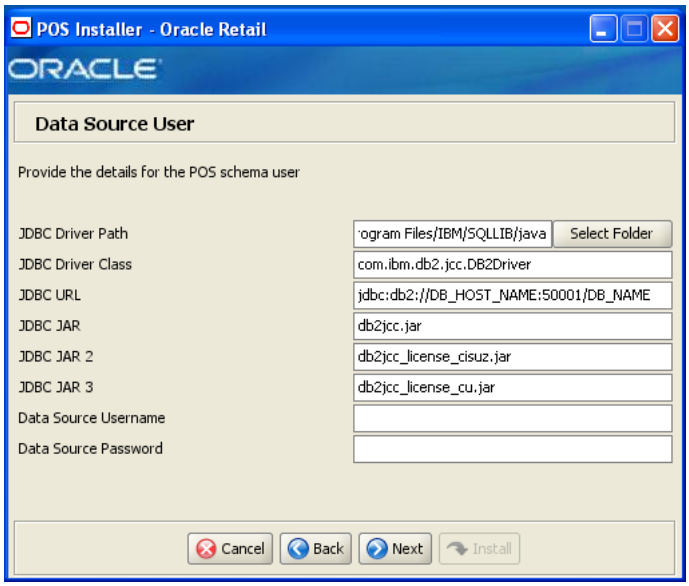


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Schema Username
Field Description	Schema user name that manages the objects in the schema. This user has Create, Drop, and Alter privileges in the schema, that is, Data Definition Language (DDL) execution privileges. For information on creating this user, see "Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users" in Chapter 4. **Note:** This user creates the database objects used by Point-of-Service.
Example	DBOWNER
Notes	

Field Title	Schema Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the databaseowner.
Notes	

Figure D–16 Database Source User for IBM DB2



The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	JDBC Driver Path
Field Description	Choose the path to the jar containing the database driver. This is the jar entered in the JDBC JAR field.
Example	`/opt/Program Files/IBM/SQLLIB/java/`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC Driver Class
Field Description	Enter the database driver class name.
Example	`com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2Driver`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC URL
Field Description	Enter the URL used by the Point-of-Service application to access the database schema. For the expected syntax, see Appendix J.
Example	`jdbc:db2://localhost:500001/quarrysb`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC JAR
Field Description	Enter the name of the jar containing the database driver.
Example	`db2jcc.jar`
Notes	

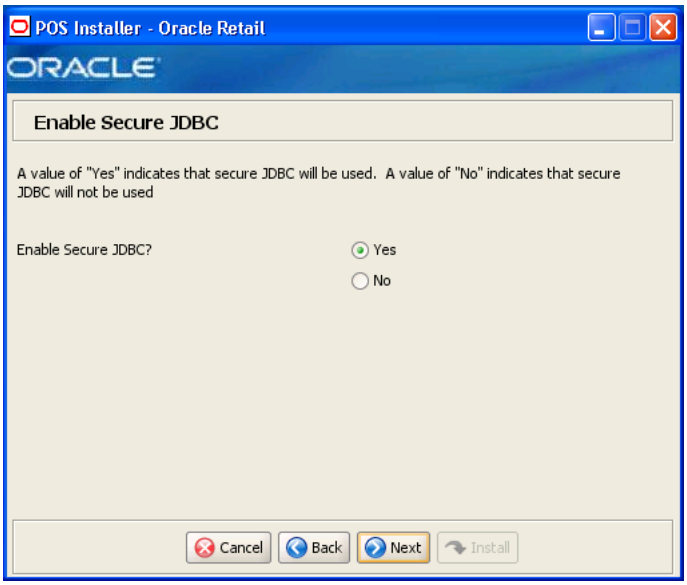
Field Title	JDBC JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of the jar containing license information.
Example	`db2jcc_license_cisuz.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of the jar containing license information.
Example	`db2jcc_license_cu.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Data Source Username
Field Description	Database user name that can access and manipulate the data in the schema. This user can have Select, Insert, Update, Delete, and Execute privileges on objects in the schema, that is, Data Manipulation Language (DML) execution privileges. For information on creating this user, see "Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users" in Chapter 4. **Note:** This schema user is used by Point-of-Service to access the database.
Example	db2admin
Notes	

Field Title	Data Source Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the data source user.
Notes	

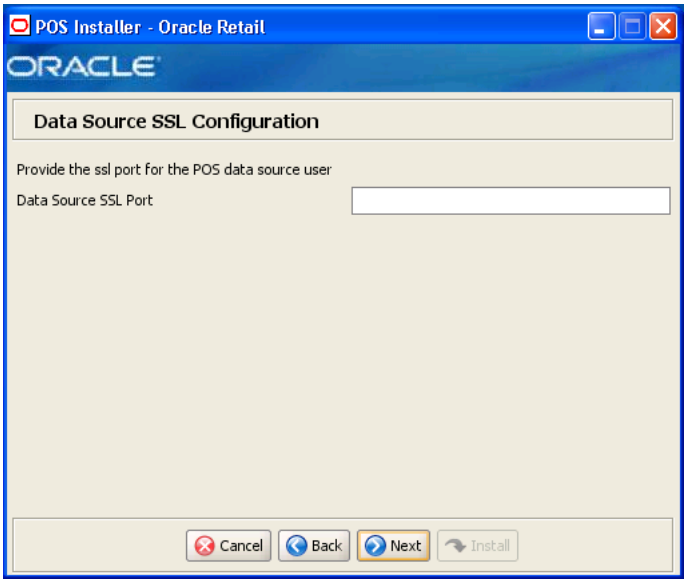
Figure D–17 Enable Secure JDBC



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable Secure JDBC?
Field Description	Select whether secure JDBC is to be used for communication with the database.
Example	Yes
Notes	

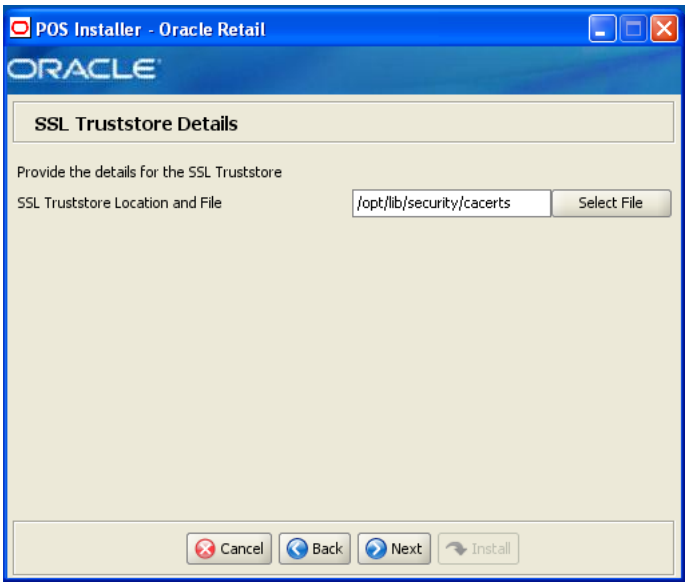
Figure D–18 Data Source SSL Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure JDBC screen. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Data Source SSL Port
Field Description	SSL port used to access the database.
Example	20397
Notes	

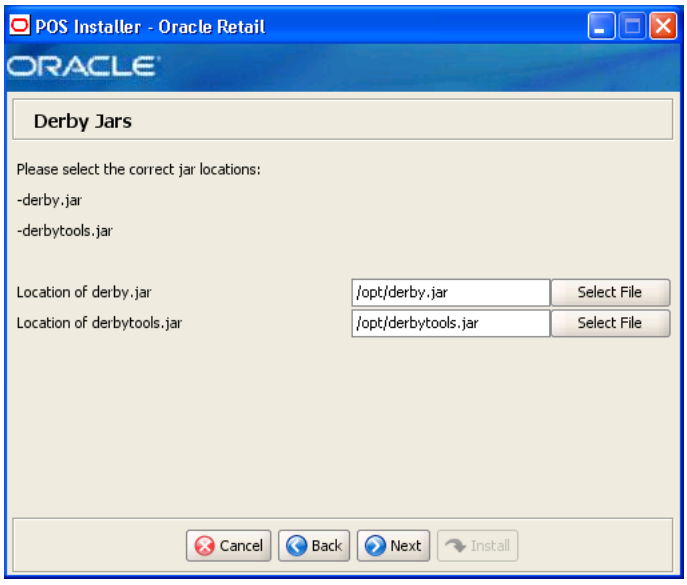
Figure D–19 SSL Truststore Details



This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure JDBC screen. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	SSL Truststore Location
Field Description	Choose the name of the SSL truststore file and the path to it. Any secure folder that Point-of-Service can access can be used.
Example	`/opt/lib/security/cacerts`
Notes	

Figure D–20 Derby Jars

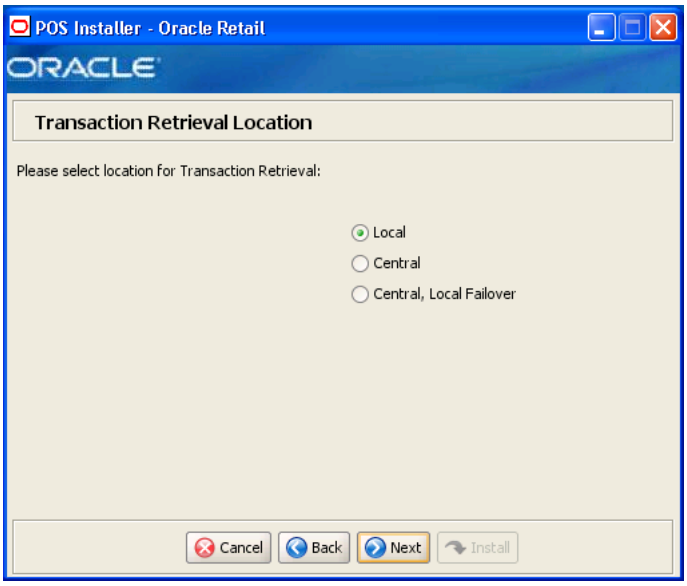


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Location of derby.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derby.jar` file.
Example	`/opt/thirdparty/apache-derby-10.2.2/lib/derby.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Location of derbytools.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derbytools.jar` file.
Example	`/opt/thirdparty/apache-derby-10.2.2/lib/derbytools.jar`
Notes	

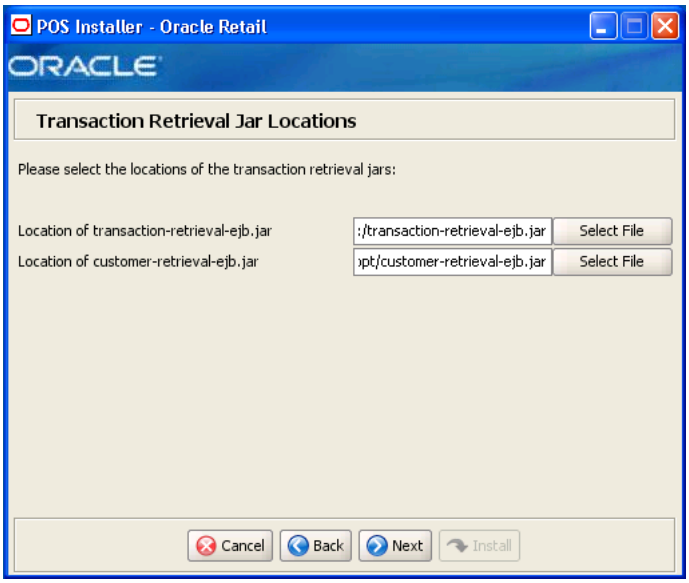
Figure D–21 Transaction Retrieval Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Transaction retrieval location
Field Description	Choose the location for retrieving transactions. ▪ If transactions should only be retrieved from the store database, choose **Local**. ▪ If transactions should only be retrieved from the corporate database, choose **Central**. ▪ If transactions should be retrieved from the corporate database, and if not found, then retrieved from the store database, choose **Central, Local Failover**. **Note:** You must choose the same location for both the store server and client installations.
Example	Local
Notes	

Figure D–22 Transaction Retrieval Jar Locations



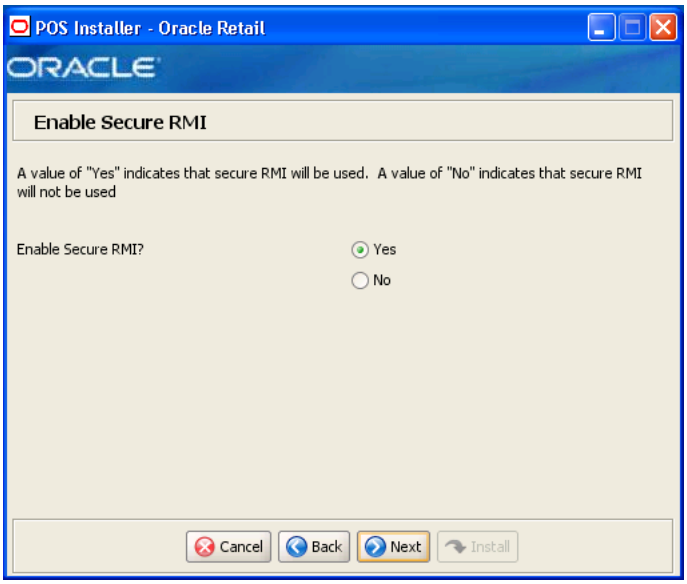
This screen is only displayed if **Central** or **Local, Central Failover** is selected for the Transaction Retrieval Location. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

> **Note:** These jar files are created during the deployment of Oracle Retail Central Office on WebSphere. These files must be available for the Point-of-Service installation. For additional information, see "Store Server Configuration" in Appendix M.

Field Title	transaction-retrieval-ejb.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `transaction-retrieval-ejb.jar` file.
Example	`/opt/tmp/orpos-1301/transaction-retrieval-ejb.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	customer-retrieval-ejb.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `customer-retrieval-ejb.jar` file.
Example	`/opt/tmp/orpos-1301/customer-retrieval-ejb.jar`
Notes	

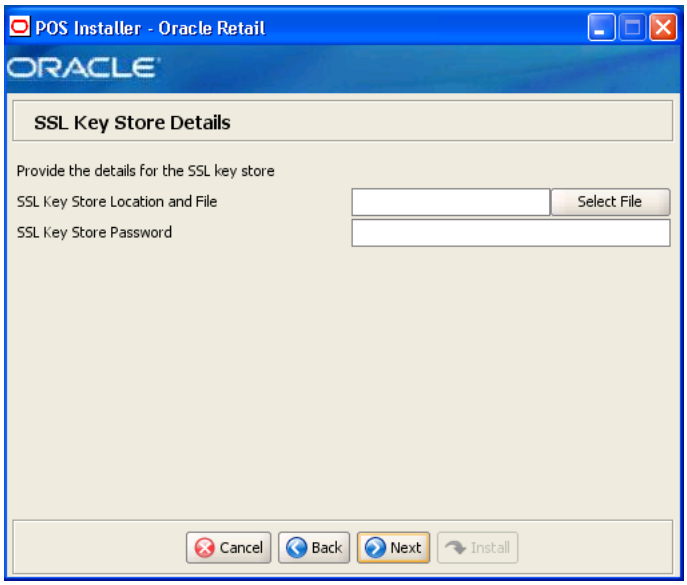
Figure D–23 Enable Secure RMI



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable SecureRMI?
Field Description	Select whether secure RMI is to be used for communication between the store server and registers.
Example	Yes
Notes	

Figure D–24 SSL Key Store Details

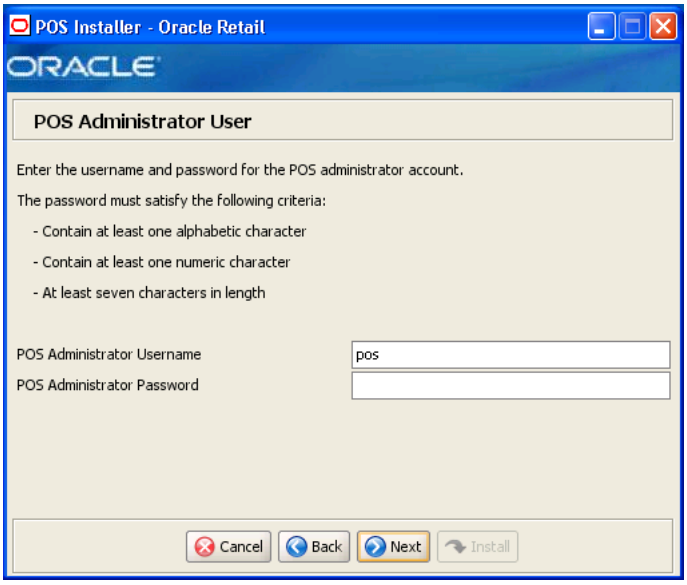


This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure RMI screen. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	SSL Key Store Location
Field Description	Choose the name of the SSL Key Store file and the path to it. Any secure folder that Point-of-Service can access can be used.
Example	`OracleRetailStore/Server/Certificate`
Notes	

Field Title	SSL Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the Key Store.
Notes	

Figure D–25 POS Administrator User

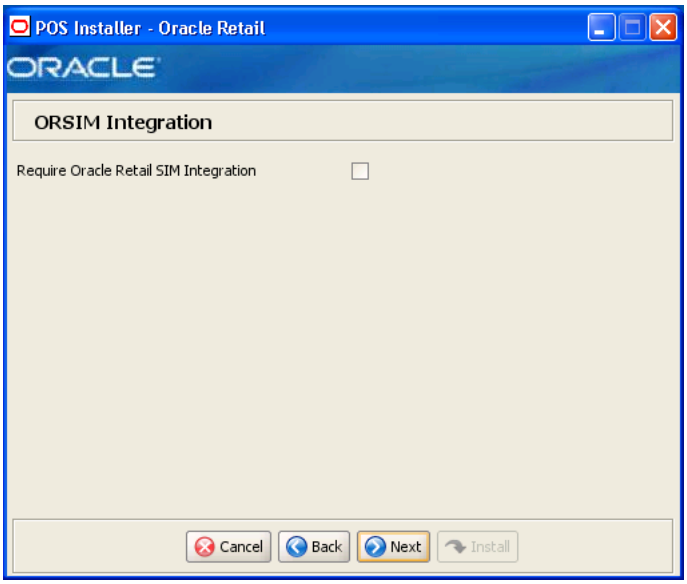


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	POS Administrator Username
Field Description	Enter the user name used for performing Point-of-Service administrative functions.
Example	pos
Notes	

Field Title	POS Administrator Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the administrator user.
Notes	

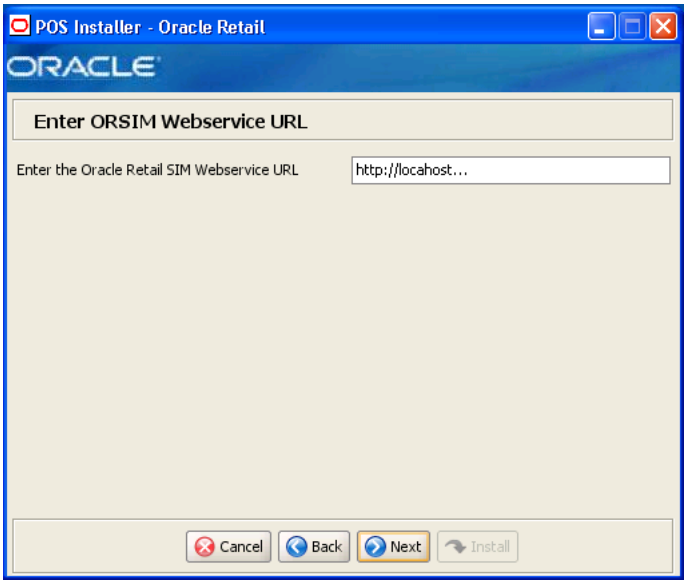
Figure D–26 ORSIM Integration



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Require Oracle Retail SIM Integration
Field Description	Check the box if integration with Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management is required. This box must be checked if the Item Inquiry feature of Point-of-Service is to be used.
Notes	

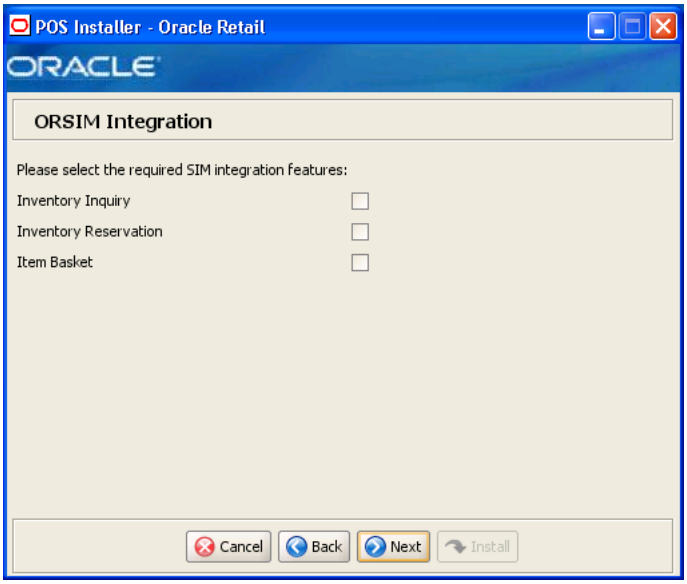
Figure D–27 Enter ORSIM Webservice URL



This screen is only displayed if **Require Oracle SIM Integration** is selected. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enter the Oracle Retail Webservice URL
Field Description	Enter the URL used by the Point-of-Service application to access Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM).
Notes	

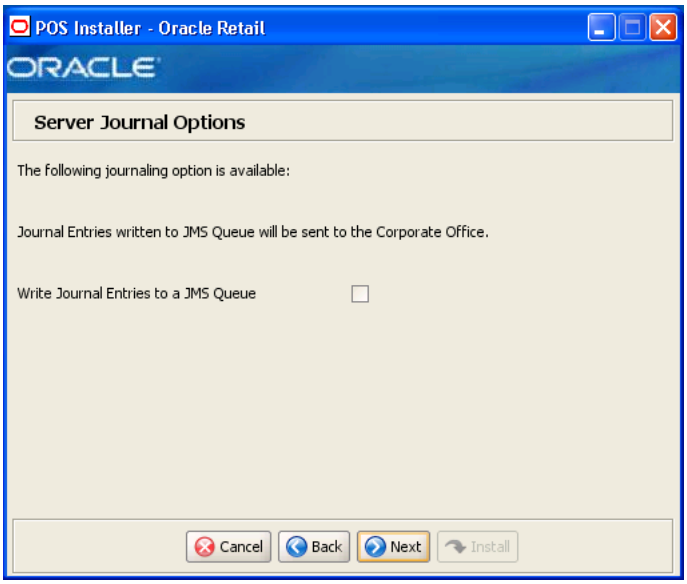
Figure D–28 ORSIM Integration



This screen is only displayed if **Require Oracle SIM Integration** is selected. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select the required SIM integration features
Field Description	Select the Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM) features that will be used in Point-of-Service: ▪ To inquire about inventory using SIM, select **Inventory Inquiry**. ▪ To reserve inventory using SIM, select **Inventory Reservation**. ▪ To enable item baskets created using SIM, select **Item Basket**.
Example	Inventory Inquiry
Notes	

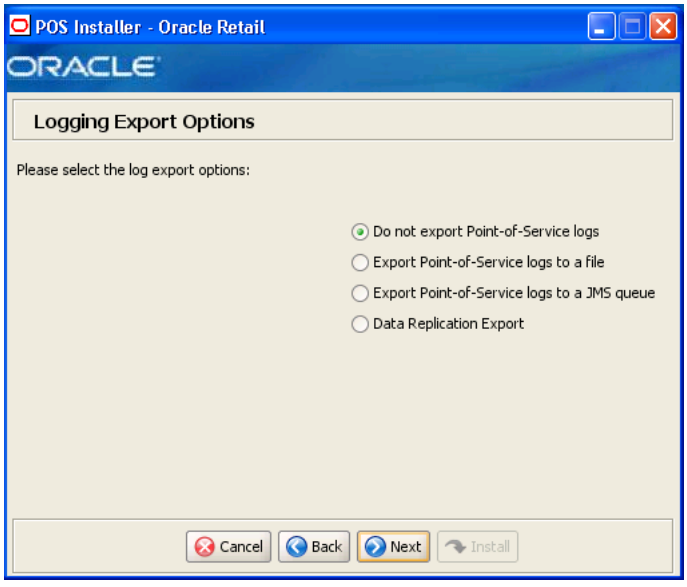
Figure D–29 Server Journal Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Server Journal Options
Field Description	If you want the journal entries sent to a the JMS queue, choose **Write Journal Entries to a JMS Queue**.
Example	Write Journal Entries to a JMS Queue
Notes	

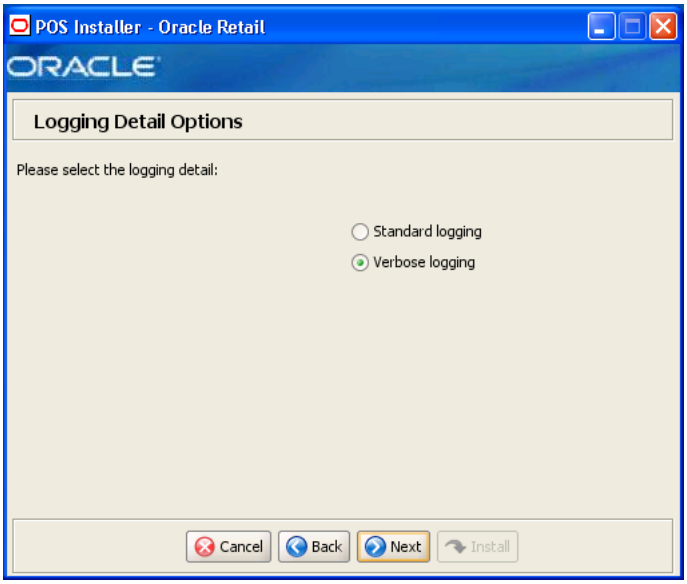
Figure D–30 Logging Export Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Logging Export Options
Field Description	Choose how the log is to be exported. ▪ To not generate any logs, choose **Do not export Point-of-Service logs**. ▪ To export the logs to a file, choose **Periodically export Point-of-Service logs to a file**. ▪ To export the logs to a JMS queue, choose **Periodically export Point-of-Service logs to a JMS queue**. ▪ To have the data pushed from the store to the corporate database using replication, choose **Data Replication Export**. **Note:** If you are using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, you must select **Data Replication Export**.
Example	Do not export Point-of-Service logs
Notes	

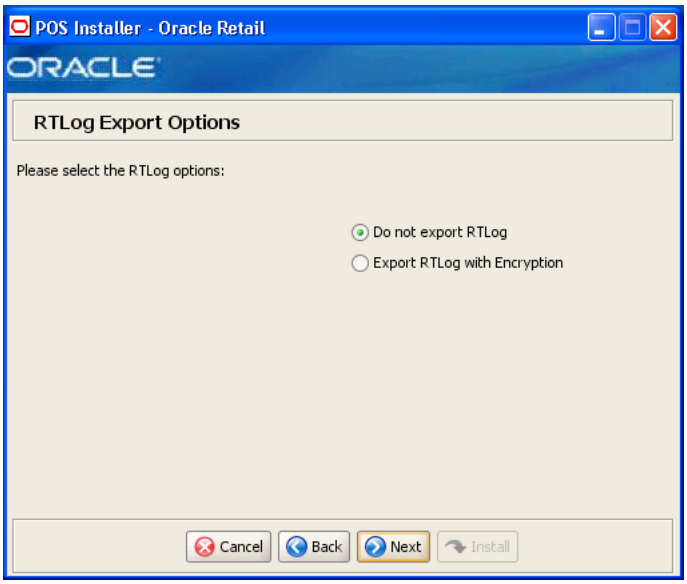
Figure D–31 Logging Detail Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Logging Detail Options
Field Description	Choose the level of client logging. ▪ To only log some of the messages, choose **Standard Logging**. ▪ To log all of the messages, choose **Verbose Logging**.
Example	Verbose logging
Notes	

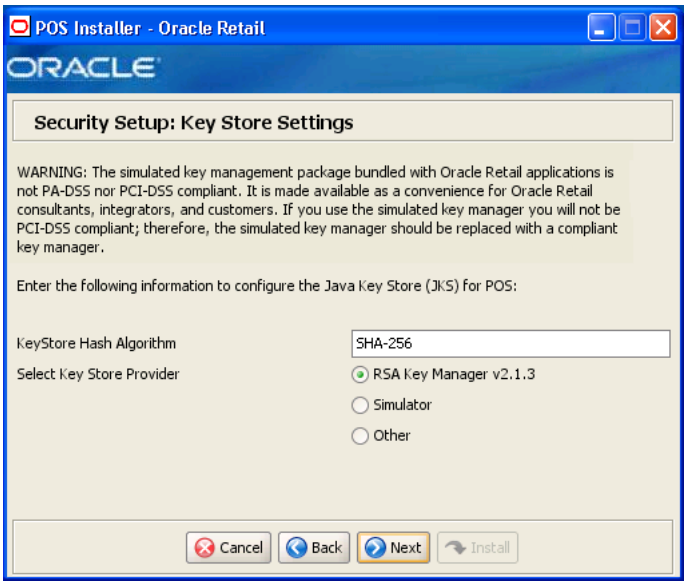
Figure D–32 RTLog Export Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	RTLog Export Options
Field Description	Choose how the RTLog is to be exported. ▪ To not export the log, choose **Do not export RTLog**. ▪ To export the log, choose **Export RTLog with Encryption**.
Example	Do not export RTLog
Notes	

Figure D–33 Security Setup: Key Store Settings

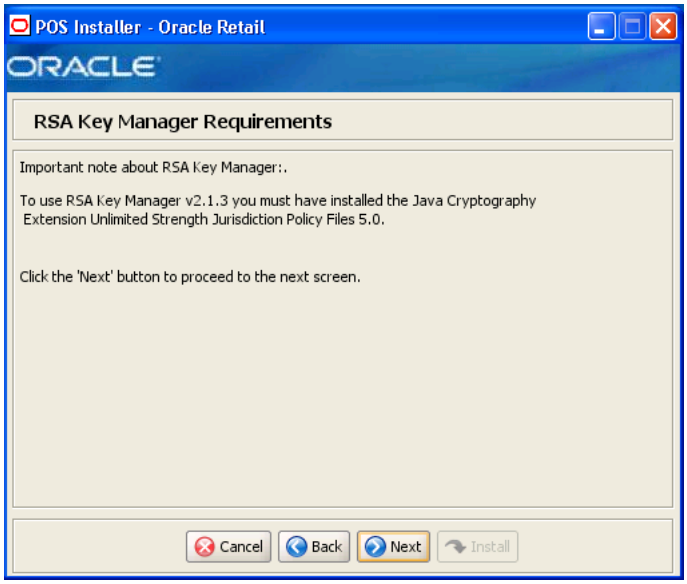


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Hash Algorithm
Field Description	Enter the name of the algorithm used by the Key Store to hash sensitive data.
Example	SHA-256
Notes	

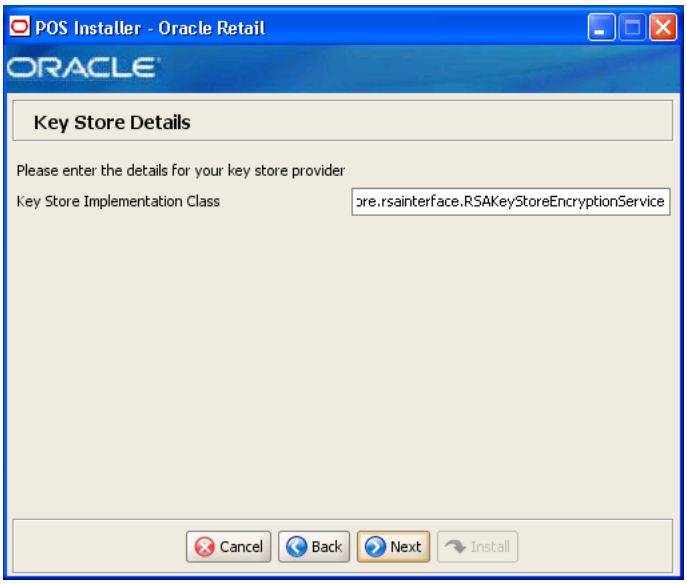
Field Title	Select Key Store Provider
Field Description	Provider for Key Store management. ▪ To use the RSA key management package, select **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3**. The next screen displayed is Figure D–34. ▪ To use the simulated key management package, select **Simulator**. The next screen displayed is Figure D–38. ▪ To use a different key management provider, select **Other**. The next screen displayed is Figure D–40.
Example	RSA Key Manager v2.1.3
Notes	

Figure D–34 RSA Key Manager Requirements



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen. This informational screen explains the requirements to use the RSA Key Manager. Verify that you meet the requirements and then click **Next**.

Figure D–35 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3

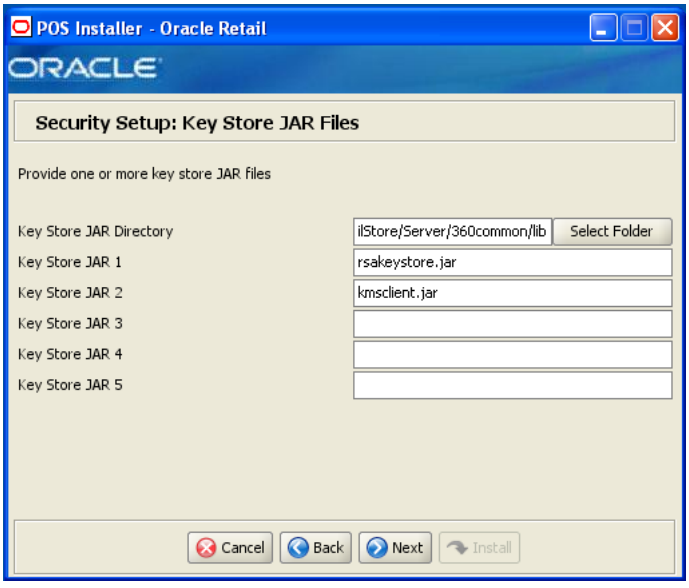


This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the RSA Key Manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.rsakeystore.rsainterface.RSAKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure D–36 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Example	`/opt/OracleRetailStore/Server/360common/lib`
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	rsakeystore.jar
Notes	

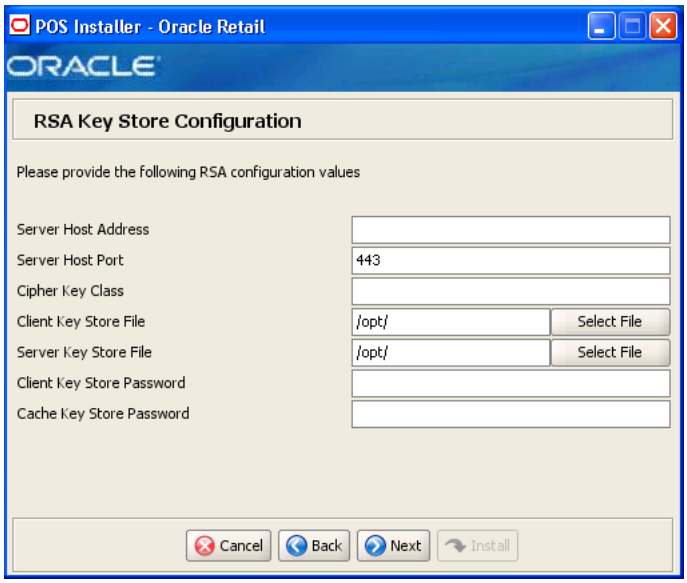
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	kmsclient.jar
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure D–37 RSA Key Store Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Server Host Address
Field Description	Enter the IP address of the RSA server host.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Host Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the RSA server host.
Example	443 443 is the default used by the RSA Key Manager.
Notes	

Field Title	Cipher Key Class
Field Description	Enter the RSA Key Manager cipher key class.
Notes	

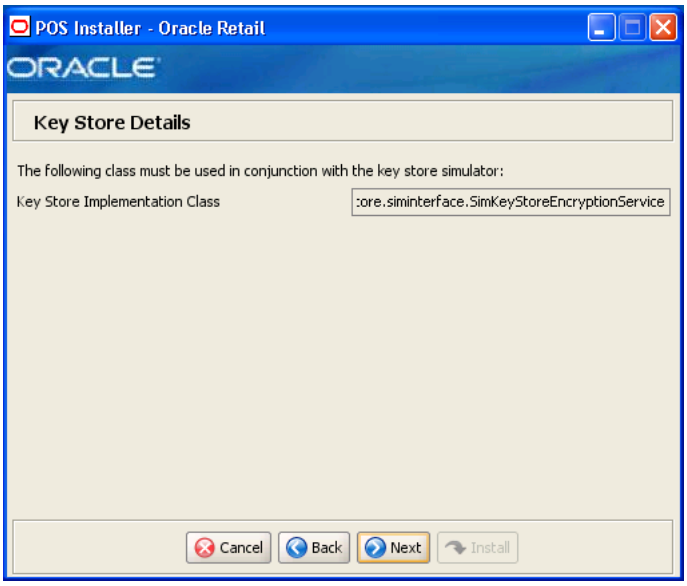
Field Title	Client Keystore File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager client Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Keystore File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager server Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Client Keystore Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager client Key Store.
Notes	

Field Title	Cache Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager cache.
Notes	

Figure D–38 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager

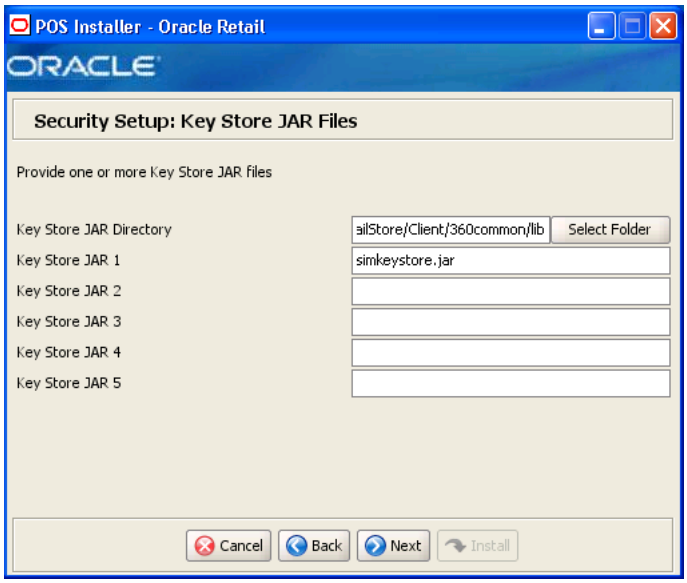


This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the simulated key manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.simkeystore.siminterface.SimKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure D–39 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located. **Note:** If you are using the simulated key management package bundled with Point-of-Service, enter the directory where you saved the `simkeystore.jar` file.
Example	`/opt/OracleRetailStore/Server/360common/lib`
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	simkeystore.jar
Notes	

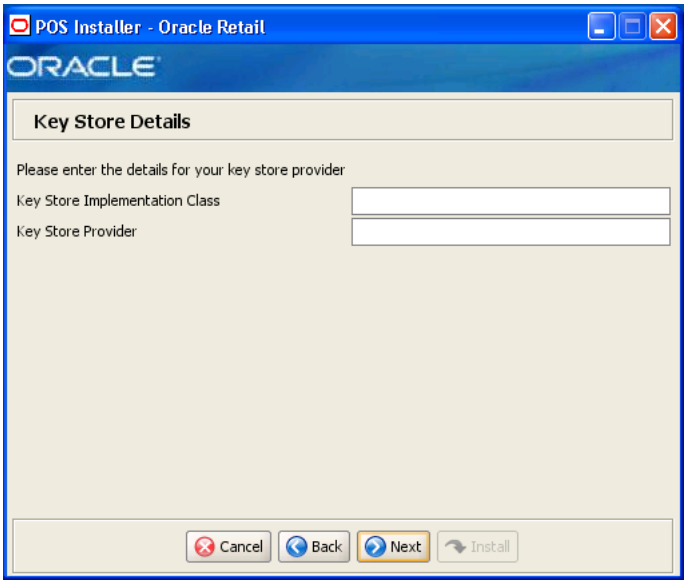
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure D–40 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager



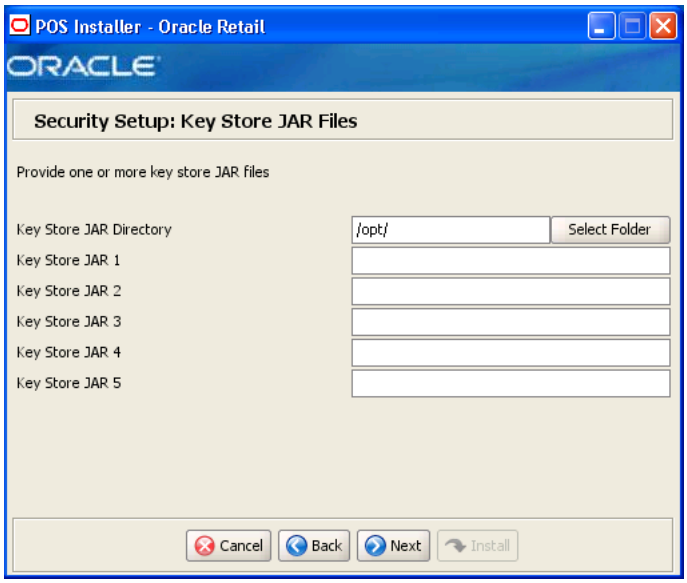
This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the key manager interface.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store Provider
Field Description	Enter the name of the provider for the Key Store.
Notes	

Figure D–41 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: KeyStore screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

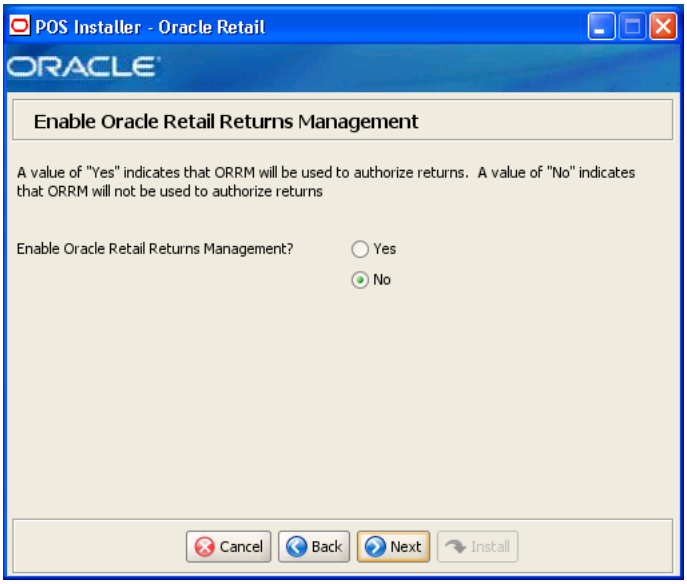
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

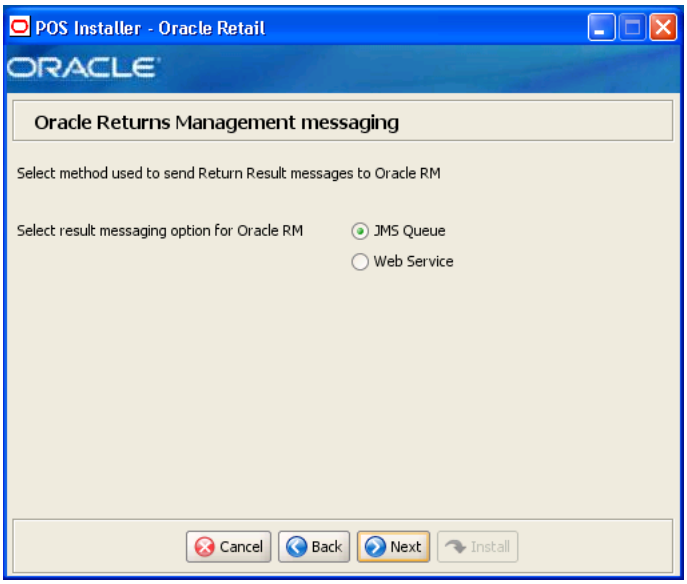
Figure D–42 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose whether Oracle Retail Returns Management is used to authorize returns.
Example	No If No is selected, the next screen displayed is Figure D–47.
Notes	

Figure D–43 Oracle Returns Management Messaging

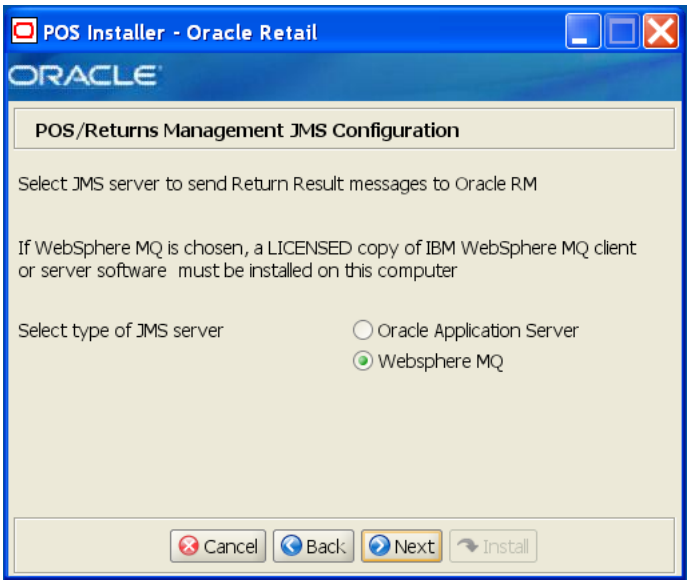


This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select result messaging option for Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose the method to use to send return result messages to Oracle Retail Returns Management. ▪ If you want messages sent to a JMS queue, choose **JMS Queue**. The next screen displayed is Figure D–44. ▪ If you want to use a web service to send the messages, choose **Web Service**. The next screen displayed is Figure D–46.
Example	JMS Queue
Notes	

Figure D–44 POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration

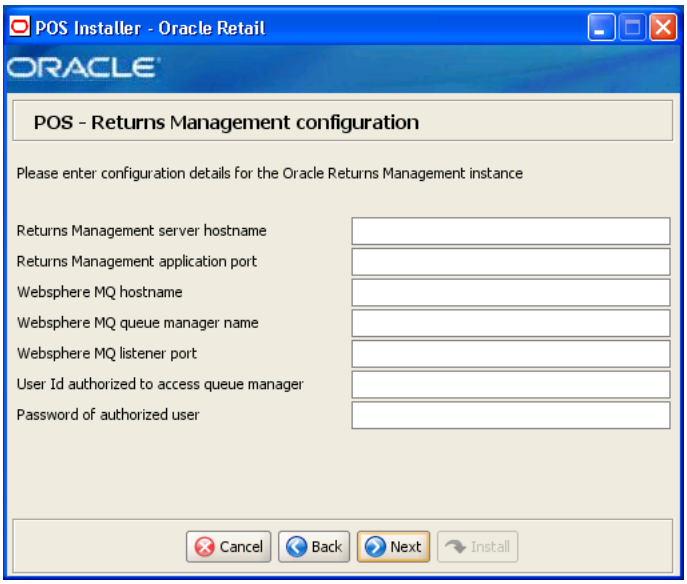


This screen is only displayed if **JMS Queue** is selected on the Oracle Returns Management Messaging screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select result messaging option for Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose the type of JMS server to use to send return result messages to Oracle Retail Returns Management. Choose **Websphere MQ**. **Note:** A licensed copy of IBM WebSphere MQ client or server software must be installed.
Example	Websphere MQ
Notes	

Figure D–45 POS - Returns Management Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **Websphere MQ** is selected on the POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Returns Management Server Hostname
Field Description	Enter the name for the Oracle Retail Returns Management server.
Notes	

Field Title	Returns Management Application Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Retail Returns Management application.
Notes	

Field Title	Websphere MQ Hostname
Field Description	Enter the name for the IBM WebSphere MQ host.
Notes	

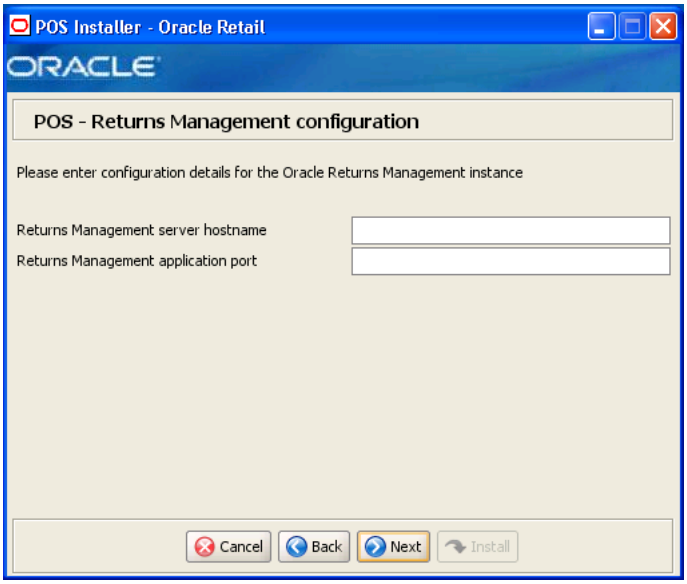
Field Title	Websphere MQ Queue Manager Name
Field Description	Enter the name of the IBM WebSphere MQ queue manager.
Notes	

Field Title	Websphere MQ Listener Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the IBM WebSphere MQ listener.
Notes	

Field Title	User ID Authorized to Aceess Queue Manager
Field Description	Enter the user ID used to access the IBM WebSphere MQ manager.
Notes	

Field Title	Password of Authorized User
Field Description	Enter the password for the authorized user ID.
Notes	

Figure D–46 POS - Returns Management Configuration for Web Service Used for Messaging



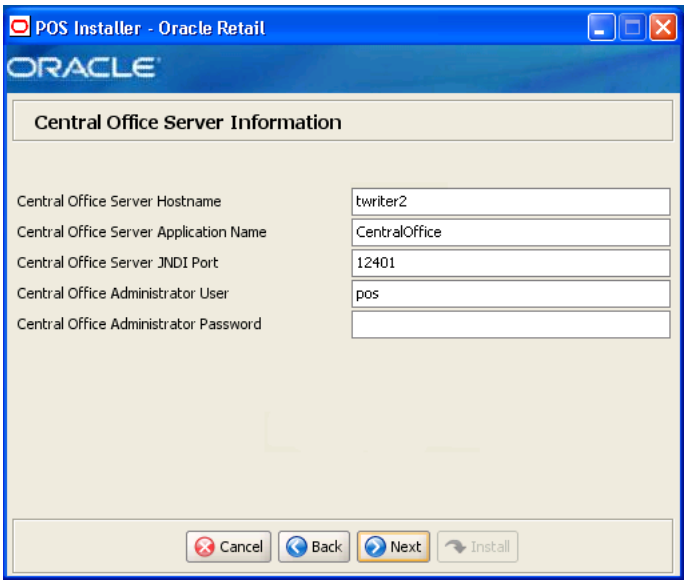
This screen is only displayed if **Web Service** is selected on the Oracle Returns Management Messaging screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Returns Management Server Hostname
Field Description	Enter the name for the Oracle Retail Returns Management server.
Notes	

Field Title	Returns Management Application Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Retail Returns Management application.
Notes	

Figure D–47 Central Office Server Information



To find the JNDI port number, the information is available in :

<WebSphere Application Server install>/profiles/*<profile name>*/logs/About this profile.txt. BOOTSTRAP_ADDRESS is the port number.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Central Office Server Hostname
Field Description	Enter the host name for the Central Office application.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

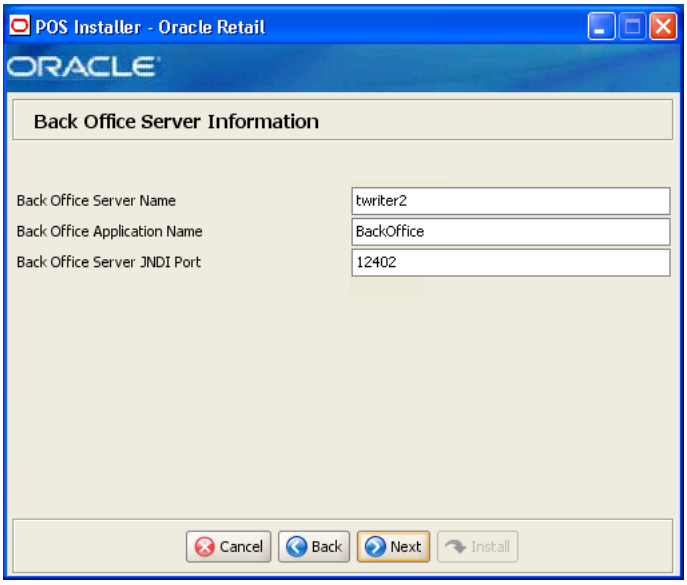
Field Title	Central Office Server Application Name
Field Description	Enter the name for the Central Office application.
Example	CentralOffice
Notes	

Field Title	Central Office Server JNDI Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Central Office application.
Example	12401
Notes	

Field Title	Central Office Administrator User
Field Description	Enter the user name used for performing Central Office administrative functions.
Example	coadmin
Notes	

Field Title	Central Office Administrator Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the Central Office administrator user.
Notes	

Figure D–48 Back Office Server Information



To find the JNDI port number, the information is available in :

<WebSphere Application Server install>/profiles/*<profile name>*/logs/About this profile.txt. BOOTSTRAP_ADDRESS is the port number.

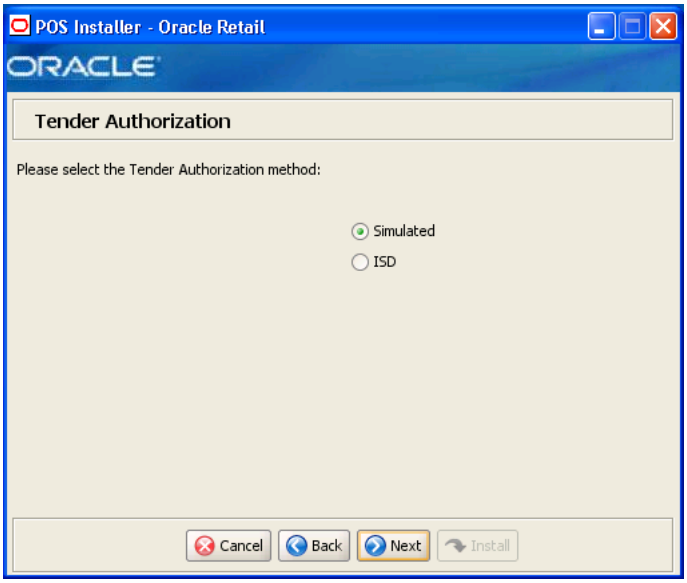
The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Back Office Server Name
Field Description	Enter the host name for the Back Office application.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

Field Title	Back Office Application Name
Field Description	Enter the name for the Back Office application.
Example	BackOffice
Notes	

Field Title	Back Office Server JNDI Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Back Office application.
Example	12402
Notes	

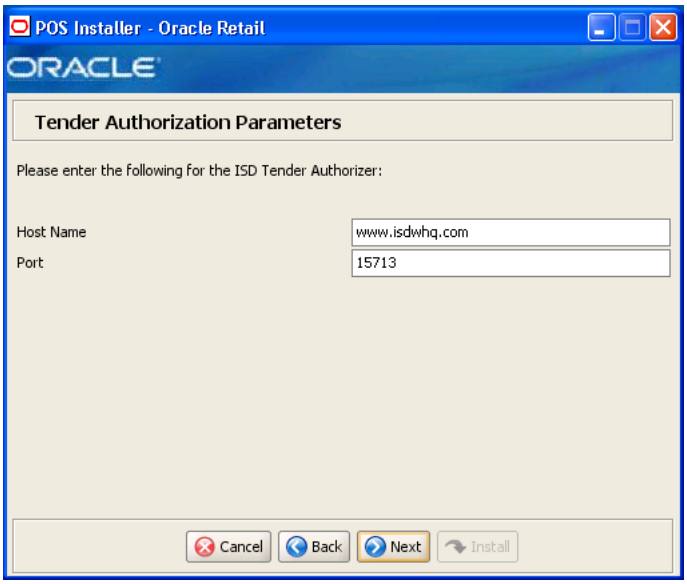
Figure D–49 Tender Authorization



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select Tender Authorizer
Field Description	Choose where tender authorizations are sent. ▪ If approvals do not leave the store server and are based on values and certain numbers, choose **Simulated**. ▪ If approvals are sent to a third party system to approve the authorizations, choose **ISD**. **Note:** Demo installations should use the Simulated option.
Example	Simulated
Notes	

Figure D–50 Tender Authorization Parameters

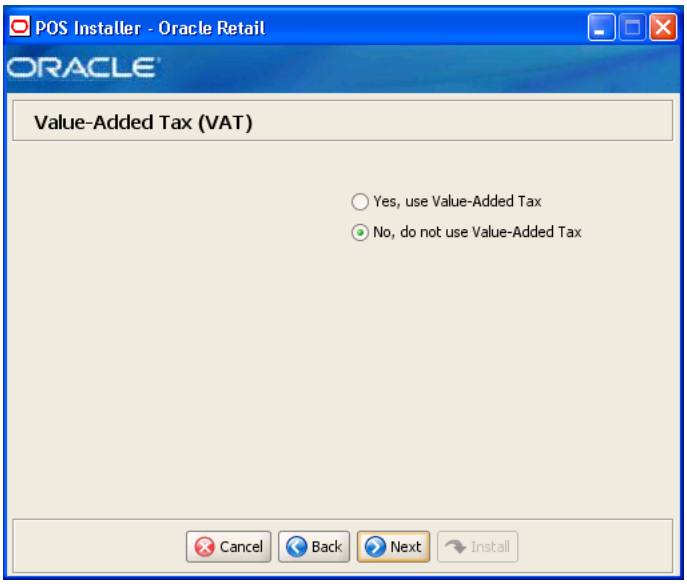


This screen is only displayed if **ISD** is selected for the Tender Authorization. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	**Host Name**
Field Description	Enter the host name of the tender authorizer.
Example	www.isdwhq.com
Notes	

Field Title	**Host Port**
Field Description	Enter the port number used for the communication between the store server and the tender authorizer.
Example	15713
Notes	

Figure D–51 Value-Added Tax (VAT)



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Value-Added Tax
Field Description	Choose whether Value-Added Tax is used.
Example	No, do not use Value-Added Tax
Notes	

Figure D–52 Installation Progress

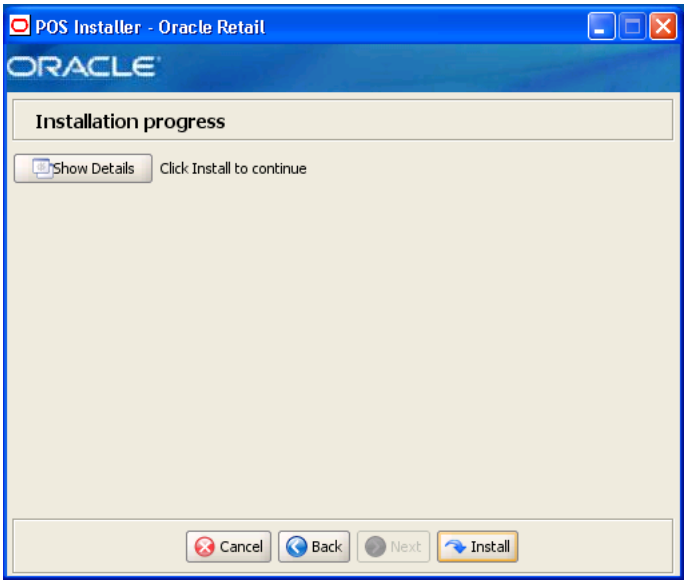
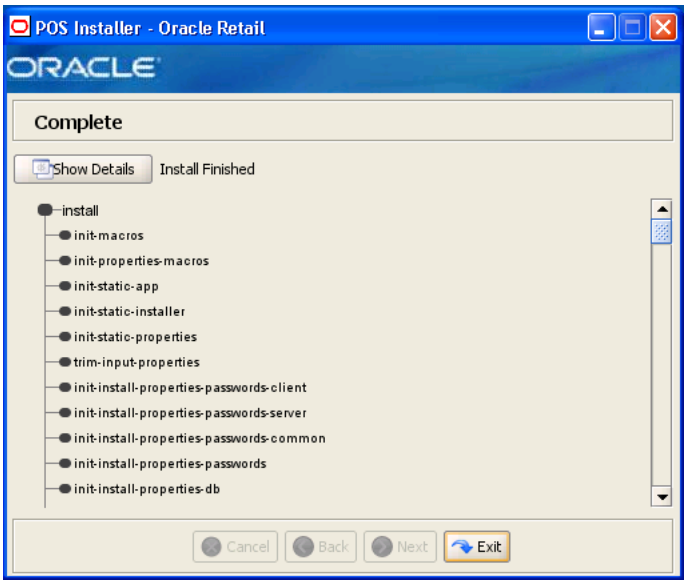


Figure D–53 Install Complete



E

Appendix: Installer Screens for Client Installation on the IBM Stack

You need the following details about your environment for the installer to successfully install the Point-of-Service application. This appendix shows the screens that are displayed during the installation of the Point-of-Service client on the IBM stack. Depending on the options you select, you may not see some screens or fields.

> **Note:** The flow of the screens and selections on the screens shown in this appendix follow the installation of the server using the supported software and hardware selections for the IBM stack as shown in Chapter 1.

For each field on a screen, a table is included in this appendix that describes the field. If you want to document any specific information about your environment for any field, a Notes row is provided in each table for saving that information.

For the installer screens for a server installation on the IBM stack, see Appendix D.

Figure E–1 Introduction

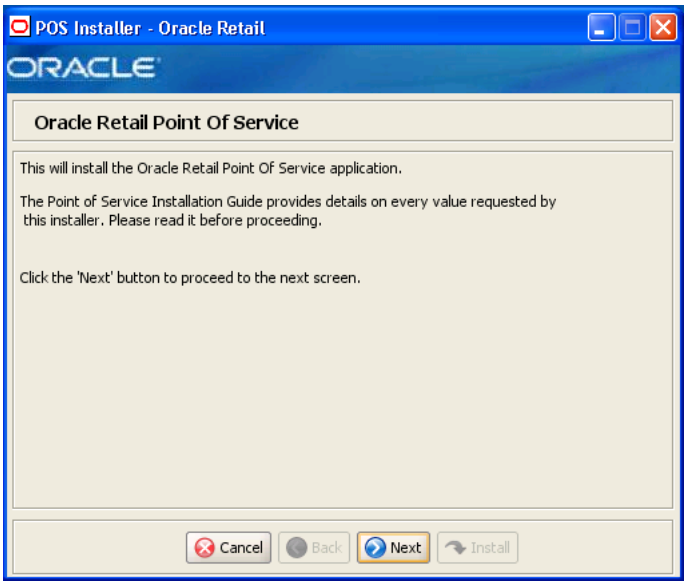


Figure E–2 Previous POS Install

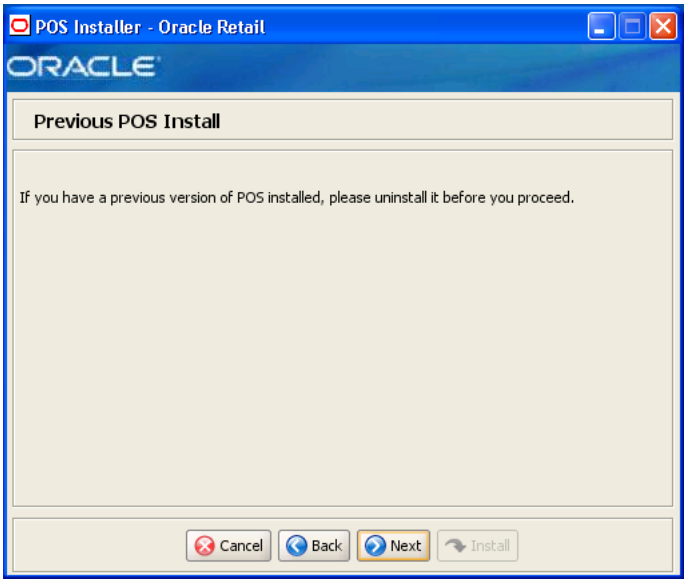
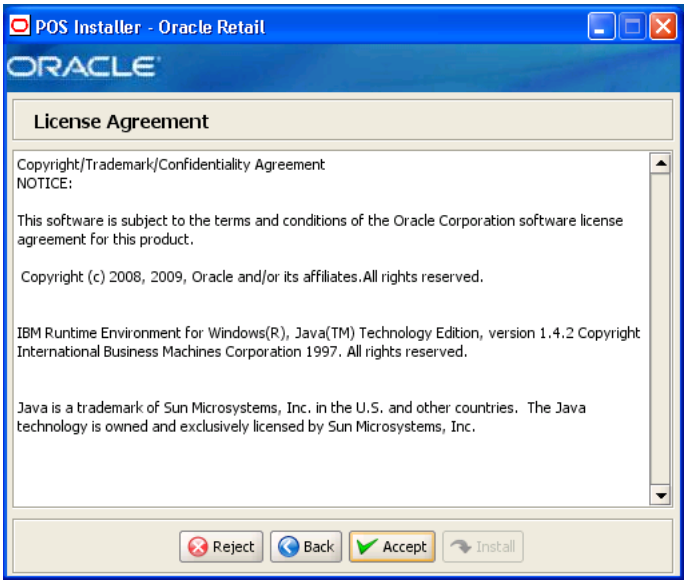
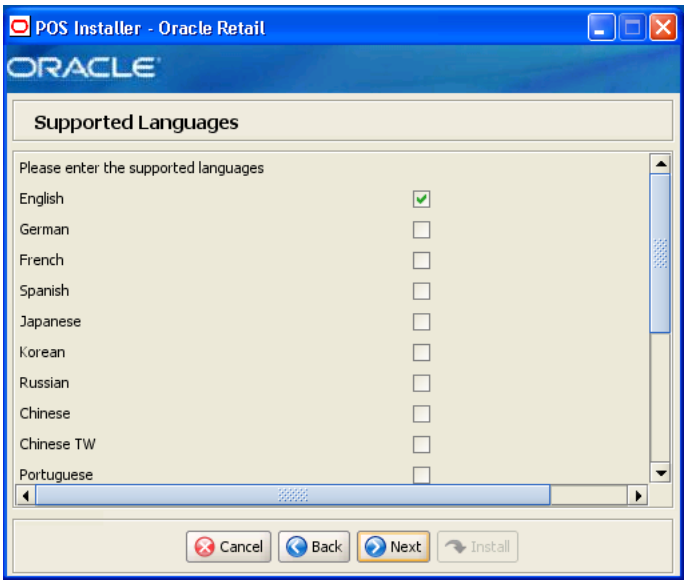


Figure E–3 License Agreement



Note: You must choose to accept the terms of the license agreement in order for the installation to continue.

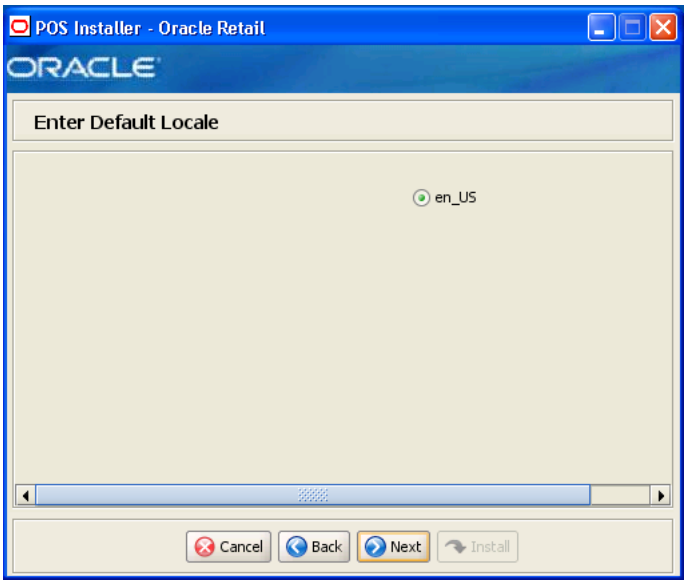
Figure E–4 Supported Languages



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Please enter the supported languages
Field Description	Select the languages that will be available for the Point-of-Service application. The languages selected on this screen determine the available choices on the Enter Default Locale screen.
Example	English
Notes	

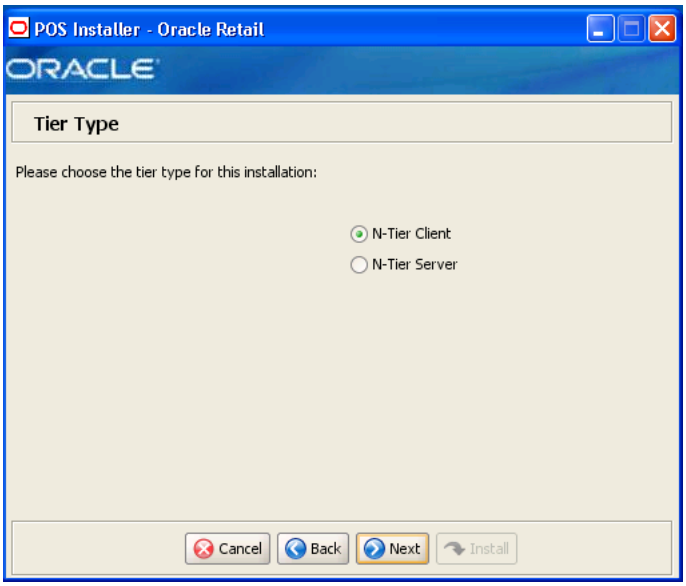
Figure E–5 Enter Default Locale



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enter Default Locale
Field Description	Locale support in Point-of-Service enables the date, time, currency, calendar, address, and phone number to be displayed in the format for the selected default locale. The choices for default locale are dependent on the selections made on the Supported Languages screen. For each selected language, the default locale for that language is displayed on the Enter Default Locale screen. For example, if English and French are selected on the Supported Languages screen, en_US and fr_FR are the available choices for the default locale.
Example	en_US
Notes	

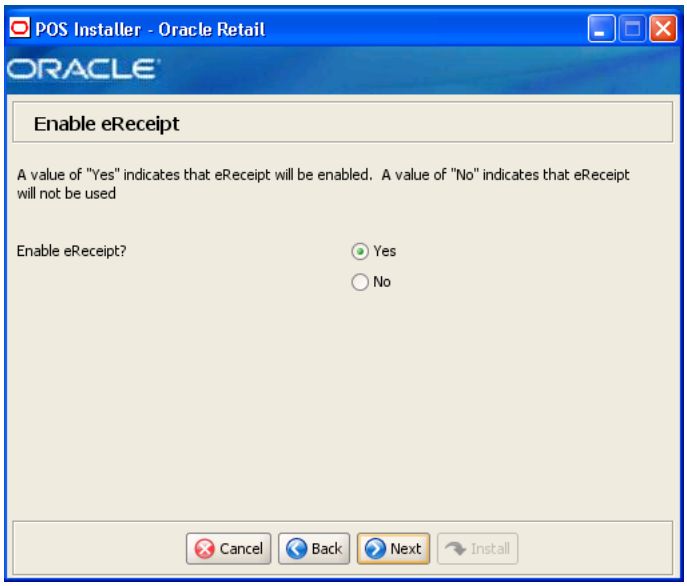
Figure E–6 Tier Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Tier Type
Field Description	Choose the server tier type for this installation. For more information, see "Determining Tier Type" in Chapter 4. To install the N-Tier version of the client, choose **N-Tier Client**.
Example	N-Tier Client
Notes	

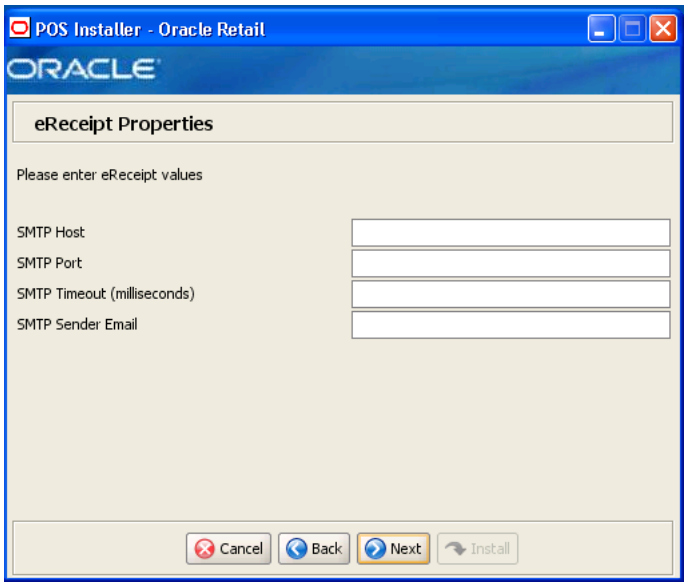
Figure E–7 Enable eReceipt



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable eReceipt?
Field Description	Choose whether the use of eReceipts is enabled.
Example	Yes
Notes	

Figure E–8 eReceipt Properties



This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable eReceipt screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

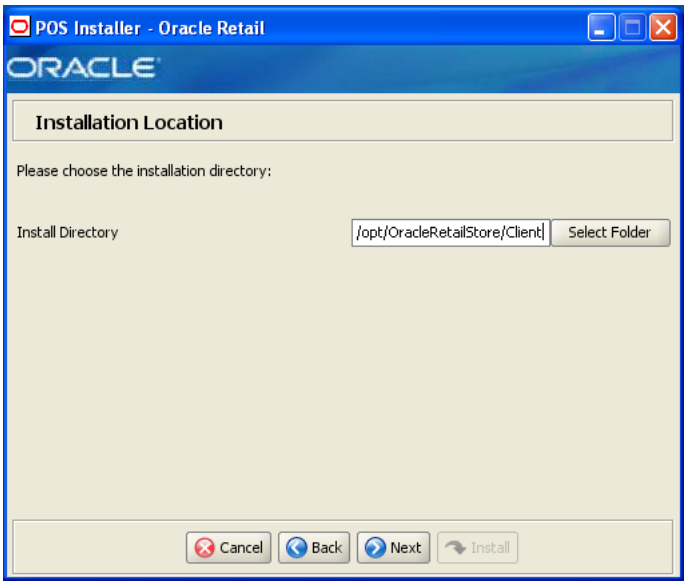
Field Title	SMTP Host
Field Description	Enter the host name for the SMTP server.
Notes	

Field Title	SMTP Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the SMTP server.
Notes	

Field Title	SMTP Timeout (milliseconds)
Field Description	Enter the amount of time to wait for the SMTP server.
Notes	

Field Title	SMTP Sender Email
Field Description	Enter the e-mail address to use for the from address in e-mails generated by Point-of-Service.
Notes	

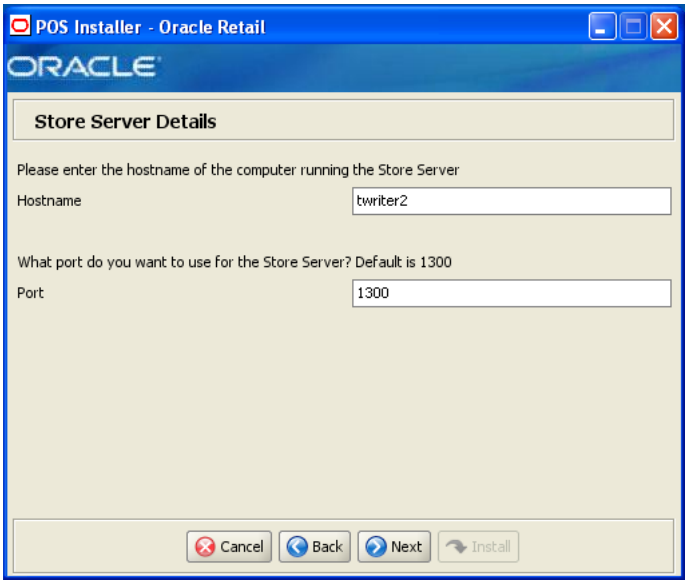
Figure E–9 Installation Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Install Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory into which the Point-of-Service files are copied. The default for the first directory in the path is `OracleRetailStore`. This directory should be the same for all Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions products. When **N-Tier Client** is selected for the Tier Type, the default installation directory is `OracleRetailStore/Client`. **Note:** The server and the client must not be installed into the same directory. In this guide, *<POS_install_directory>* refers to the selected installation directory for the server or client. Files specific to Point-of-Service are copied to the `/pos` subdirectory of `<POS_install_directory>`.
Example	`/opt/OracleRetailStore/Client`
Notes	

Figure E–10 Store Server Details

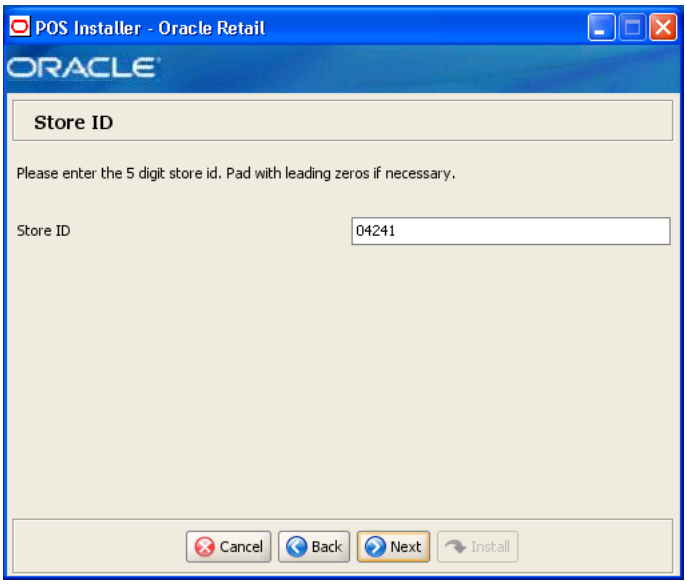


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Hostname
Field Description	Enter the host name of the store server.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

Field Title	Port
Field Description	Enter the port number of the store server used for the communication between the store server and the host computer.
Example	1300
Notes	

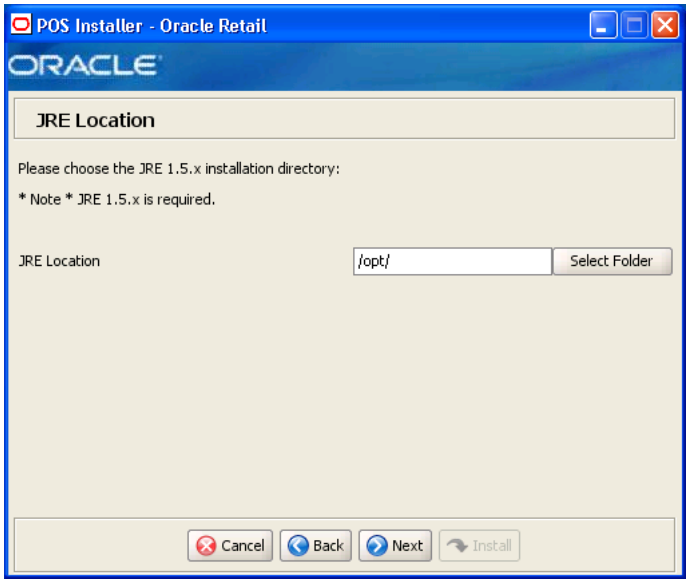
Figure E–11 Store ID



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Store ID
Field Description	Enter the store ID.
Example	04241
Notes	

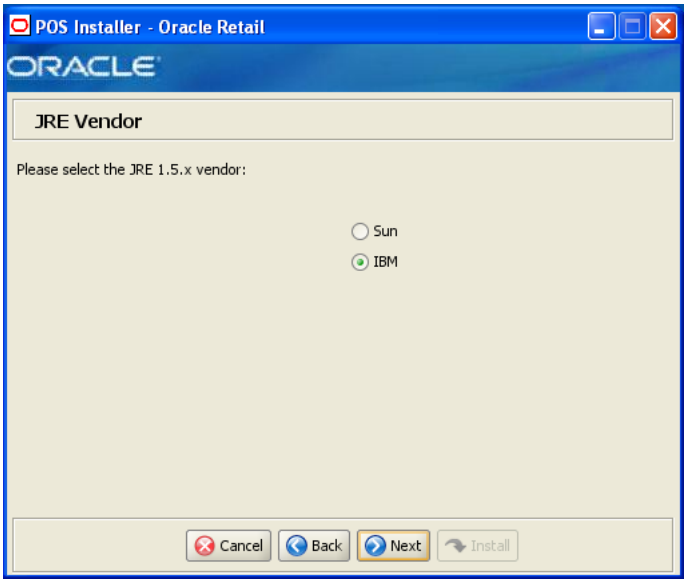
Figure E–12 JRE Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Location
Field Description	Choose the location where the JRE is installed.
Example	`/opt/Program Files/Java/jre1.5`
Notes	

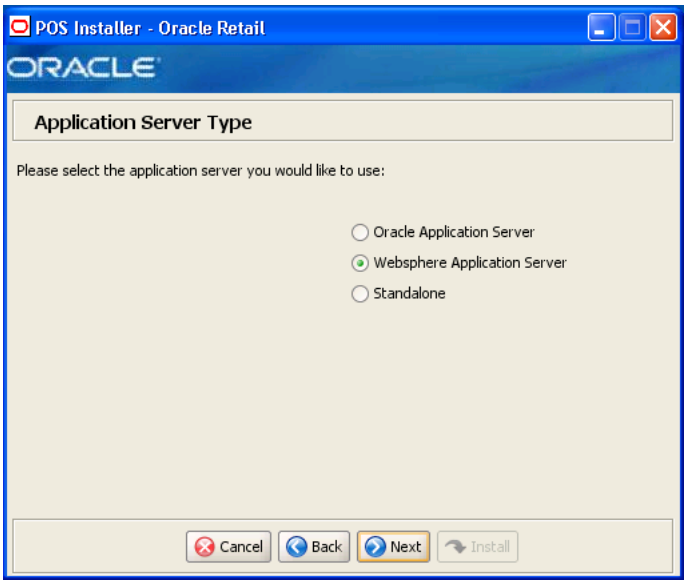
Figure E–13 JRE Vendor



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Vendor
Field Description	Select the vendor for the JRE entered on the previous screen: ▪ Sun ▪ IBM Choose **IBM**.
Example	IBM
Notes	

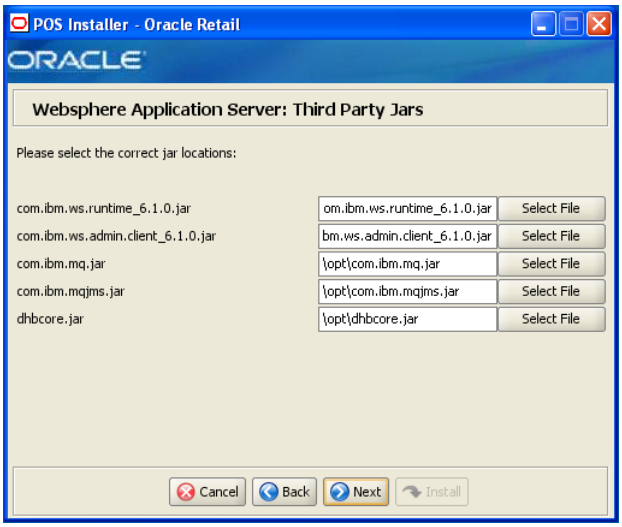
Figure E–14 Application Server Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Application Server Type
Field Description	Select the application server to be used for the store server. ▪ Oracle Application Server ▪ Websphere Application Server ▪ Standalone Choose **Websphere Application Server**. **Note:** Do not select Standalone if you are running Point-of-Service on the IBM stack.
Example	Websphere Application Server
Notes	

Figure E–15 Websphere Application Server: Third Party Jars



The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	com.ibm.ws.runtime_6.1.0.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `com.ibm.ws.runtime_6.1.0.jar` file.
Example	*<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*`/WebSphere/AppServer/plugins/com.ibm.ws.runtime_6.1.0.jar`
Notes	

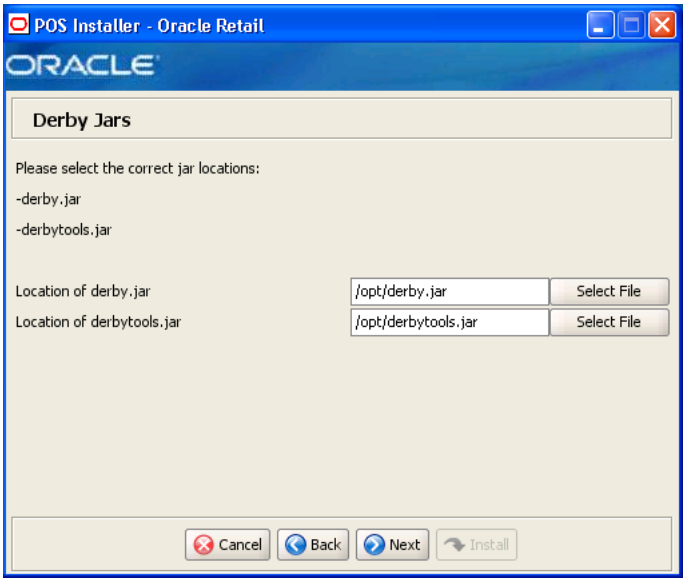
Field Title	com.ibm.ws.admin.client_6.1.0.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `com.ibm.ws.admin.client_6.1.0.jar` file.
Example	*<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*`/WebSphere/AppServer/runtime/com.ibm.ws.admin.client_6.1.0.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	com.ibm.mq.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `com.ibm.mq.jar` file.
Example	*<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*`/lib/WMQ/java/lib/com.ibm.mq.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	com.ibm.mqjms.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `com.ibm.mqjms.jar` file.
Example	*<MQ_INSTALL_DIR>*`/java/lib/com.ibm.mqjms.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	dhbcore.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `dhbcore.jar` file.
Example	*<MQ_INSTALL_DIR>*`/lib/WMQ/java/lib/dhbcore.jar`
Notes	

Figure E–16 Derby Jars

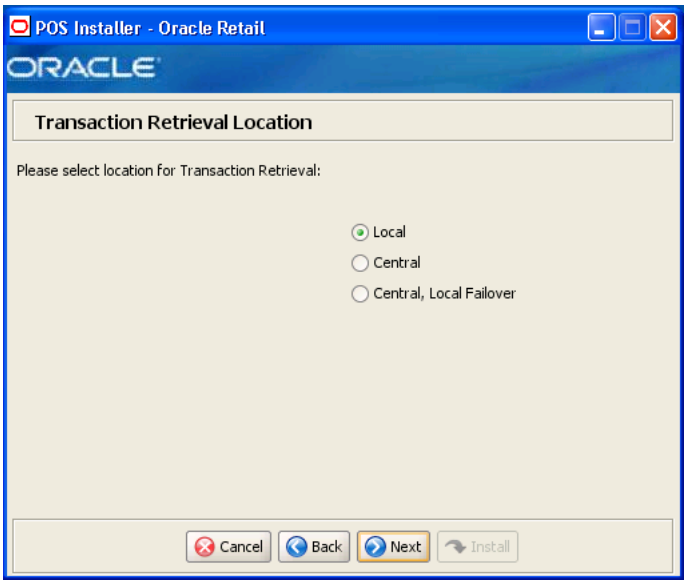


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Location of derby.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derby.jar` file.
Example	`/opt/thirdparty/apache-derby-10.2.2/lib/derby.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Location of derbytools.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derbytools.jar` file.
Example	`/opt/thirdparty/apache-derby-10.2.2/lib/derbytools.jar`
Notes	

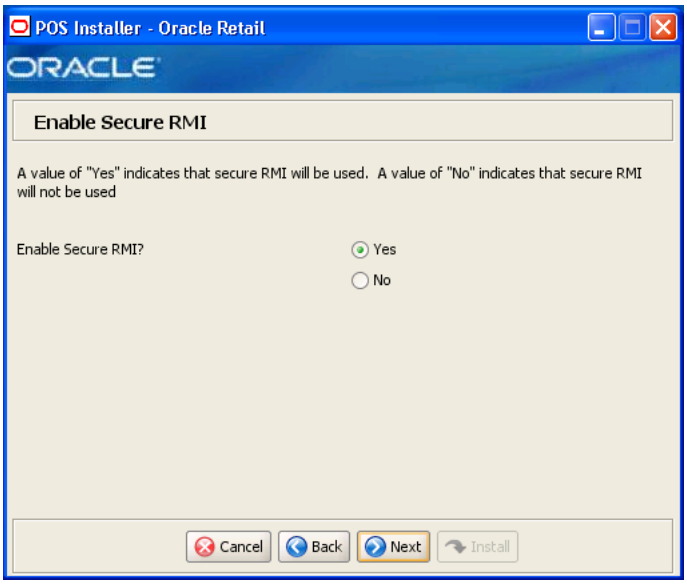
Figure E–17 Transaction Retrieval Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Transaction retrieval location
Field Description	Choose the location for retrieving transactions. ▪ If transactions should only be retrieved from the store database, choose **Local**. ▪ If transactions should only be retrieved from the corporate database, choose **Central**. ▪ If transactions should be retrieved from the corporate database, and if not found, then retrieved from the store database, choose **Central, Local Failover**. **Note:** You must choose the same location for both the store server and client installations.
Example	Local
Notes	

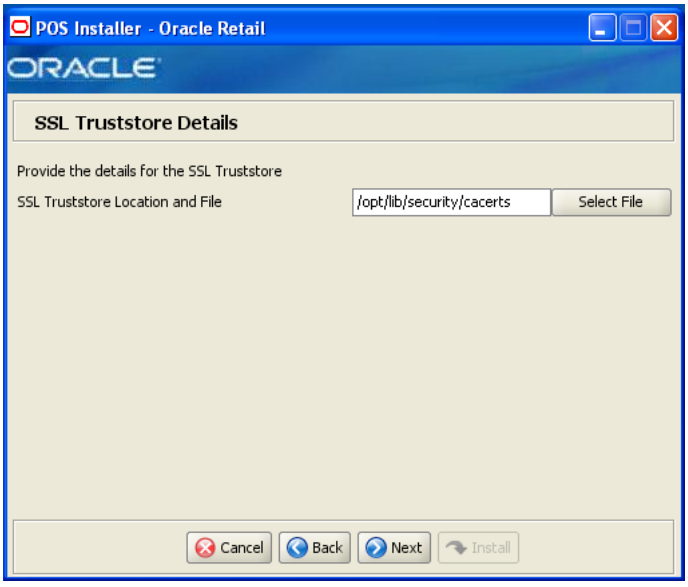
Figure E–18 Enable Secure RMI



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable SecureRMI?
Field Description	Select whether secure RMI is to be used for communication between the store server and registers.
Example	Yes
Notes	

Figure E–19 SSS Truststore Details

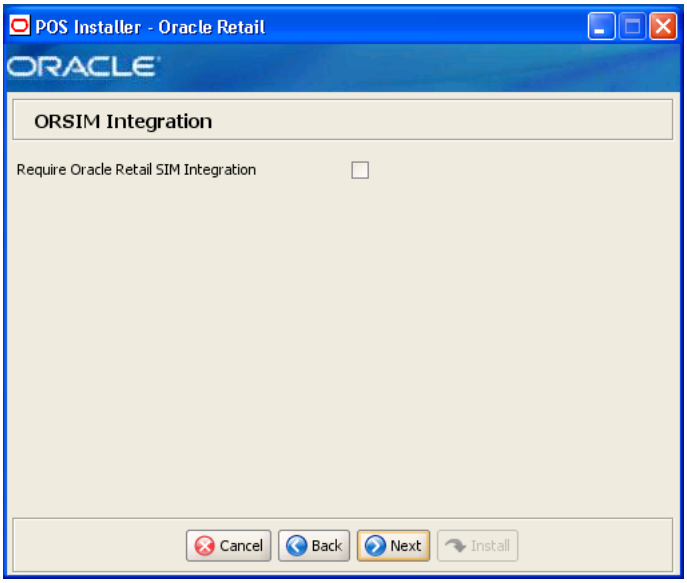


This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure RMI screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	SSL Truststore Location and File
Field Description	Choose the path to the truststore file.
Example	`/opt/lib/security/cacerts`
Notes	

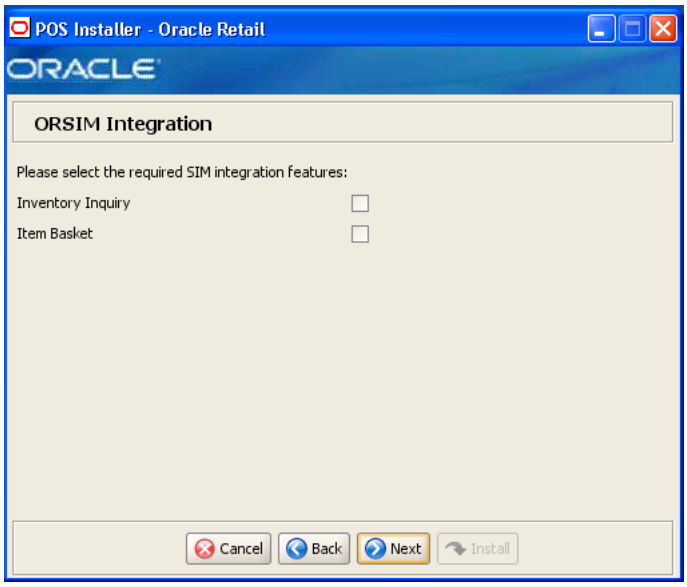
Figure E–20 ORSIM Integration



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Require Oracle Retail SIM Integration
Field Description	Check the box if integration with Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management is required. This box must be checked if the Item Inquiry feature of Point-of-Service is to be used.
Notes	

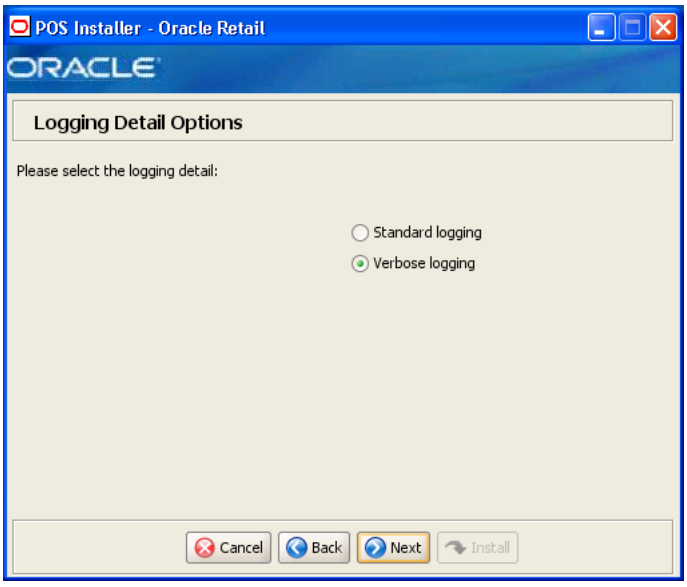
Figure E–21 ORSIM Integration



This screen is only displayed if **Require Oracle SIM Integration** is selected. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select the required SIM integration features
Field Description	Select the Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM) features that will be used in Point-of-Service: ▪ To inquire about inventory using SIM, select **Inventory Inquiry**. ▪ To enable item baskets created using SIM, select **Item Basket**.
Example	Inventory Inquiry
Notes	

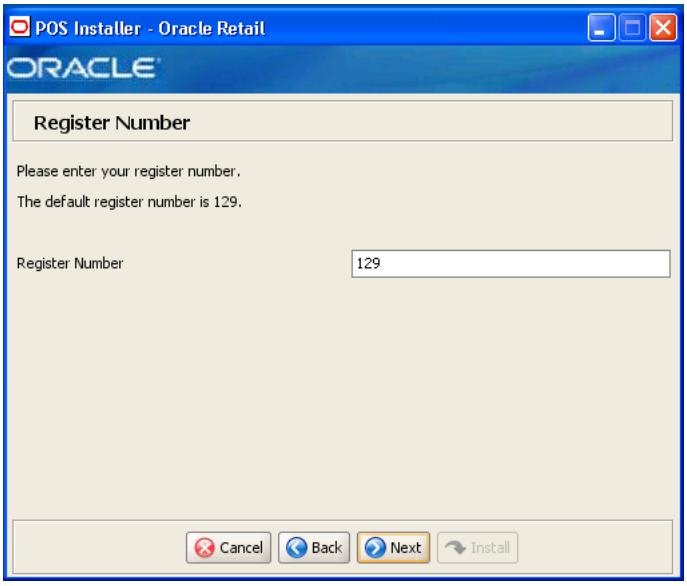
Figure E–22 Logging Detail Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Logging Detail Options
Field Description	Choose the level of client logging. ▪ To only log some of the messages, choose **Standard Logging**. ▪ To log all of the messages, choose **Verbose Logging**.
Example	Verbose logging
Notes	

Figure E–23 Register Number



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Register Number
Field Description	Enter the register number for this installation.
Example	129 **Note:** Only 1 to 245 is supported for the register number.
Notes	

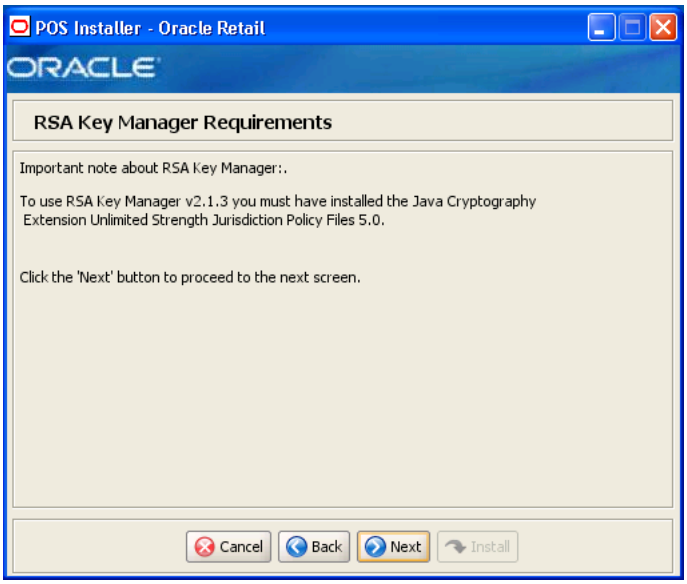
Figure E–24 Security Setup: Key Store Settings

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Hash Algorithm
Field Description	Enter the name of the algorithm used by the Key Store to hash sensitive data.
Example	SHA-256
Notes	

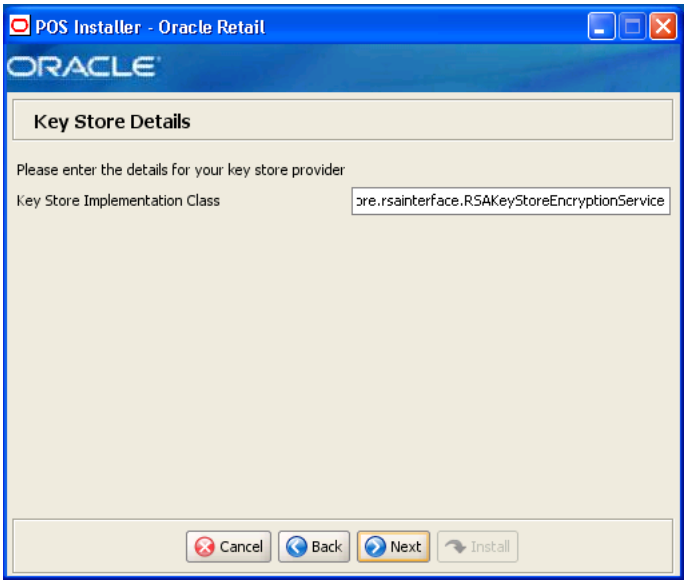
Field Title	Select Key Store Provider
Field Description	Provider for Key Store management. ▪ To use the RSA key management package, select **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3**. The next screen displayed is Figure E–25. ▪ To use the simulated key management package, select **Simulator**. The next screen displayed is Figure E–29. ▪ To use a different key management provider, select **Other**. The next screen displayed is Figure E–31.
Example	RSA Key Manager v2.1.3
Notes	

Figure E–25 RSA Key Manager Requirements



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen. This informational screen explains the requirements to use the RSA Key Manager. Verify that you meet the requirements and then click **Next**.

Figure E–26 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3

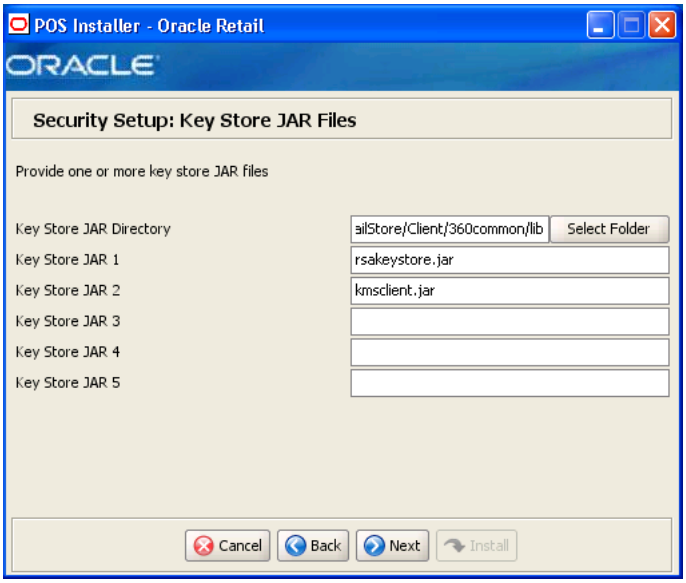


This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the RSA Key Manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.rsakeystore.rsainterface.RSAKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure E–27 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Example	`/opt/OracleRetailStore/Server/360common/lib`
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	rsakeystore.jar
Notes	

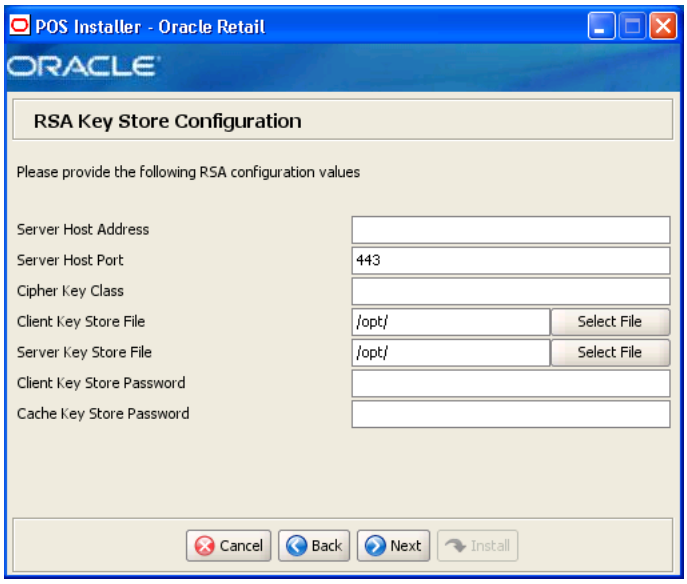
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	kmsclient.jar
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure E–28 RSA Key Store Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Server Host Address
Field Description	Enter the IP address of the RSA server host.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Host Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the RSA server host.
Example	443 443 is the default used by the RSA Key Manager.
Notes	

Field Title	Cipher Key Class
Field Description	Enter the RSA Key Manager cipher key class.
Notes	

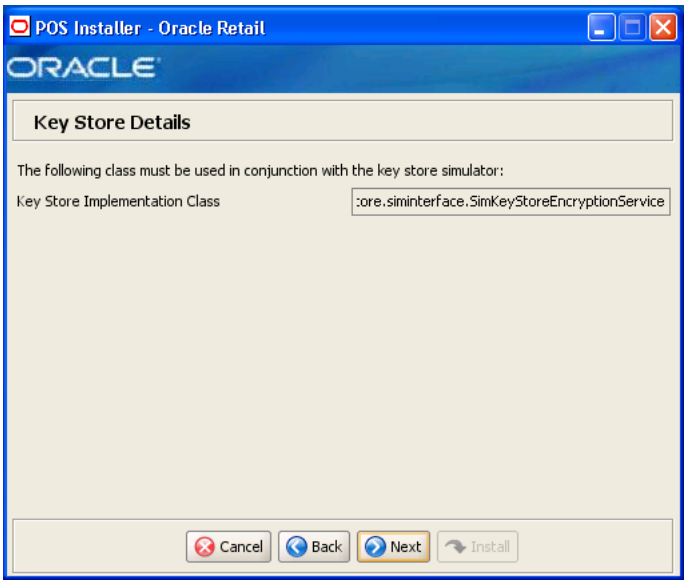
Field Title	Client Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager client Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager server Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Client Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager client Key Store.
Notes	

Field Title	Cache Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager cache.
Notes	

Figure E–29 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager

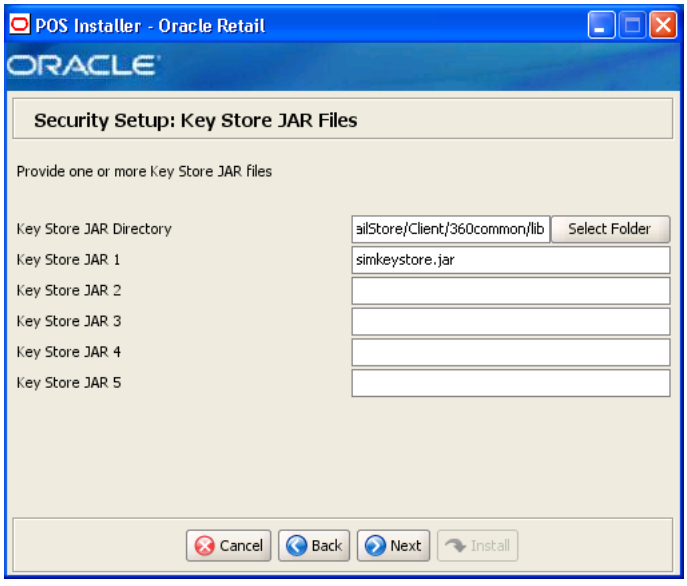


This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the simulated key manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.simkeystore.siminterface.SimKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure E–30 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located. **Note:** If you are using the simulated key management package bundled with Point-of-Service, enter the directory where you saved the `simkeystore.jar` file.
Example	`/opt/OracleRetailStore/Server/360common/lib`
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	simkeystore.jar
Notes	

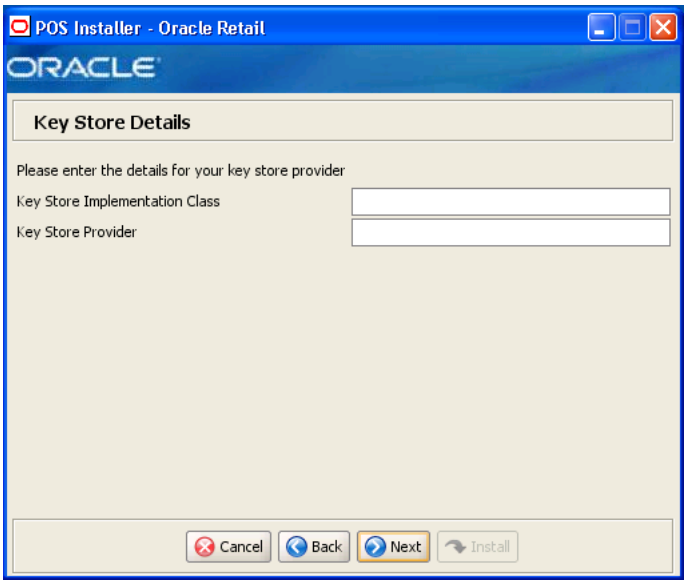
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure E–31 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager



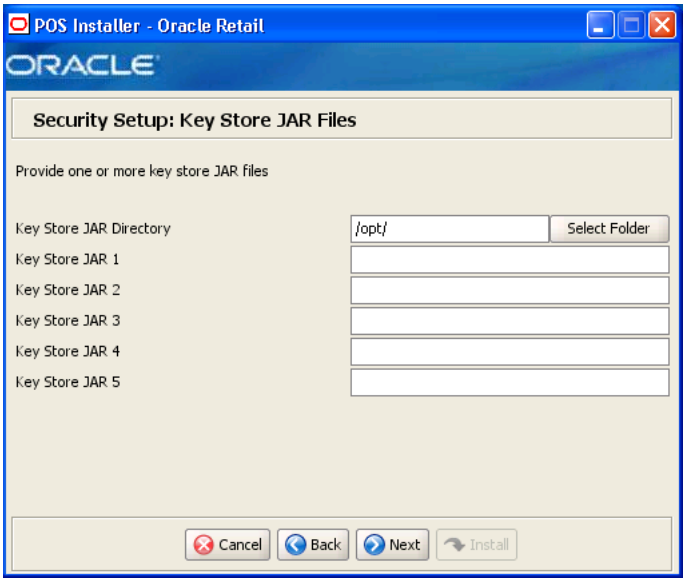
This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the key manager interface.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store Provider
Field Description	Enter the name of the provider for the Key Store.
Notes	

Figure E–32 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

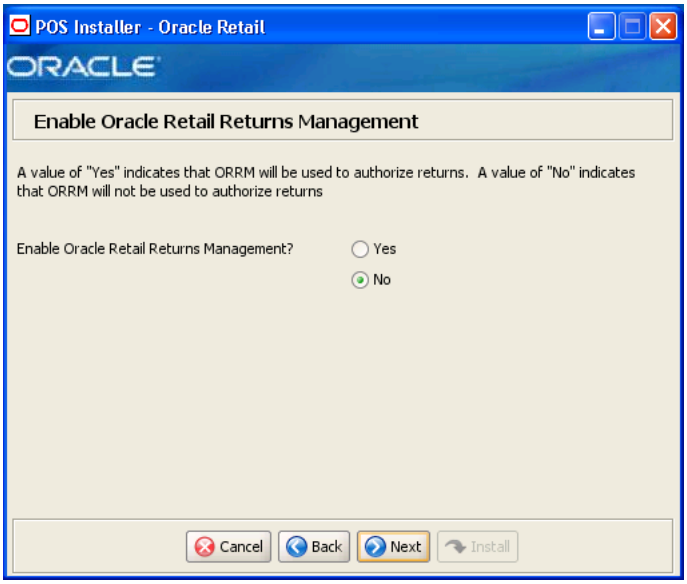
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

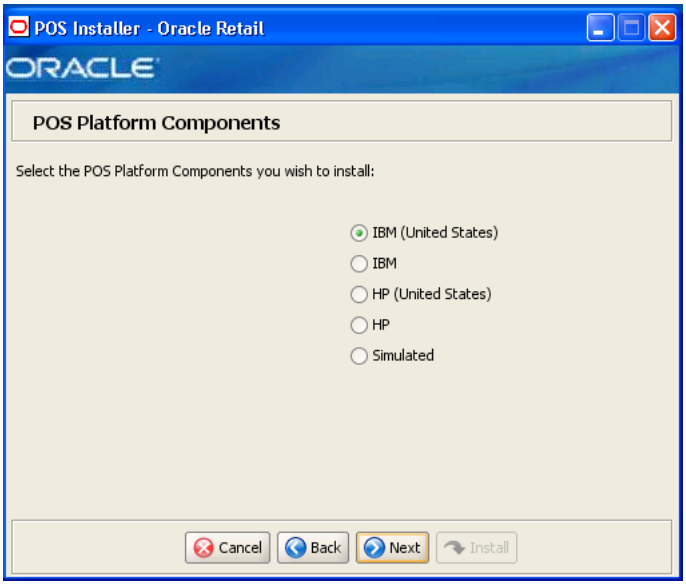
Figure E–33 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose whether Oracle Retail Returns Management is used to authorize returns. If Yes is selected,
Example	No
Notes	

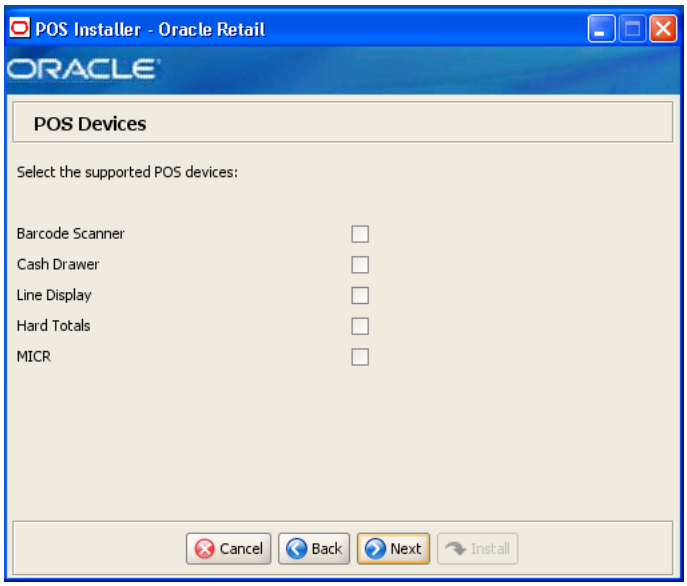
Figure E–34 POS Platform Components



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	POS Platform Components
Field Description	From the platform components, choose the type of register and whether the devices are intended for use in or outside the United States: ▪ To use an IBM register with devices intended for use in the United States, select **IBM (United States)**. ▪ To use an IBM register with devices intended for use outside the United States, select **IBM**. ▪ To use an HP register with devices intended for use in the United States, select **HP (United States)**. ▪ To use an HP register with devices intended for use outside the United States, select **HP**. ▪ To use a register with no devices, select **Simulated**. This should only be selected for a development environment. The next screen displayed is Figure E–40.
Example	IBM (United States)
Notes	

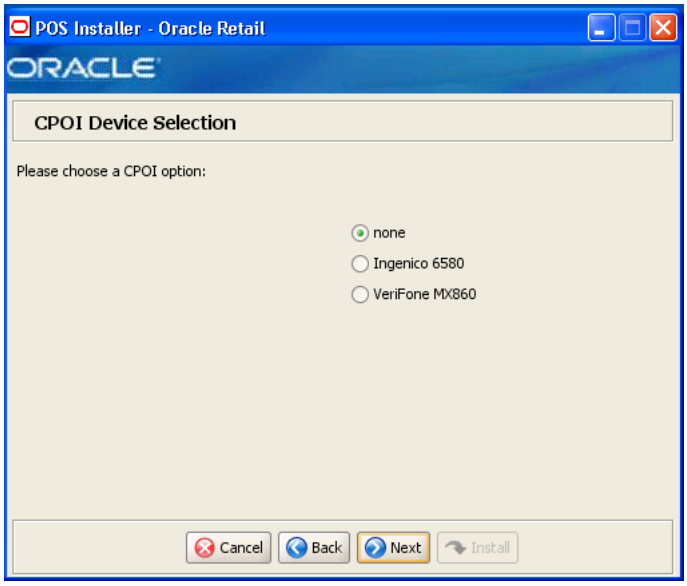
Figure E–35 POS Devices



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	POS Devices
Field Description	Choose the devices to be attached to the client register.
Example	Cash Drawer
Notes	

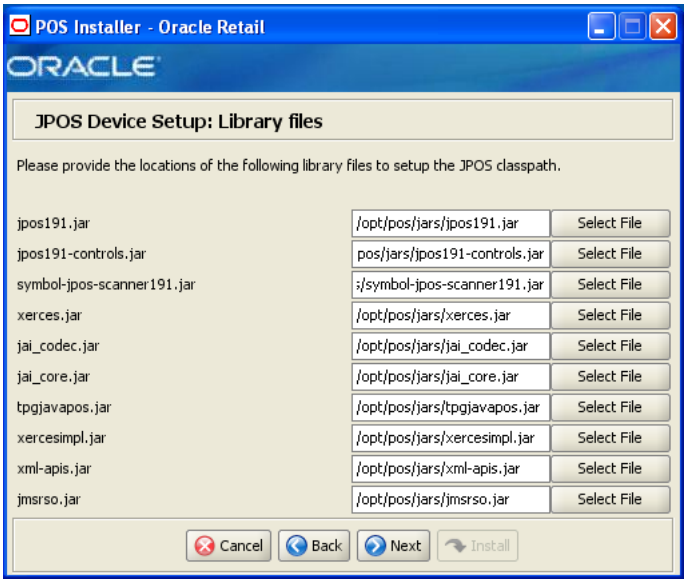
Figure E–36 CPOI Device Selection



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Please choose a CPOI option
Field Description	Choose the CPOI device to be used at the register. ▪ To not use a CPOI device, choose **none**. ▪ To use the Ingenico device, choose **Ingenico 6580**. ▪ To use the VeriFone device, choose **Verifone MX860**.
Example	none
Notes	

Figure E–37 JPOS Device Setup: Library Files



The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	jpos191.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	jpos191-controls.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	symbol-jpos-scanner191.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	xerces.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	jai_codec.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	jai_core.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

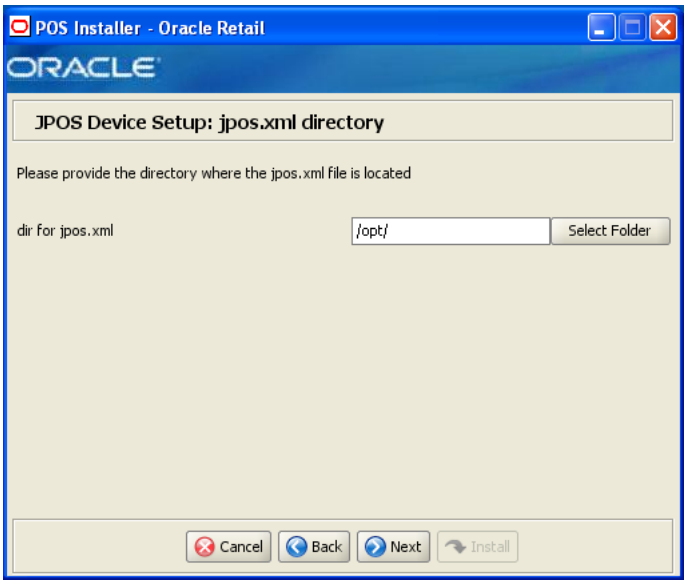
Field Title	tpgjavapos.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	xercesimpl.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	xml-apis.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	jmsrso.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

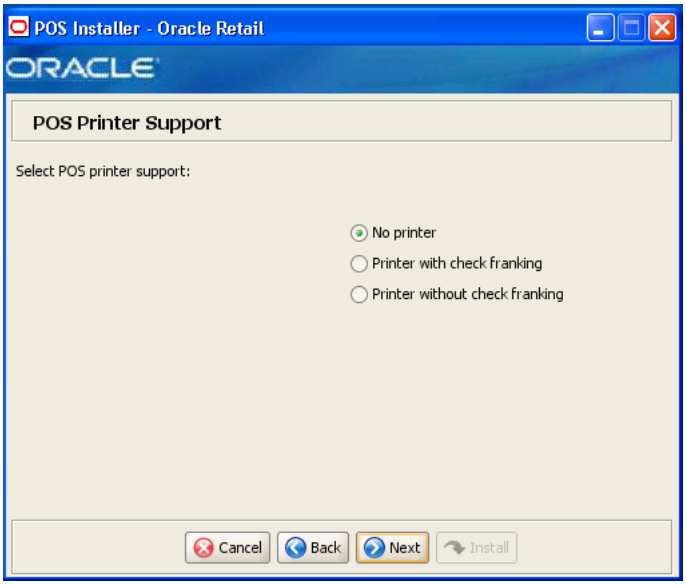
Figure E–38 JPOS Device Setup: jpos.xml directory



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	dir for jpos.xml
Field Description	Enter the location of the directory.
Notes	

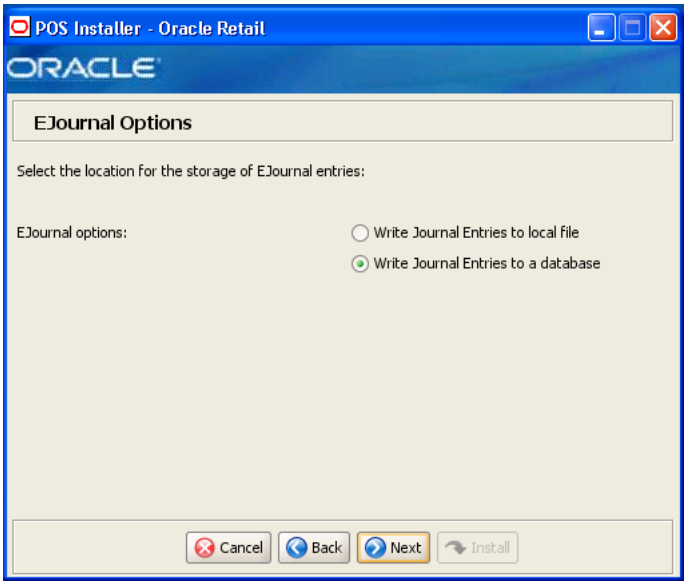
Figure E–39 POS Printer Support



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	POS Printer Support
Field Description	Choose what is supported for a printer attached to the register. If Ingenico 6580 or Verifone MX860 will be used for the CPOI device, select **Printer without check franking** on this screen.
Example	Printer with check franking
Notes	

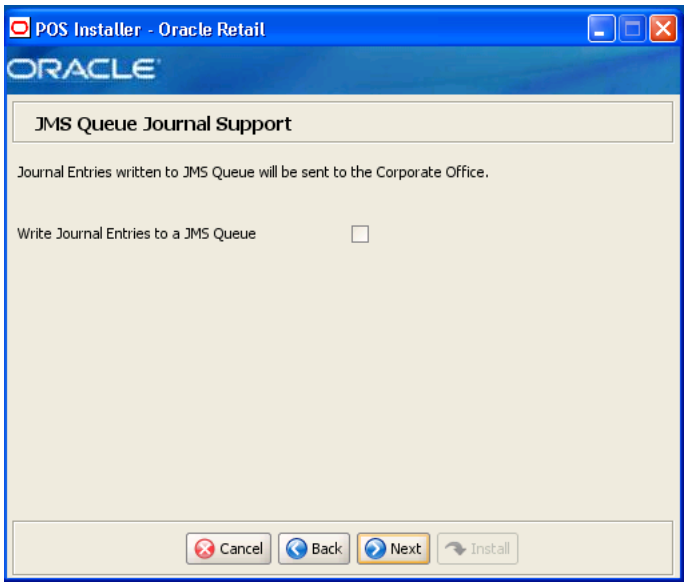
Figure E–40 EJournal Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	EJournal Options
Field Description	Choose where the journal entries are to be written. ▪ To write journal entries to a local file, choose **Write Journal Entries to local file**. ▪ To write journal entries to a database, choose **Write Journal Entries to a database**.
Example	Write Journal Entries to a database
Notes	

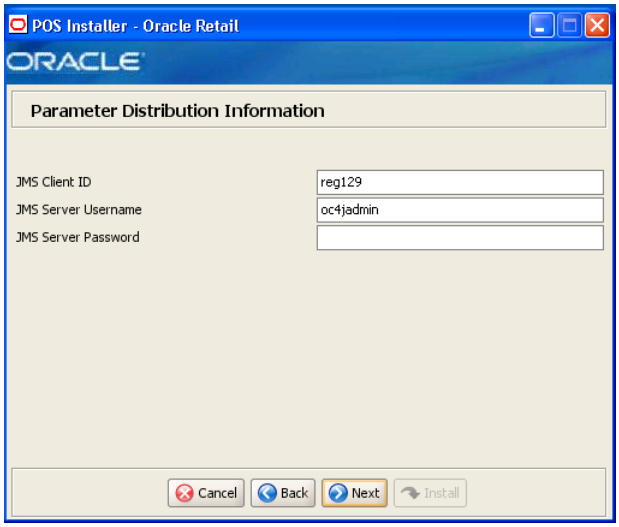
Figure E–41 JMS Queue Journal Support



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JMS Queue Journal Support
Field Description	Select if journal entries are to be written to a JMS queue and then sent to the corporate office.
Example	Write Journal Entries to a JMS queue
Notes	

Figure E–42 Parameter Distribution Information



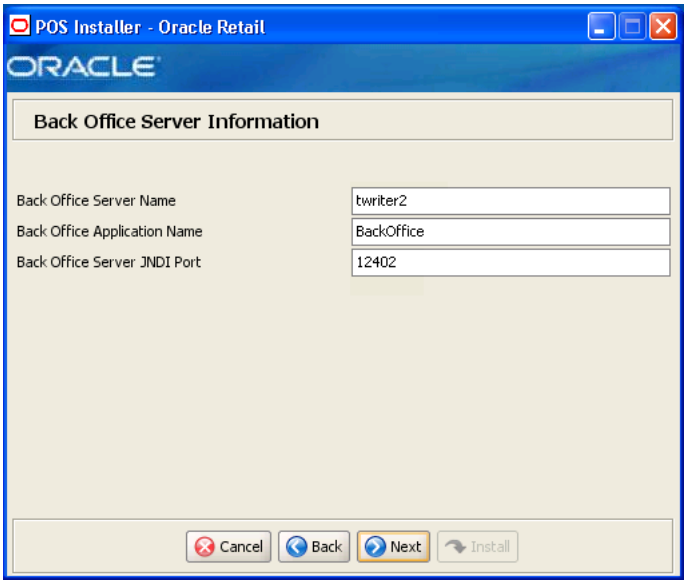
The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	JMS Client ID
Field Description	Identifier of the JMS client used for receiving parameter updates.
Example	`reg129` **Note:** When **Websphere Application Server** is selected for the Application Server Type, the value of `clientID` must match the `WorkstationID` specified in the `application.properties` file.
Notes	

Field Title	JMS Username
Field Description	Identifier of the JMS user for receiving parameter updates.
Example	`reg129` (default for the IBM stack) **Note:** When **Websphere Application Server** is selected for the Application Server Type, you must create a UNIX user on the host where Back Office is installed and add that user to the `mqm` group. On the register, you must also create the `mqm` group, the UNIX user, and add that user to the `mqm` group. Copy the encrypted password for this user from the `/etc/shadow` file on the Back Office host into the corresponding `shadow` file on the register. The values for `jmsID` and `jmsPassword` specified in the Password Technician definition must match the values for the UNIX user and password.
Notes	

Field Title	JMS Password
Field Description	Password of the JMS user receiving parameter updates.
Notes	

Figure E–43 Back Office Server Information



To find the JNDI port number, the information is available in:

<WebSphere Application Server install>/profiles/*<profile name>*/logs/About this profile.txt. BOOTSTRAP_ADDRESS is the port number.

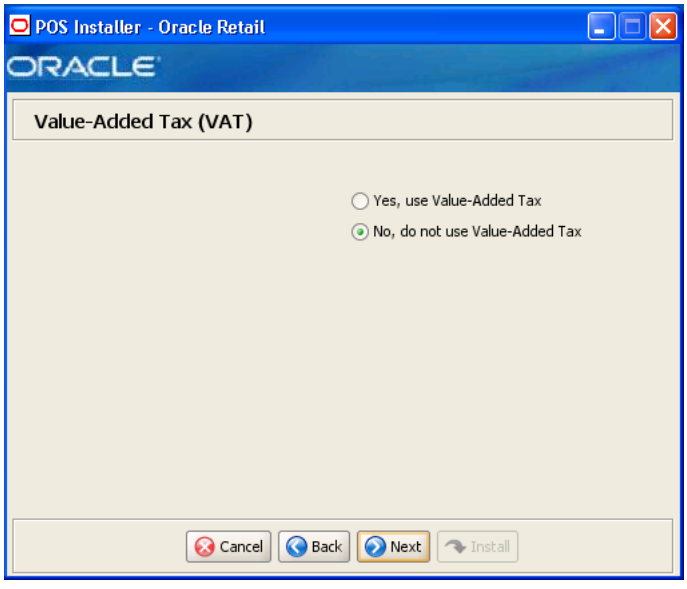
The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Back Office Server Name
Field Description	Enter the host name for the Back Office application.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

Field Title	Back Office Application Name
Field Description	Enter the application name for the Back Office application.
Example	BackOffice
Notes	

Field Title	Back Office Server JNDI Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Back Office application.
Example	12402
Notes	

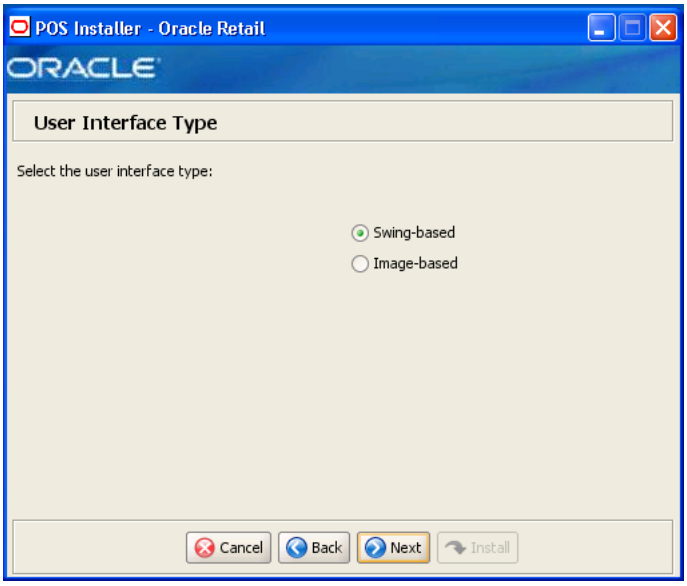
Figure E–44 Value-Added Tax (VAT)



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Value-Added Tax
Field Description	Choose whether Value-Added Tax is used.
Example	No, do not use Value-Added Tax
Notes	

Figure E–45 User Interface Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	User Interface Type
Field Description	Choose the user interface look and feel. ■ To use a standard swing interface, choose **Swing-based**. ■ To use custom images for buttons and other graphics, choose **Image-based**.
Example	Swing-based
Notes	

Figure E–46 Installation Progress

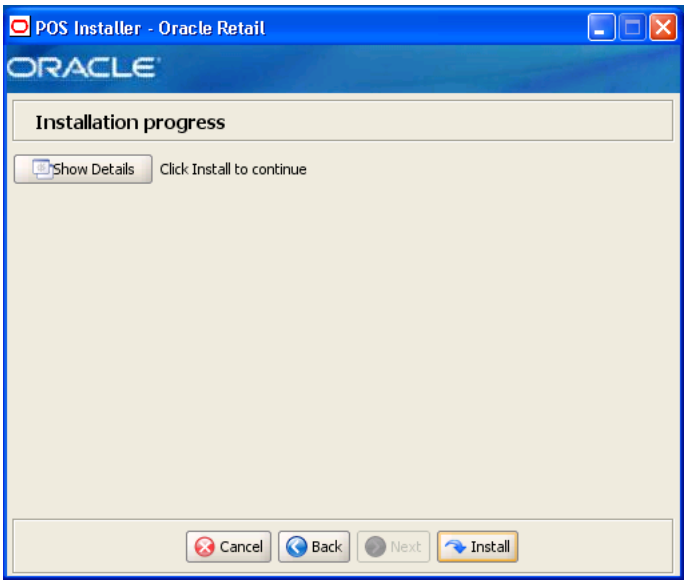
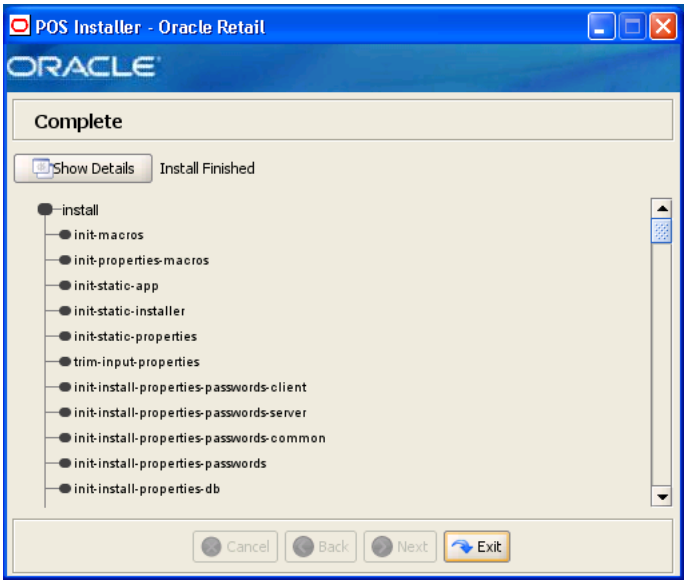


Figure E–47 Install Complete



F

Appendix: Installer Screens for Server Installation for Standalone on Linux

You need specific details about your environment for the installer to successfully install the Point-of-Service application for Standalone on OEL or Red Hat Enterprise Linux. This appendix shows the screens that are displayed during the installation of the Point-of-Service server. Depending on the options you select, you may not see some screens or fields.

> **Note:** The flow of the screens and selections on the screens shown in this appendix follow the installation of the server using the supported software selections as shown in Chapter 1.

For each field on a screen, a table is included in this appendix that describes the field. If you want to document any specific information about your environment for any field, a Notes row is provided in each table for saving that information.

For the installer screens for a client installation for Standalone, see Appendix H.

Figure F–1 Introduction

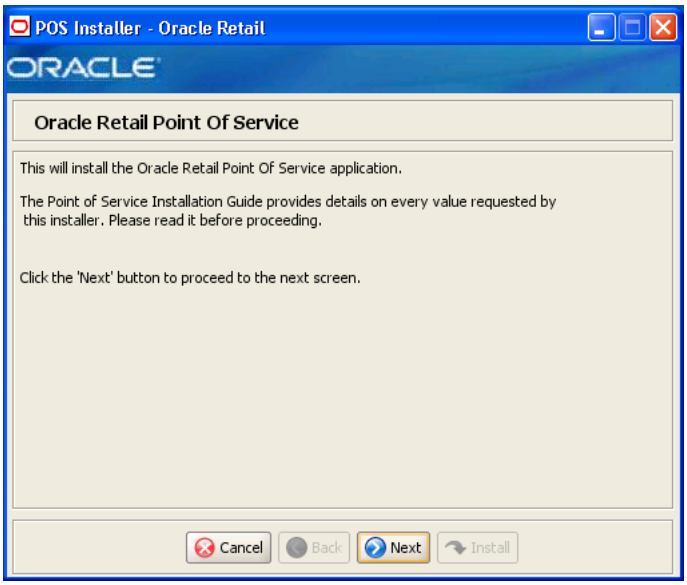


Figure F–2 Previous POS Install

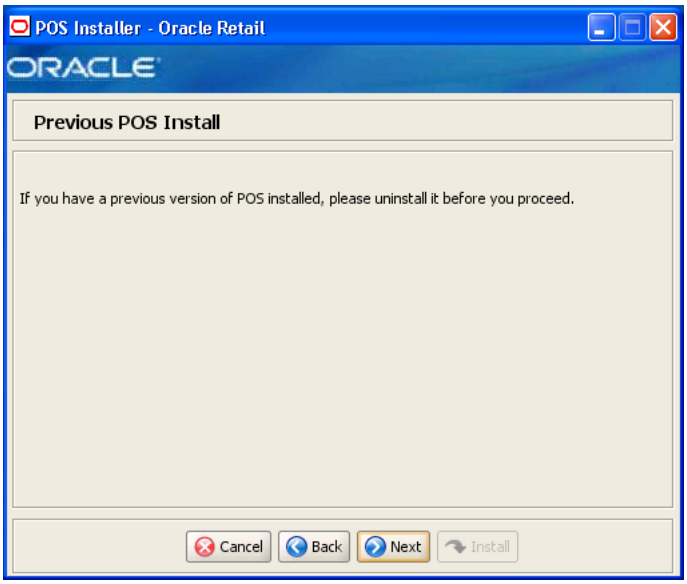
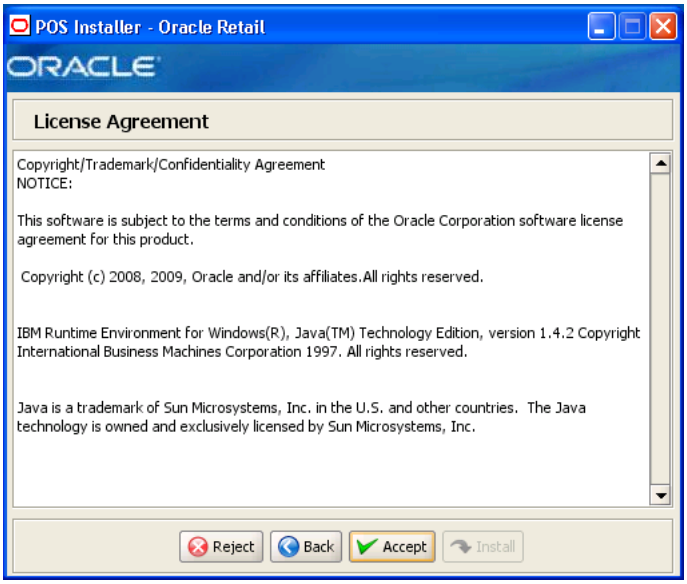
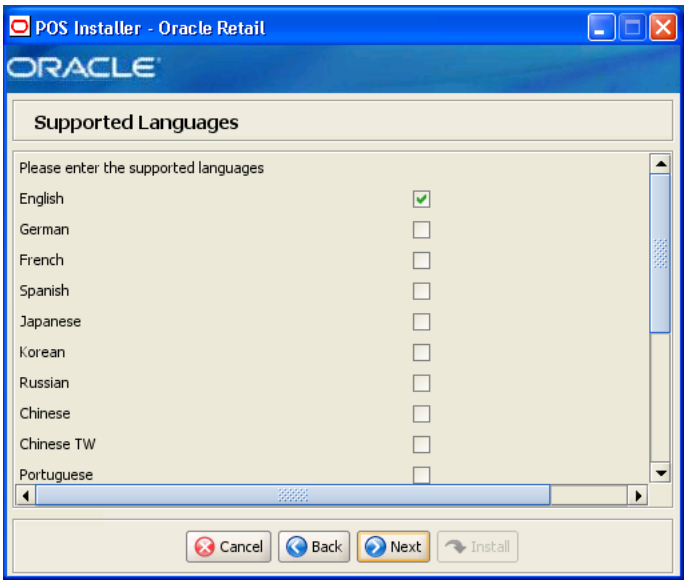


Figure F–3 License Agreement



Note: You must choose to accept the terms of the license agreement in order for the installation to continue.

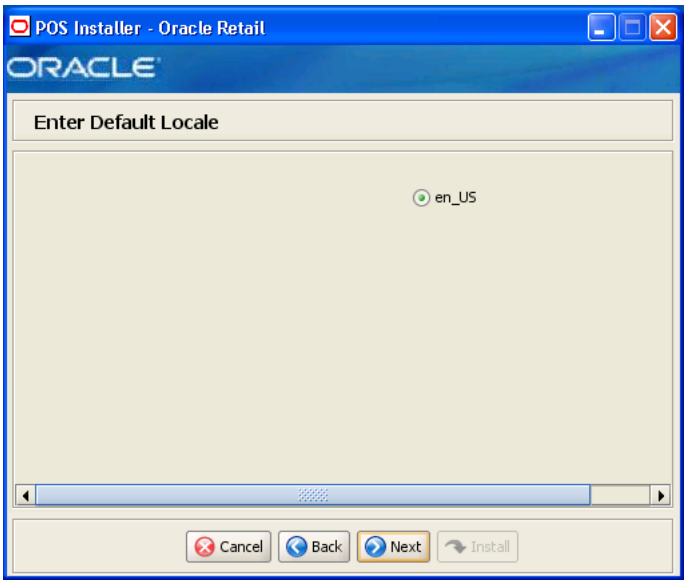
Figure F–4 Supported Languages



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Please enter the supported languages
Field Description	Select the languages that will be available for the Point-of-Service application. The languages selected on this screen determine the available choices on the Enter Default Locale screen.
Example	English
Notes	

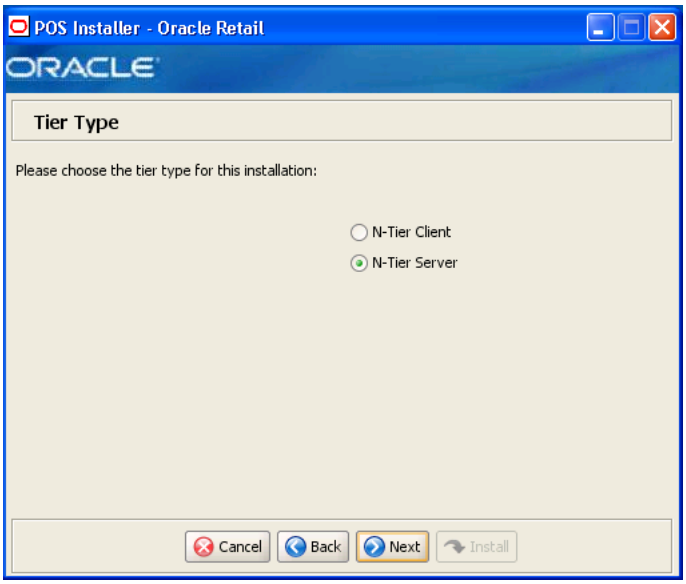
Figure F–5 Enter Default Locale



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enter Default Locale
Field Description	Locale support in Point-of-Service enables the date, time, currency, calendar, address, and phone number to be displayed in the format for the selected default locale. The choices for default locale are dependent on the selections made on the Supported Languages screen. For each selected language, the default locale for that language is displayed on the Enter Default Locale screen. For example, if English and French are selected on the Supported Languages screen, en_US and fr_FR are the available choices for the default locale.
Example	en_US
Notes	

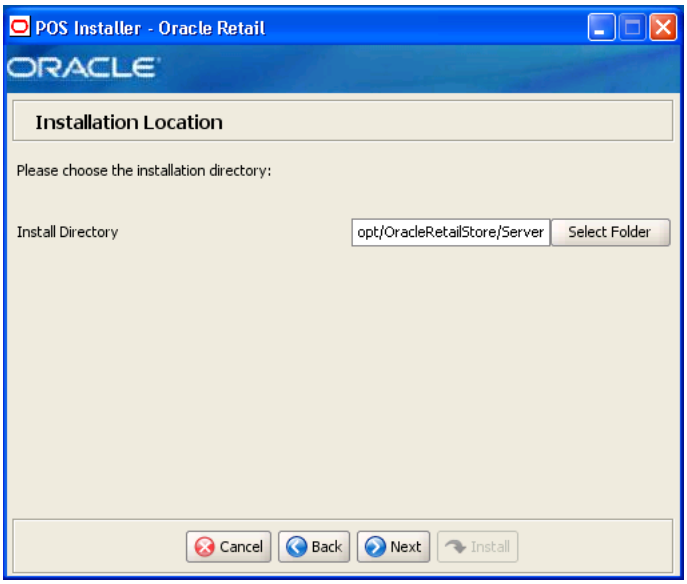
Figure F–6 Tier Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Tier Type
Field Description	Choose the server tier type for this installation. For more information, see "Determining Tier Type" in Chapter 5. To install the N-Tier version of the server, choose **N-Tier Server**.
Example	N-Tier Server
Notes	

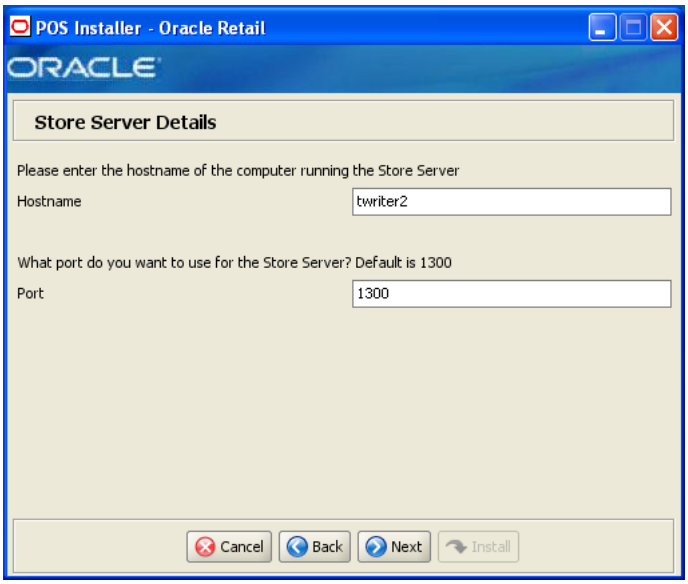
Figure F–7 Installation Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Install Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory into which the Point-of-Service files are copied. The default for the first directory in the path is `OracleRetailStore`. This directory should be the same for all Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions products. When installing for Windows and **N-Tier Server** is selected for the Tier Type, the default installation directory is `OracleRetailStore/Server`. **Note:** The server and the client must not be installed into the same directory. In this guide, *<POS_install_directory>* refers to the selected installation directory for the server or client. Files specific to Point-of-Service are copied to the `/pos` subdirectory of `<POS_install_directory>`.
Example	`/opt/OracleRetailStore/Server`
Notes	

Figure F–8 Store Server Details

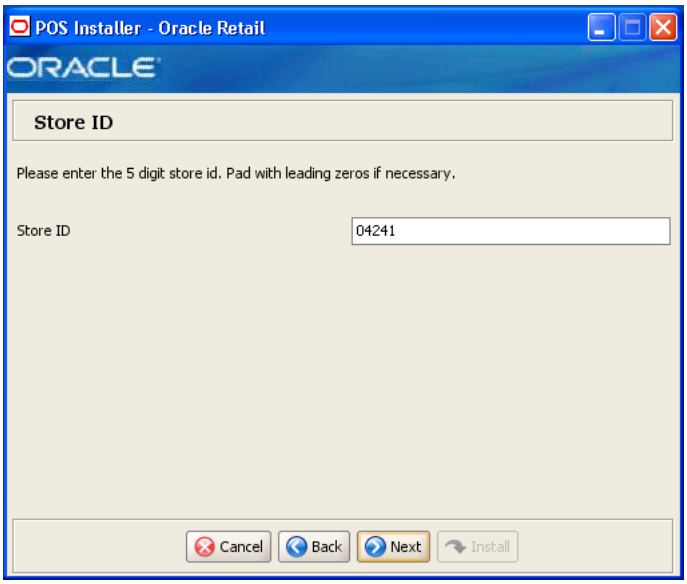


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Hostname
Field Description	Enter the host name of the store server.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

Field Title	Port
Field Description	Enter the port number of the store server used for the communication between the store server and the host computer.
Example	1300
Notes	

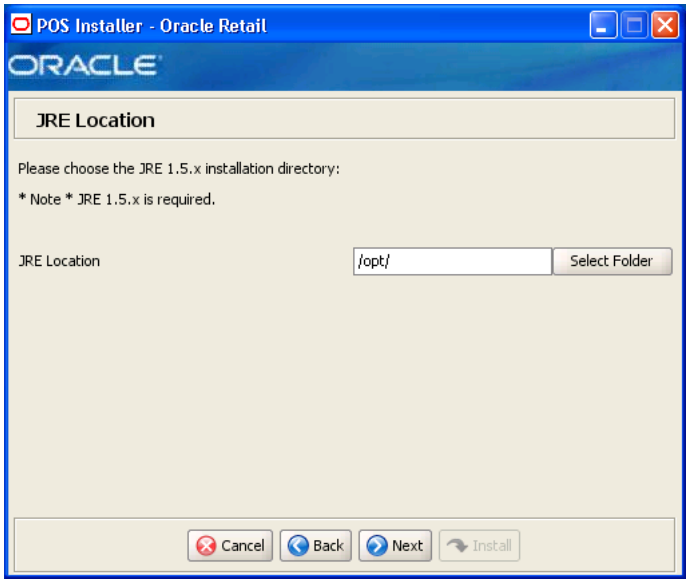
Figure F–9 Store ID



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Store ID
Field Description	Enter the store ID.
Example	04241
Notes	

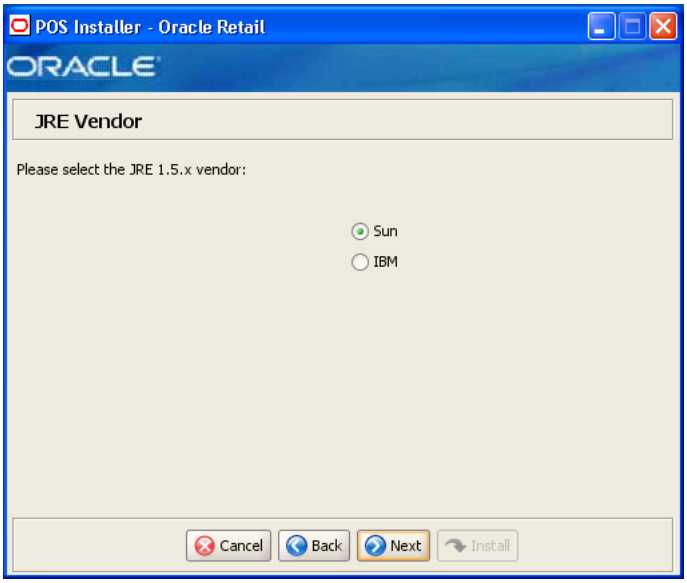
Figure F–10 JRE Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Location
Field Description	Enter the location where the JRE is installed.
Example	`/opt/Java/jre1.5`
Notes	

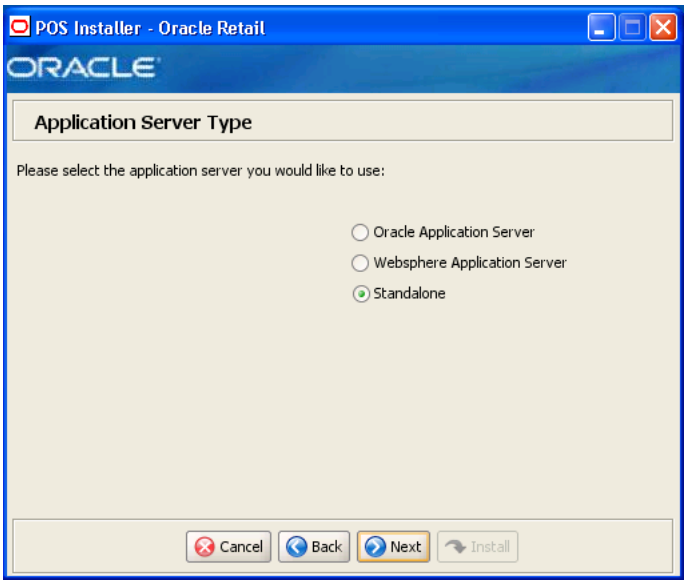
Figure F–11 JRE Vendor



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Vendor
Field Description	Select the vendor for the JRE entered on the JRE Location screen: ▪ Sun ▪ IBM For the Oracle stack, choose **Sun**. For the IBM stack, choose **IBM**.
Example	Sun
Notes	

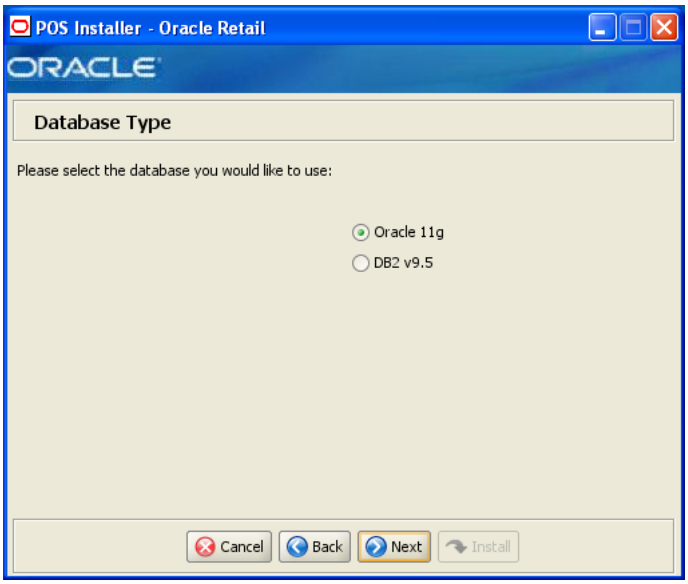
Figure F–12 Application Server Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Application Server Type
Field Description	Select the application server to be used for the store server. ▪ Oracle Application Server ▪ Websphere Application Server ▪ Standalone Choose **Standalone**.
Example	Standalone
Notes	

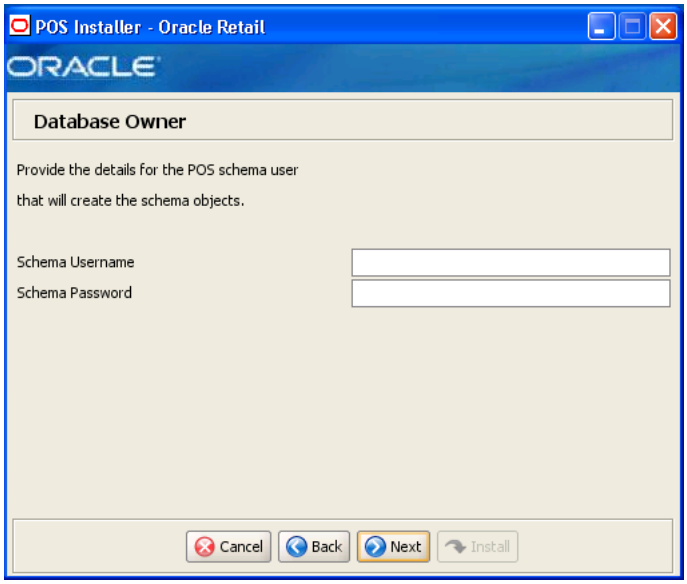
Figure F–13 Database Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Database Type
Field Description	Select the database provider that is used for the OracleRetailStore database. For the Oracle stack, choose **Oracle 11g**. For the IBM stack, choose **DB2 v9.5**.
Example	Oracle 11g
Notes	

Figure F–14 Database Owner

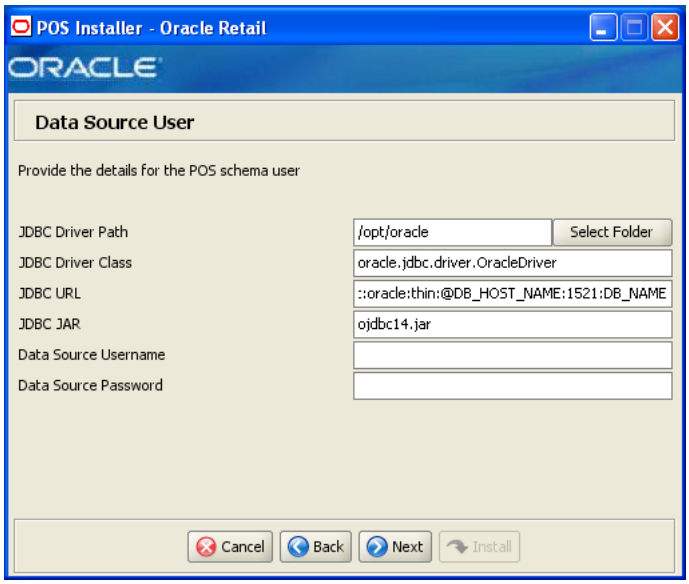


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Schema Username
Field Description	Schema user name that manages the objects in the schema. This user has Create, Drop, and Alter privileges in the schema, that is, Data Definition Language (DDL) execution privileges. For information on creating this user for the Oracle stack, see "Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users" in Chapter 5. For information on creating this user for the IBM stack, see "Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users" in Chapter 5. **Note:** This user creates the database objects used by Point-of-Service.
Example	DBOWNER
Notes	

Field Title	Schema Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the database owner.
Notes	

Figure F–15 Database Source User for Oracle 11g



This screen is only displayed if **Oracle 11g** is selected on the Database Type screen. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	JDBC Driver Path
Field Description	Choose the path to the jar containing the database driver. This is the jar entered in the JDBC JAR field.
Example	`/opt/oracle`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC Driver
Field Description	Enter the database driver class name.
Example	`oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver`
Notes	

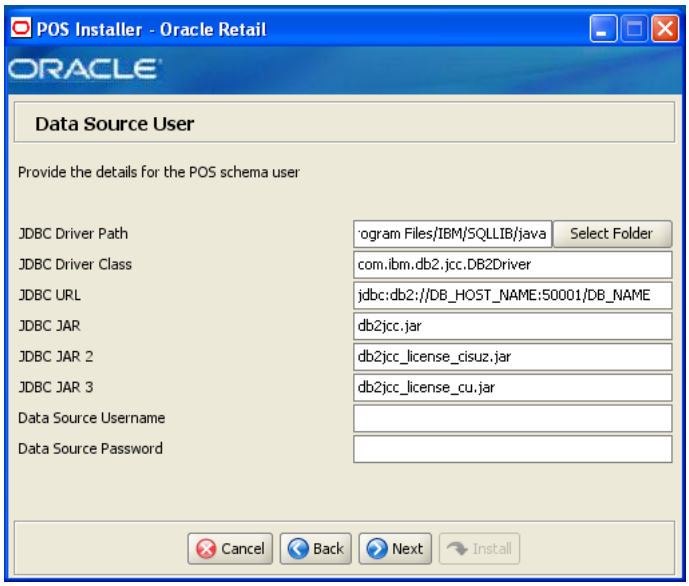
Field Title	JDBC URL
Field Description	Enter the URL used by the Point-of-Service application to access the database schema. For the expected syntax, see Appendix J.
Example	`jdbc:oracle:thin:@myhost:1521:mydatabase`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC JAR
Field Description	Enter the name of the jar containing the database driver.
Example	`ojdbc14.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Data Source Username
Field Description	Database user name that can access and manipulate the data in the schema. This user can have Select, Insert, Update, Delete, and Execute privileges on objects in the schema, that is, Data Manipulation Language (DML) execution privileges. For information on creating this user, see "Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users" in Chapter 5. **Note:** This schema user is used by Point-of-Service to access the database.
Example	DBUSER
Notes	

Field Title	Data Source Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the data source user.
Notes	

Figure F–16 Database Source User for IBM DB2



This screen is only displayed if **DB2 v9.5** is selected on the Database Type screen. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	JDBC Driver Path
Field Description	Choose the path to the jar containing the database driver. This is the jar entered in the JDBC JAR field.
Example	`/opt/Program Files/IBM/SQLLIB/java/`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC Driver Class
Field Description	Enter the database driver class name.
Example	`com.ibm.db2.jcc.DB2Driver`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC URL
Field Description	Enter the URL used by the Point-of-Service application to access the database schema. For the expected syntax, see Appendix J.
Example	`jdbc:db2://localhost:500001/quarrysb`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC JAR
Field Description	Enter the name of the jar containing the database driver.
Example	`db2jcc.jar`
Notes	

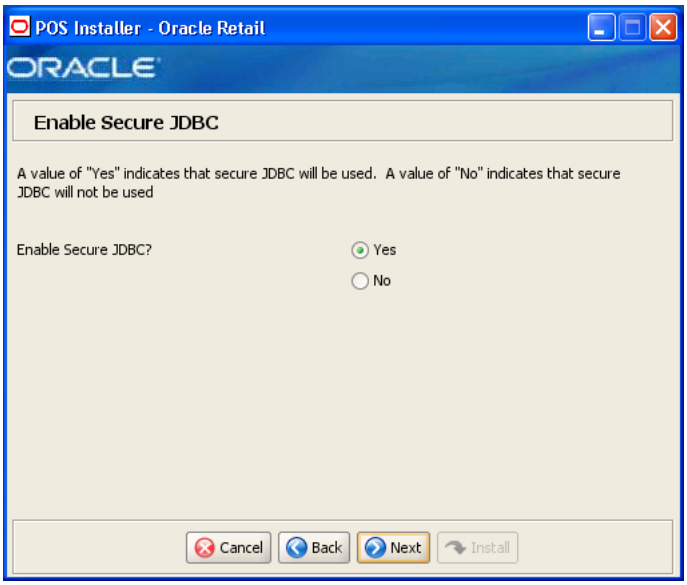
Field Title	JDBC JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of the jar containing license information.
Example	`db2jcc_license_cisuz.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of the jar containing license information.
Example	`db2jcc_license_cu.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Data Source Username
Field Description	Database user name that can access and manipulate the data in the schema. This user can have Select, Insert, Update, Delete, and Execute privileges on objects in the schema, that is, Data Manipulation Language (DML) execution privileges. For information on creating this user, see "Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users" in Chapter 5. **Note:** This schema user is used by Point-of-Service to access the database.
Example	db2admin
Notes	

Field Title	Data Source Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the data source user.
Notes	

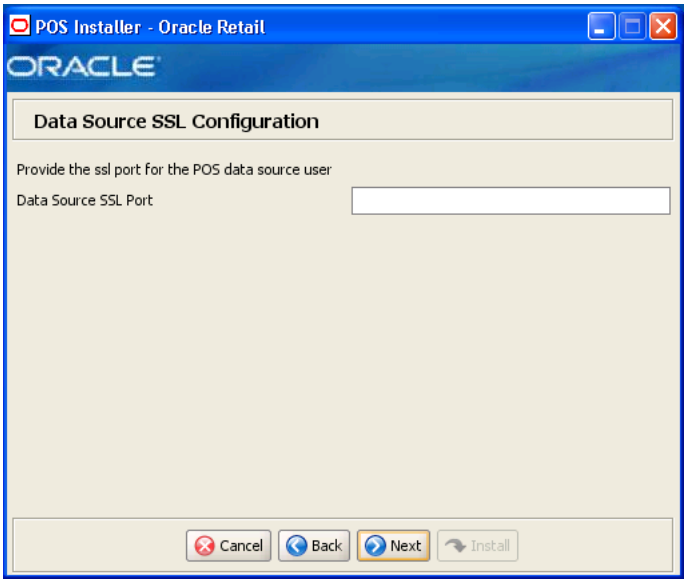
Figure F–17 Enable Secure JDBC



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable Secure JDBC?
Field Description	Select whether secure JDBC is to be used for communication with the database.
Example	Yes
Notes	

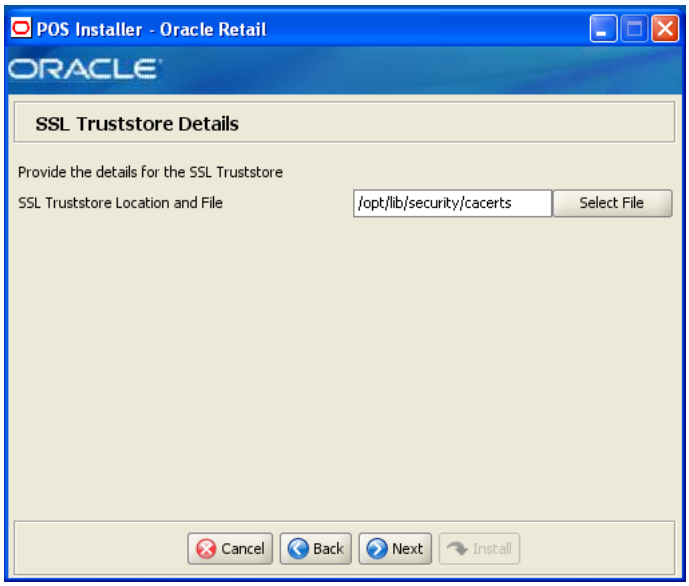
Figure F–18 Data Source SSL Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure JDBC screen. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Data Source SSL Port
Field Description	SSL port used to access the database.
Example	1521
Notes	

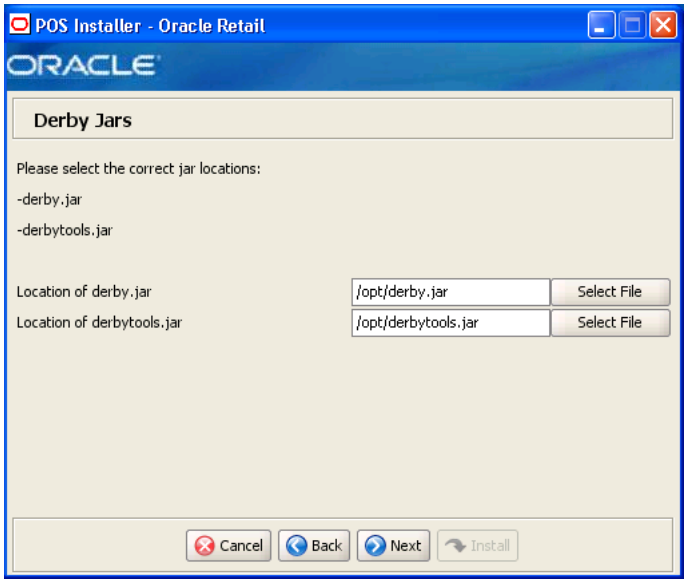
Figure F–19 SSL Truststore Details



This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure JDBC screen and **DB2 v9.5** is selected on the Database Type screen. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	SSL Truststore Location
Field Description	Choose the path to the SSL truststore.
Example	`/opt/lib/security/cacerts`
Notes	

Figure F–20 Derby Jars

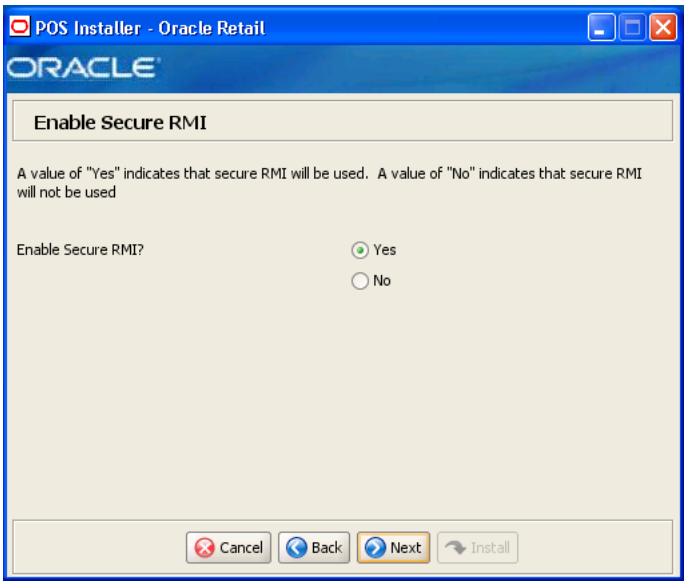


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Location of derby.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derby.jar` file.
Example	`/opt/thirdparty/apache-derby-10.2.2/lib/derby.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Location of derbytools.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derbytools.jar` file.
Example	`/opt/thirdparty/apache-derby-10.2.2/lib/derbytools.jar`
Notes	

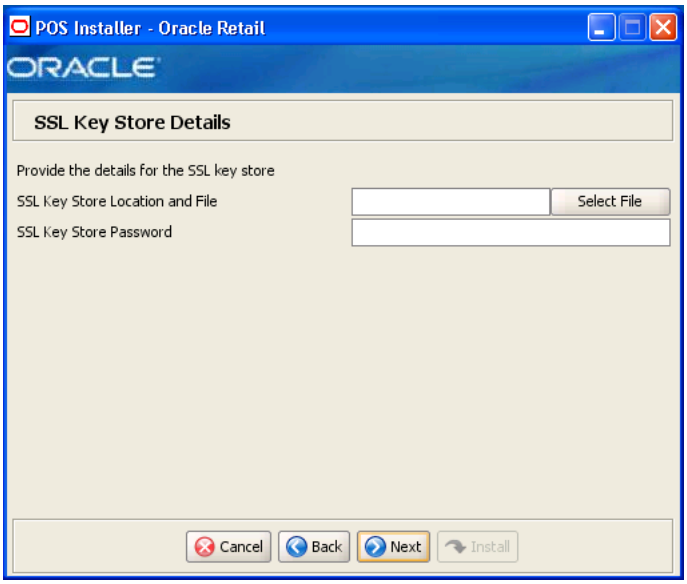
Figure F–21 Enable Secure RMI



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable SecureRMI?
Field Description	Select whether secure RMI is to be used for communication between the store server and registers.
Example	Yes
Notes	

Figure F–22 SSL Key Store Details

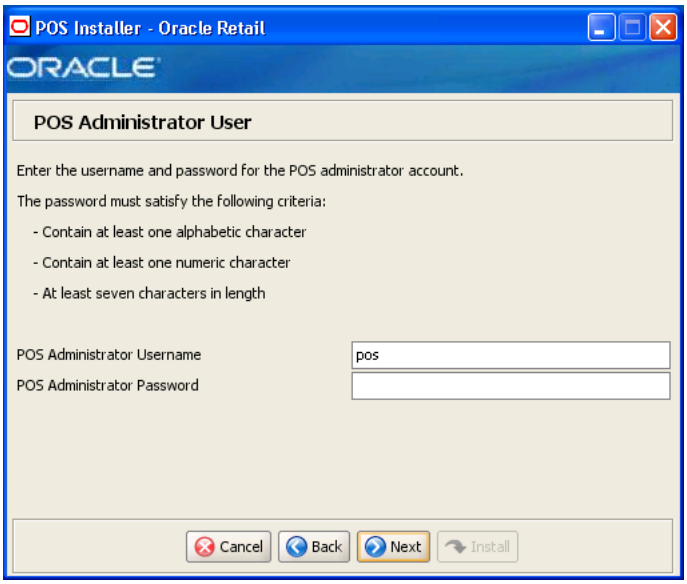


This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure RMI screen. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	SSL Key Store Location and File
Field Description	Choose the path to the SSL Key Store.
Example	`OracleRetailStore/Server/Certificate`
Notes	

Field Title	SSL Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the Key Store.
Notes	

Figure F–23 POS Administrator User

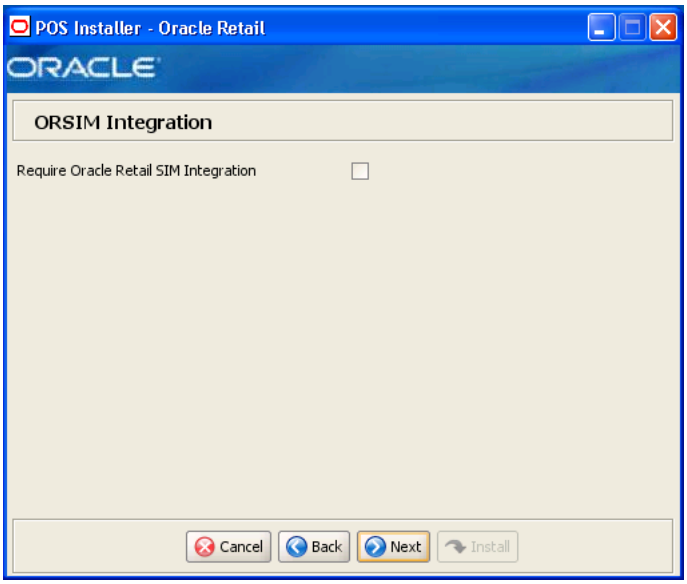


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	POS Administrator Username
Field Description	Enter the user name used for performing Point-of-Service administrative functions.
Example	pos
Notes	

Field Title	POS Administrator Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the administrator user.
Notes	

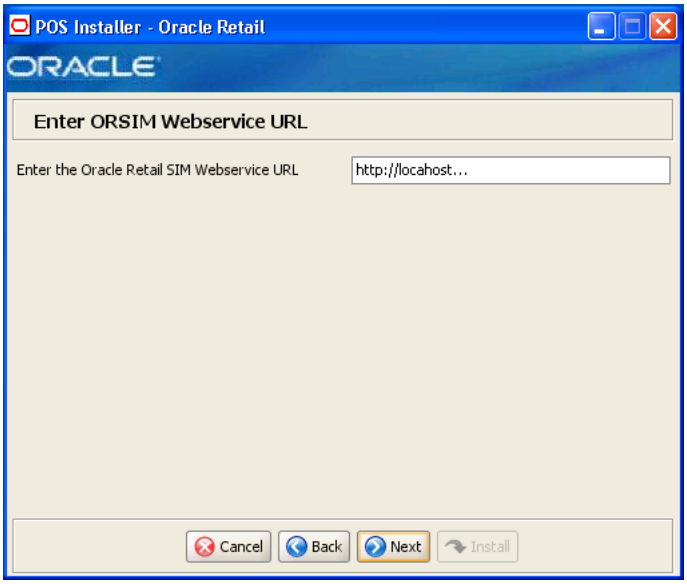
Figure F–24 ORSIM Integration



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Require Oracle Retail SIM Integration
Field Description	Check the box if integration with Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management is required. This box must be checked if the Item Inquiry feature of Point-of-Service is to be used.
Notes	

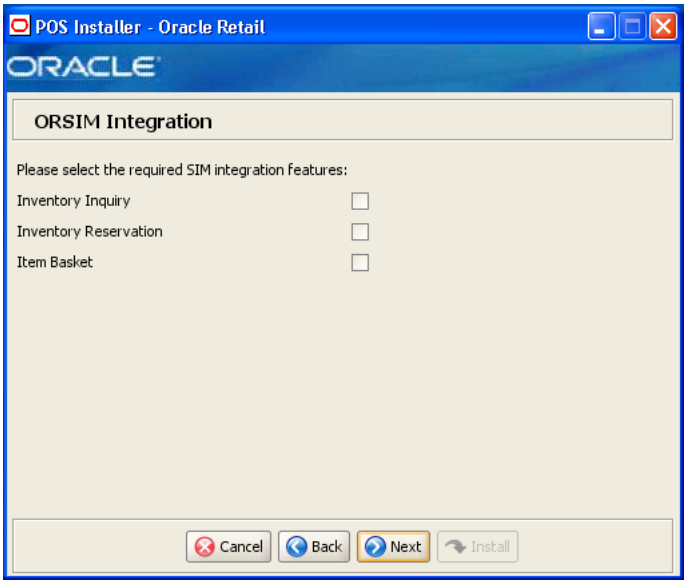
Figure F–25 Enter ORSIM Webservice URL



This screen is only displayed if **Require Oracle SIM Integration** is selected. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enter the Oracle Retail Webservice URL
Field Description	Enter the URL used by the Point-of-Service application to access Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM).
Notes	

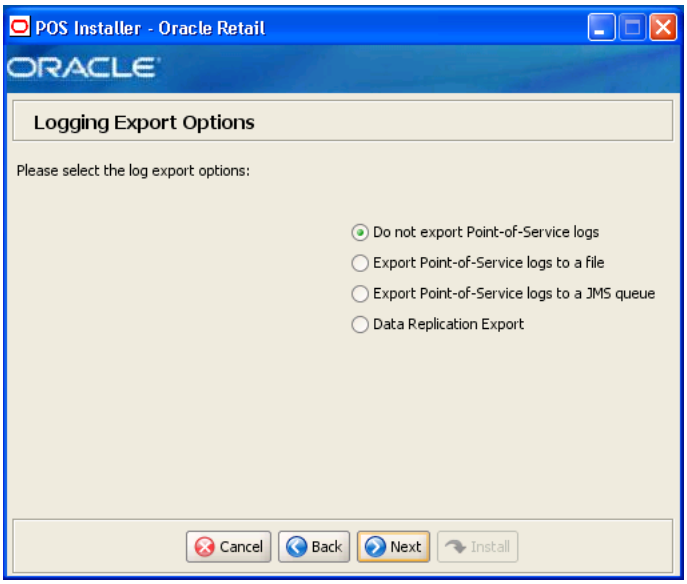
Figure F–26 ORSIM Integration



This screen is only displayed if **Require Oracle SIM Integration** is selected. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select the required SIM integration features
Field Description	Select the Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM) features that will be used in Point-of-Service: ▪ To inquire about inventory using SIM, select **Inventory Inquiry**. ▪ To reserve inventory using SIM, select **Inventory Reservation**. ▪ To enable item baskets created using SIM, select **Item Basket**.
Example	Inventory Inquiry
Notes	

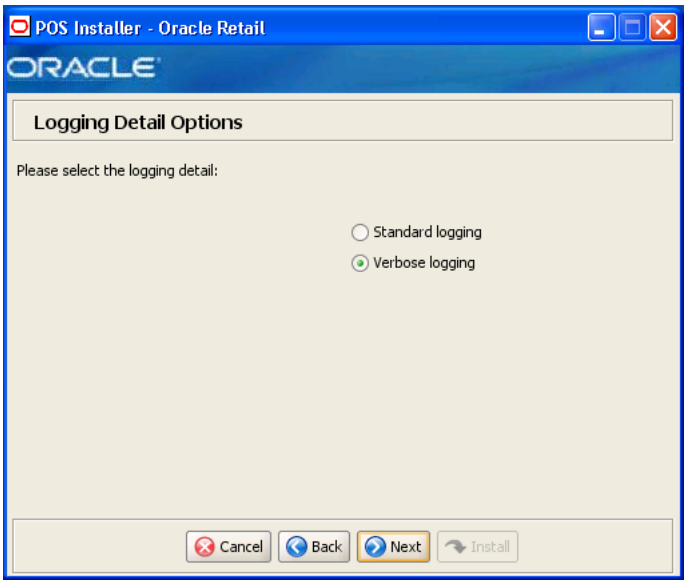
Figure F–27 Logging Export Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Logging Export Options
Field Description	Choose how the log is to be exported. ▪ To not generate any logs, choose **Do not export Point-of-Service logs**. ▪ To export the logs to a file, choose **Periodically export Point-of-Service logs to a file**. ▪ To export the logs to a JMS queue, choose **Periodically export Point-of-Service logs to a JMS queue**. ▪ To have the data pushed from the store to the corporate database using replication, choose **Data Replication Export**. **Note:** If you are using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, you must select **Data Replication Export**.
Example	Do not export Point-of-Service logs
Notes	

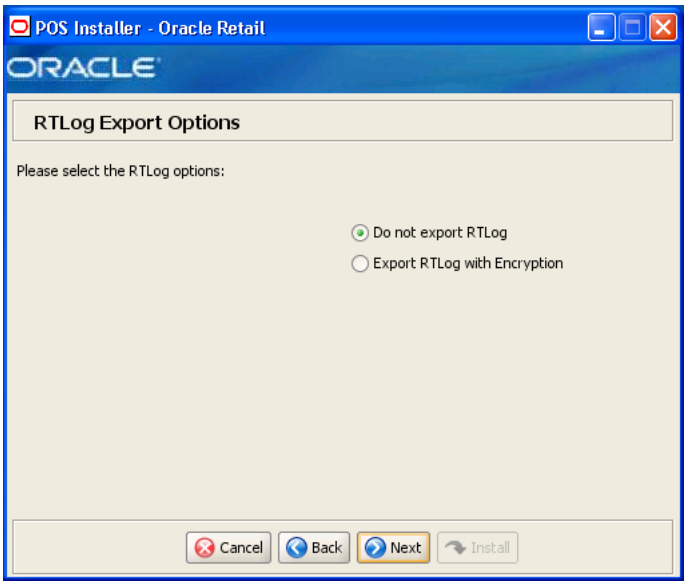
Figure F–28 Logging Detail Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Logging Detail Options
Field Description	Choose the level of client logging. ▪ To only log some of the messages, choose **Standard Logging**. ▪ To log all of the messages, choose **Verbose Logging**.
Example	Verbose logging
Notes	

Figure F–29 RTLog Export Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	RTLog Export Options
Field Description	Choose how the RTLog is to be exported. ▪ To not export the log, choose **Do not export RTLog**. ▪ To export the log, choose **Export RTLog with Encryption**.
Example	Do not export RTLog
Notes	

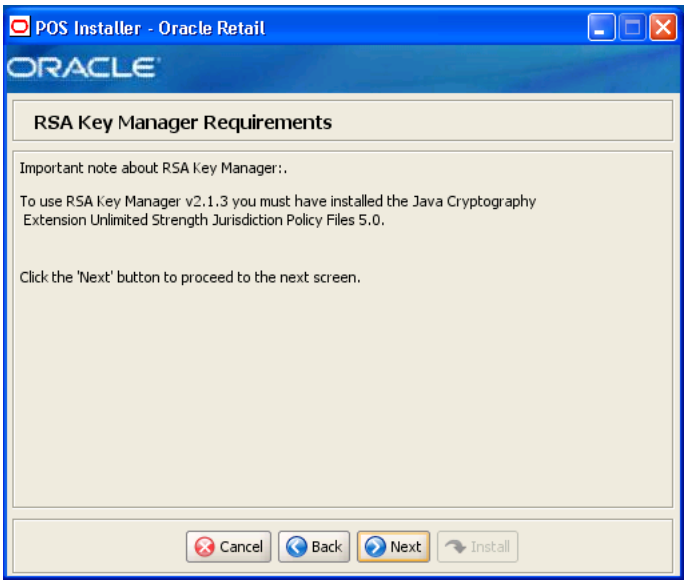
Figure F–30 Security Setup: Key Store Settings

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Hash Algorithm
Field Description	Enter the name of the algorithm used by the Key Store to hash sensitive data.
Example	SHA-256
Notes	

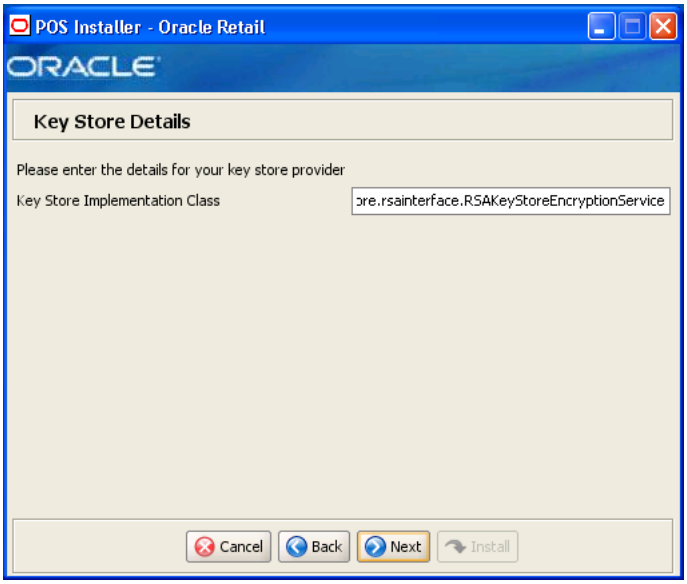
Field Title	Select Key Store Provider
Field Description	Provider for Key Store management. ▪ To use the RSA key management package, select **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3**. The next screen displayed is Figure F–31. ▪ To use the simulated key management package, select **Simulator**. The next screen displayed is Figure F–35. ▪ To use a different key management provider, select **Other**. The next screen displayed is Figure F–37.
Example	RSA Key Manager v2.1.3
Notes	

Figure F–31 RSA Key Manager Requirements



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen. This informational screen explains the requirements to use the RSA Key Manager. Verify that you meet the requirements and then click **Next**.

Figure F–32 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3

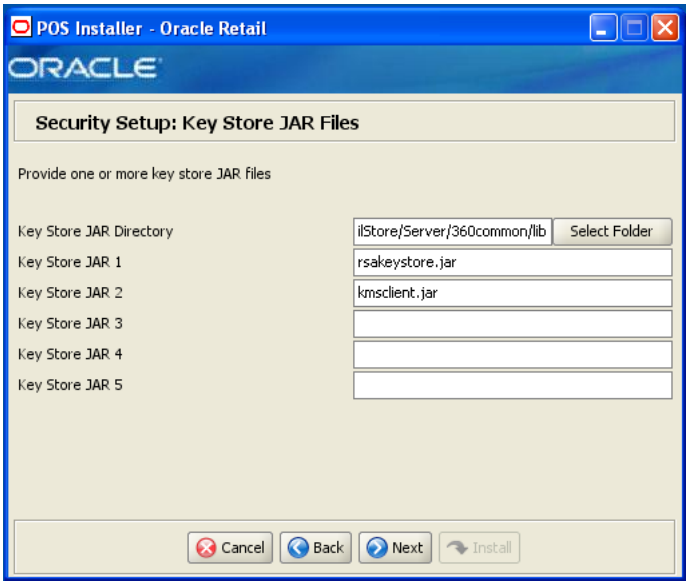


This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the RSA Key Manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.rsakeystore.rsainterface.RSAKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure F–33 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Example	/opt/OracleRetailStore/Server/360common/lib
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	rsakeystore.jar
Notes	

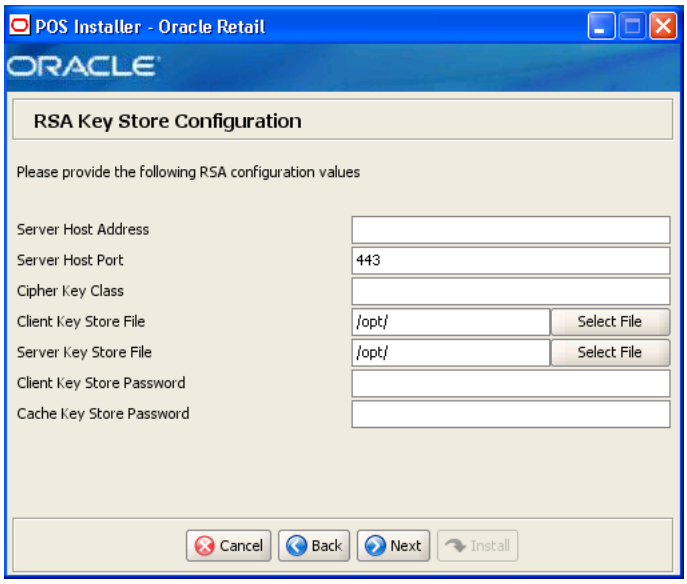
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	kmsclient.jar
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure F–34 RSA Key Store Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Server Host Address
Field Description	Enter the IP address of the RSA server host.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Host Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the RSA server host.
Example	443 443 is the default used by the RSA Key Manager.
Notes	

Field Title	Cipher Key Class
Field Description	Enter the RSA Key Manager cipher key class.
Notes	

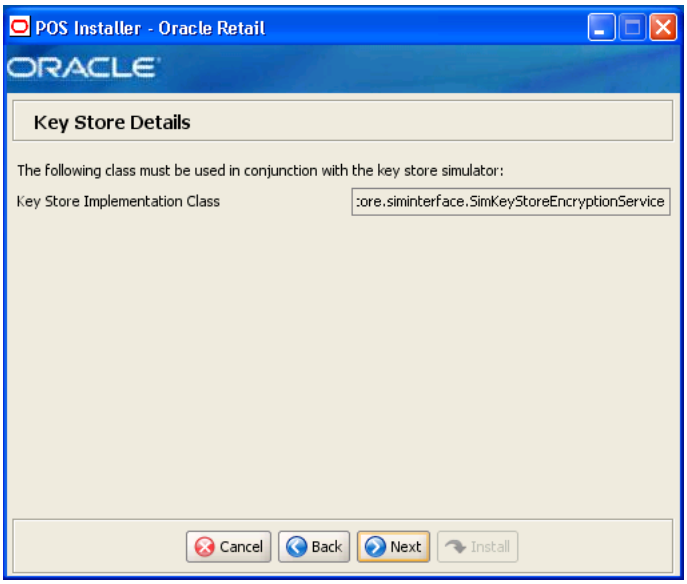
Field Title	Client Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager client Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager server Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Client Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager client Key Store.
Notes	

Field Title	Cache Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager cache.
Notes	

Figure F–35 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager

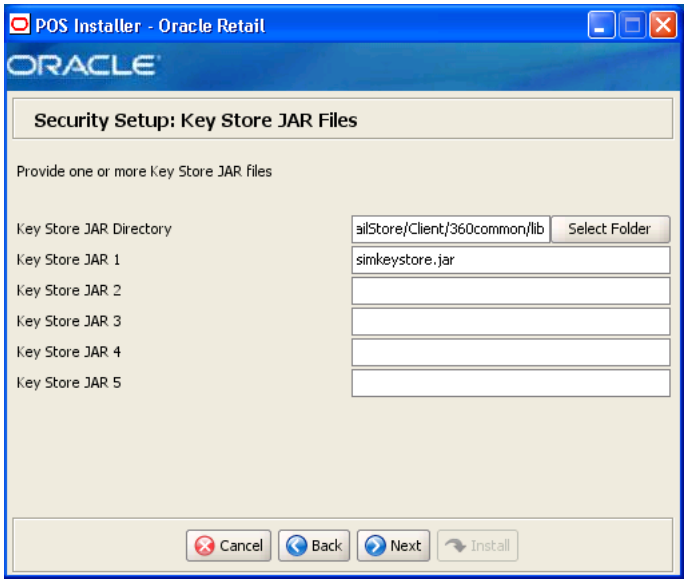


This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the simulated key manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.simkeystore.siminterface.SimKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure F–36 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located. **Note:** If you are using the simulated key management package bundled with Point-of-Service, enter the directory where you saved the `simkeystore.jar` file.
Example	/opt/OracleRetailStore/Server/360common/lib
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	simkeystore.jar
Notes	

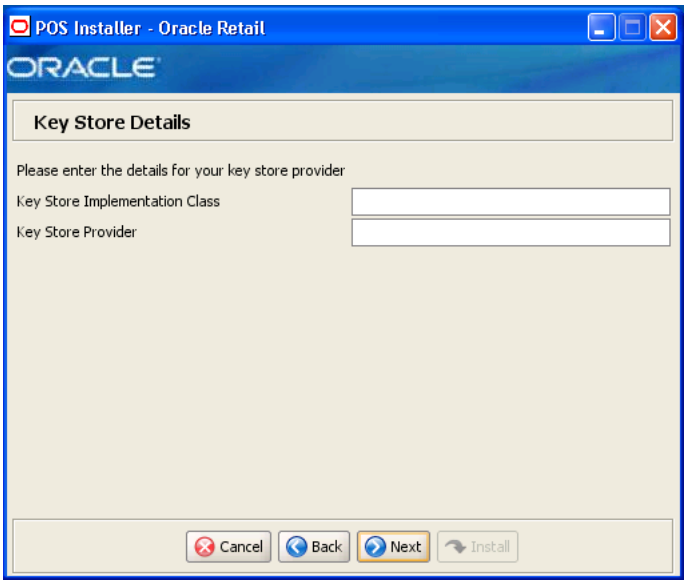
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure F–37 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager



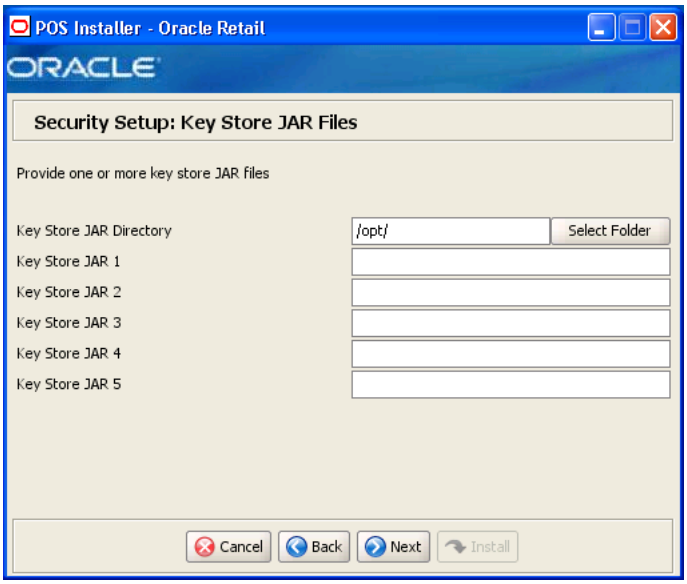
This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the key manager interface.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store Provider
Field Description	Enter the name of the provider for the Key Store.
Notes	

Figure F–38 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

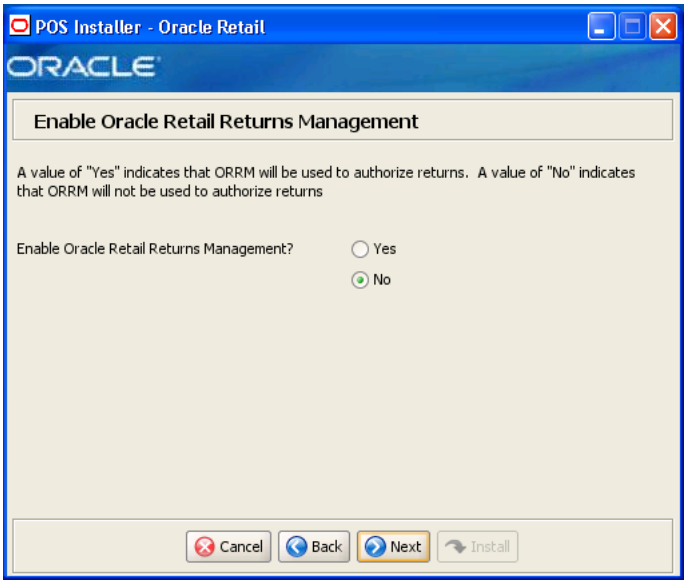
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

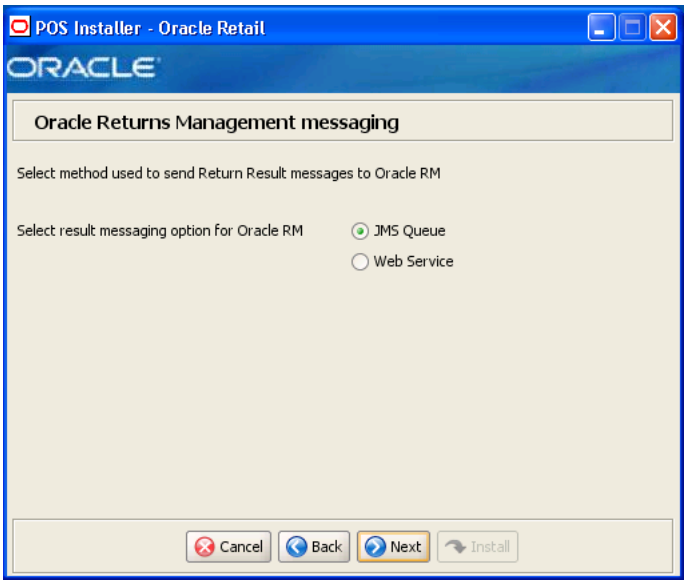
Figure F–39 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose whether Oracle Retail Returns Management is used to authorize returns.
Example	No If No is selected, the next screen displayed is Figure F–44.
Notes	

Figure F–40 Oracle Returns Management Messaging

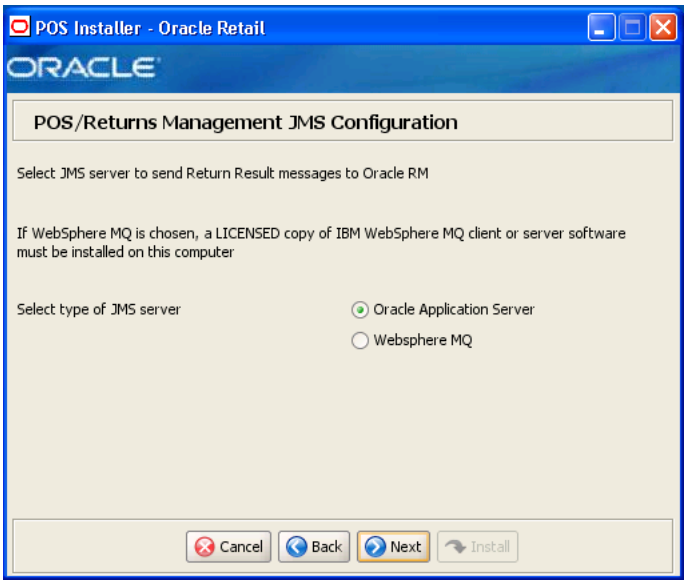


This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select result messaging option for Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose the method to use to send return result messages to Oracle Retail Returns Management. ▪ If you want messages sent to a JMS queue, choose **JMS Queue**. The next screen displayed is Figure F–41. ▪ If you want to use a web service to send the messages, choose **Web Service**. The next screen displayed is Figure F–43.
Example	JMS Queue
Notes	

Figure F–41 POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration

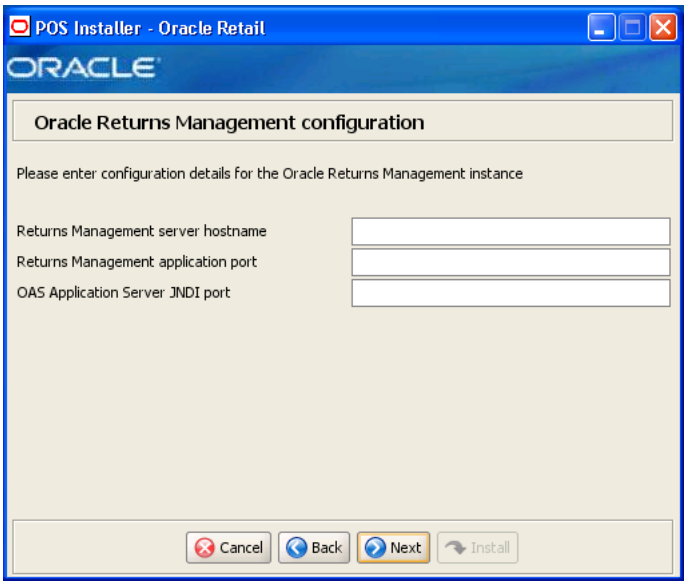


This screen is only displayed if **JMS Queue** is selected on the Oracle Returns Management Messaging screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select result messaging option for Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose the type of JMS server to use to send return result messages to Oracle Retail Returns Management. Choose **Oracle Application Server**.
Example	Oracle Application Server
Notes	

Figure F–42 Oracle Returns Management Configuration for JMS Queue Used for Messaging



This screen is only displayed if **Oracle Application Server** is selected on the POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration screen.

To find the JNDI port number for the Oracle Application Server, the information is available in:

<Oracle Application Server install>/opmn/conf/opmn.xml. Locate the Central Office instance. The port number is defined in the port id="rmi" entry. You can also check the port number by using the following command:

```
<Oracle Application Server install>/opmn/conf/opmn.xml status -l <instance name>
```

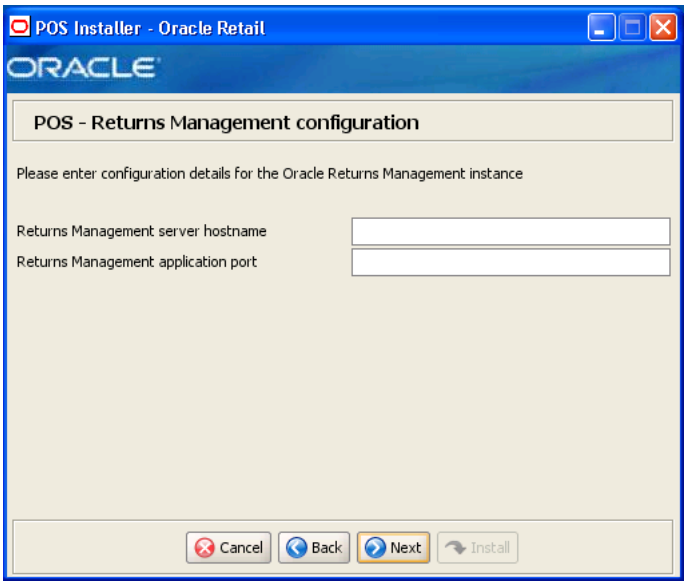
The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Returns Management Server Hostname
Field Description	Enter the name for the Oracle Retail Returns Management server.
Notes	

Field Title	Returns Management Application Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Retail Returns Management application.
Notes	

Field Title	OAS Application Server JNDI Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Application Server.
Notes	

Figure F–43 POS - Returns Management Configuration for Web Service Used for Messaging



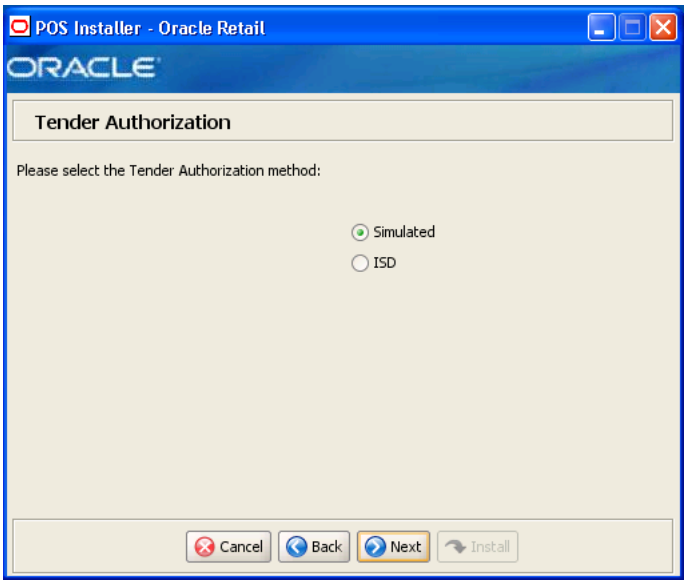
This screen is only displayed if **Web Service** is selected on the Oracle Returns Management Messaging screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Returns Management Server Hostname
Field Description	Enter the name for the Oracle Retail Returns Management server.
Notes	

Field Title	Returns Management Application Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Retail Returns Management application.
Notes	

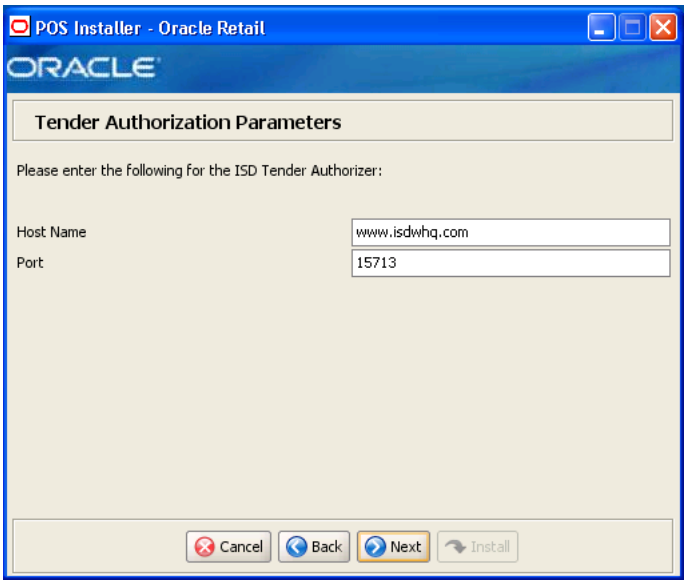
Figure F–44 Tender Authorization



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select Tender Authorizer
Field Description	Choose where tender authorizations are sent. ▪ If approvals do not leave the store server and are based on values and certain numbers, choose **Simulated**. ▪ If approvals are sent to a third party system to approve the authorizations, choose **ISD**. **Note:** Demo installations should use the Simulated option.
Example	Simulated
Notes	

Figure F–45 Tender Authorization Parameters

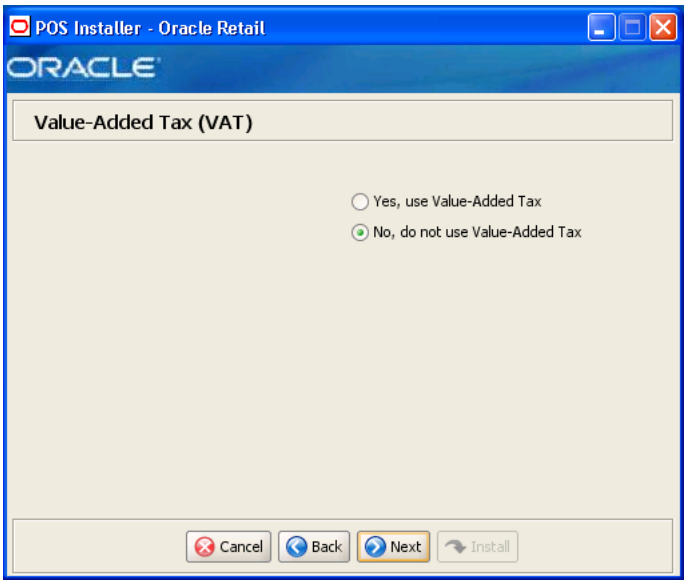


This screen is only displayed if **ISD** is selected for the Tender Authorization. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	**Host Name**
Field Description	Enter the host name of the tender authorizer.
Example	www.isdwhq.com
Notes	

Field Title	**Host Port**
Field Description	Enter the port number used for the communication between the store server and the tender authorizer.
Example	15713
Notes	

Figure F–46 Value-Added Tax (VAT)



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Value-Added Tax
Field Description	Choose whether Value-Added Tax is used.
Example	No, do not use Value-Added Tax
Notes	

Figure F–47 Installation Progress

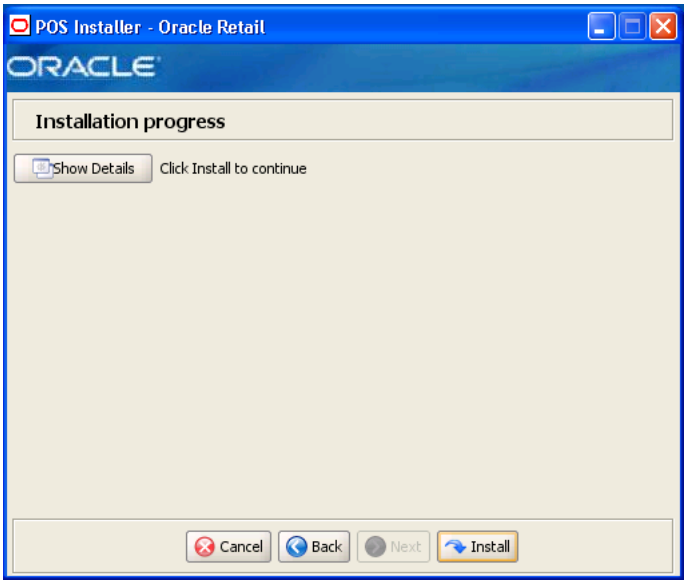
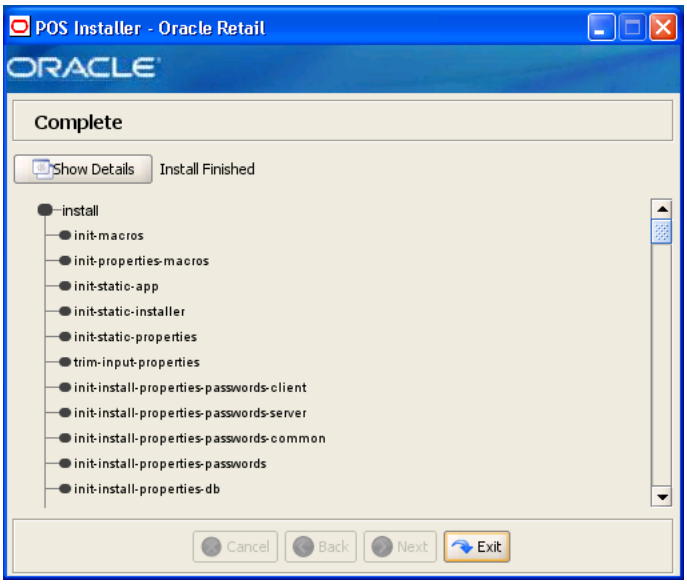


Figure F–48 Install Complete



G

Appendix: Installer Screens for Server Installation for Standalone on Windows

You need specific details about your environment for the installer to successfully install the Point-of-Service application for Standalone on Windows. This appendix shows the screens that are displayed during the installation of the Point-of-Service server. Depending on the options you select, you may not see some screens or fields.

> **Note:** The flow of the screens and selections on the screens shown in this appendix follow the installation of the server using the supported software selections as shown in Chapter 1.

For each field on a screen, a table is included in this appendix that describes the field. If you want to document any specific information about your environment for any field, a Notes row is provided in each table for saving that information.

For the installer screens for a client installation for Standalone, see Appendix H.

Figure G–1 Introduction

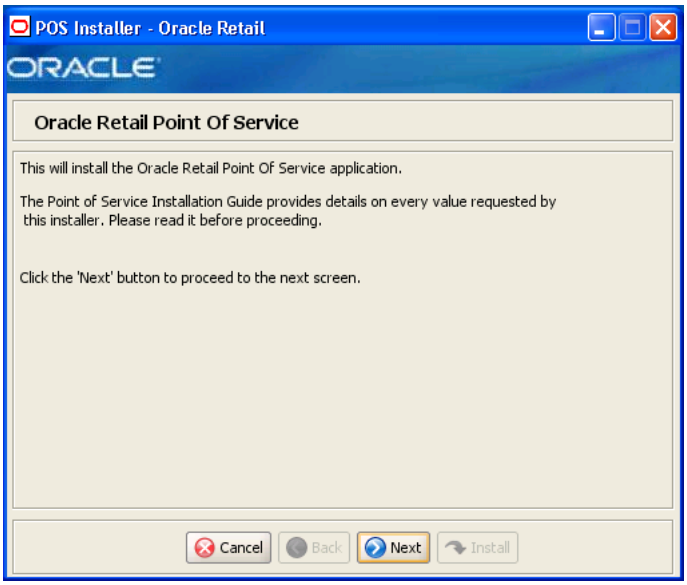


Figure G–2 Previous POS Install

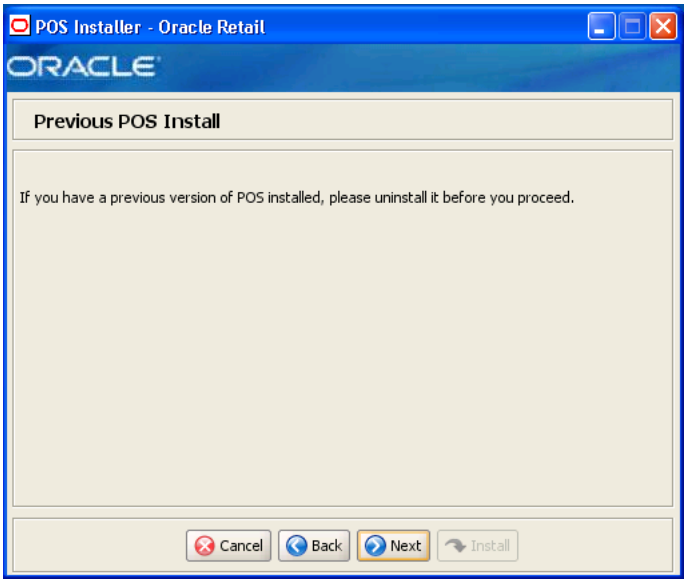
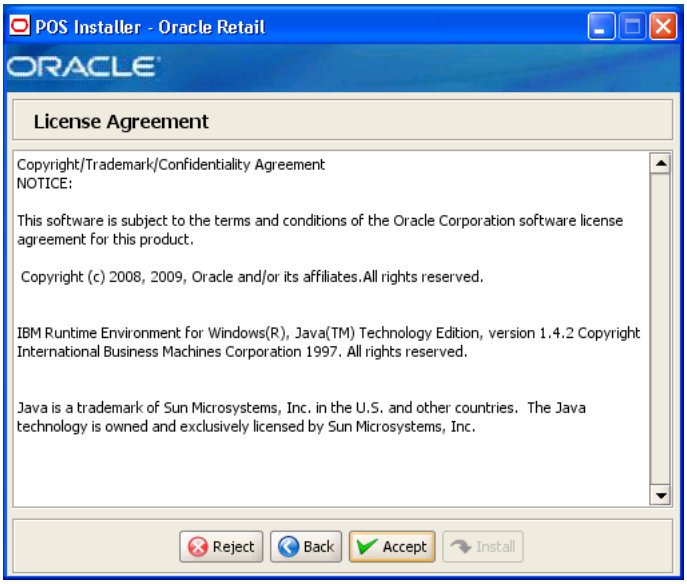
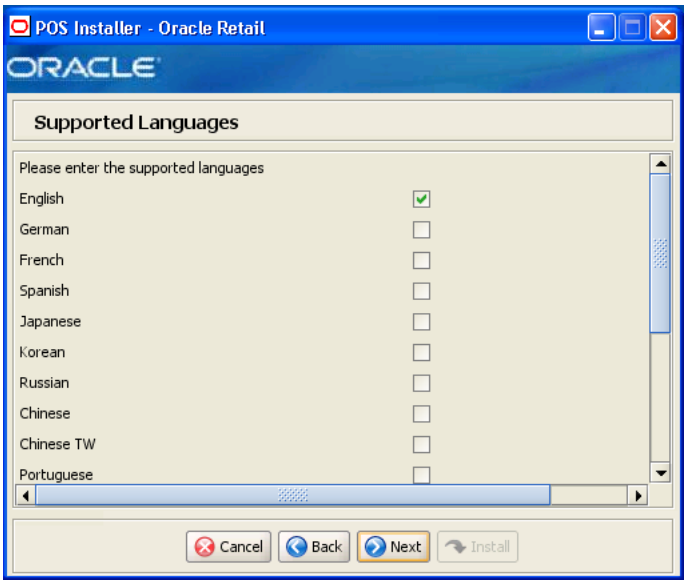


Figure G–3 License Agreement



Note: You must choose to accept the terms of the license agreement in order for the installation to continue.

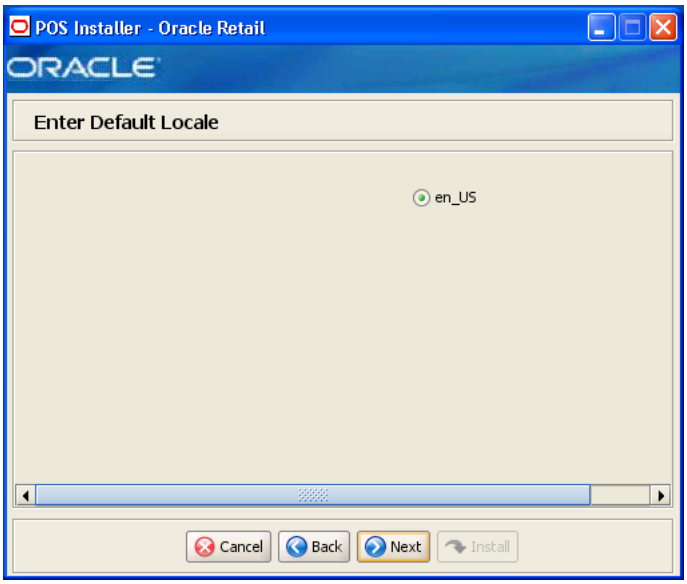
Figure G–4 Supported Languages



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Please enter the supported languages
Field Description	Select the languages that will be available for the Point-of-Service application. The languages selected on this screen determine the available choices on the Enter Default Locale screen.
Example	English
Notes	

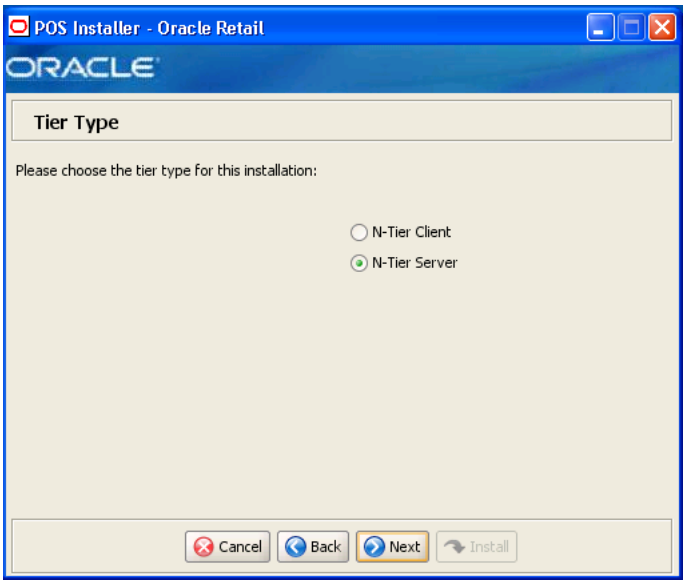
Figure G–5 Enter Default Locale



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enter Default Locale
Field Description	Locale support in Point-of-Service enables the date, time, currency, calendar, address, and phone number to be displayed in the format for the selected default locale. The choices for default locale are dependent on the selections made on the Supported Languages screen. For each selected language, the default locale for that language is displayed on the Enter Default Locale screen. For example, if English and French are selected on the Supported Languages screen, en_US and fr_FR are the available choices for the default locale.
Example	en_US
Notes	

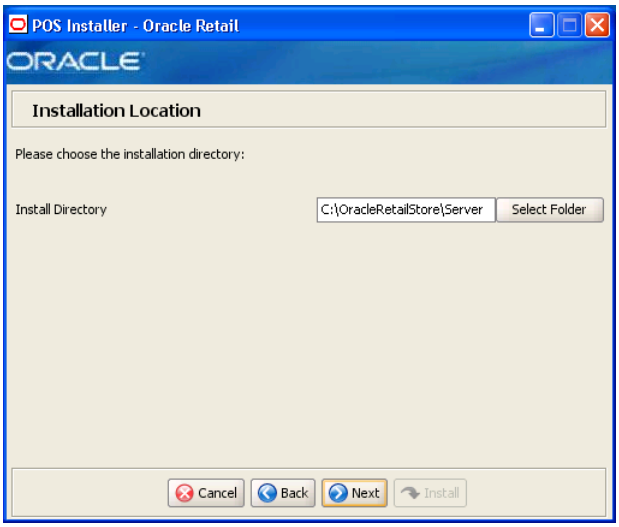
Figure G–6 Tier Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Tier Type
Field Description	Choose the server tier type for this installation. For more information, see "Determining Tier Type" in Chapter 6. To install the N-Tier version of the server, choose **N-Tier Server**.
Example	N-Tier Server
Notes	

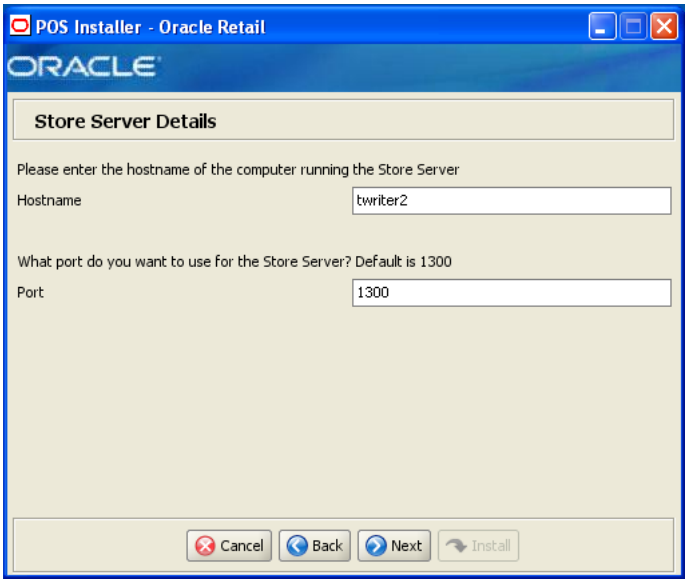
Figure G–7 Installation Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Install Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory into which the Point-of-Service files are copied. The default for the first directory in the path is `OracleRetailStore`. This directory should be the same for all Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions products. When installing for Windows and **N-Tier Server** is selected for the Tier Type, the default installation directory is `OracleRetailStore\Server`. **Note:** The server and the client must not be installed into the same directory. In this guide, *<POS_install_directory>* refers to the selected installation directory for the server or client. Files specific to Point-of-Service are copied to the `\pos` subdirectory of `<POS_install_directory>`.
Example	`C:\OracleRetailStore\Server`
Notes	

Figure G–8 Store Server Details

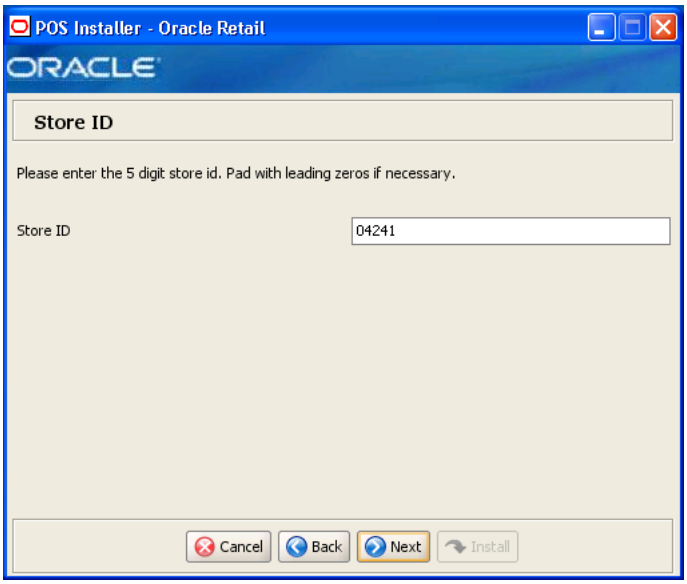


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Hostname
Field Description	Enter the host name of the store server.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

Field Title	Port
Field Description	Enter the port number of the store server used for the communication between the store server and the host computer.
Example	1300
Notes	

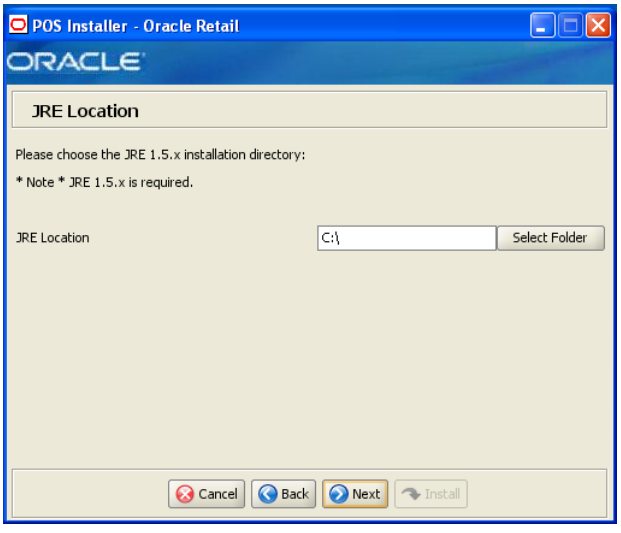
Figure G–9 Store ID



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Store ID
Field Description	Enter the store ID.
Example	04241
Notes	

Figure G–10 JRE Location

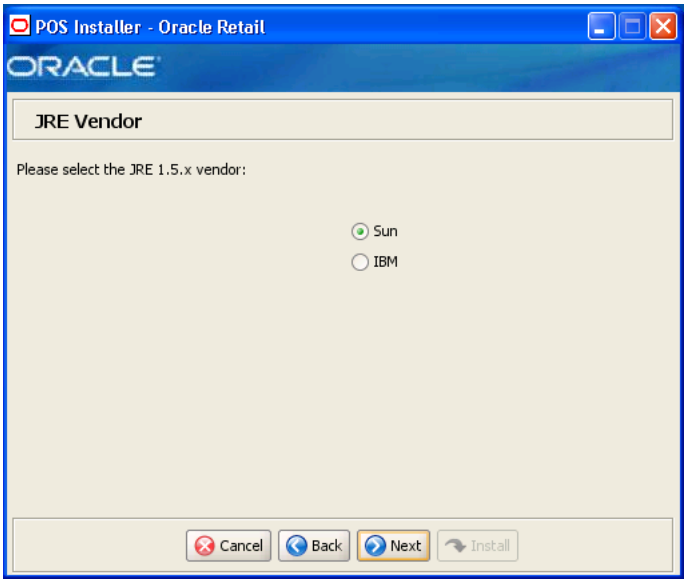


The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Location
Field Description	Enter the location where the JRE is installed.

Field Title	JRE Location
Example	`C:\Java\jre1.5`
Notes	

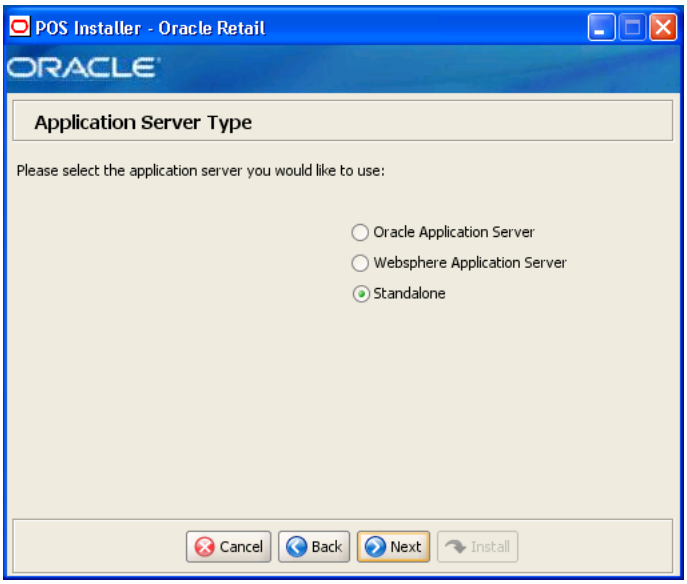
Figure G–11 JRE Vendor



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Vendor
Field Description	Select the vendor for the JRE entered on the JRE Location screen: ▪ Sun ▪ IBM For the Oracle stack, choose **Sun**.
Example	Sun
Notes	

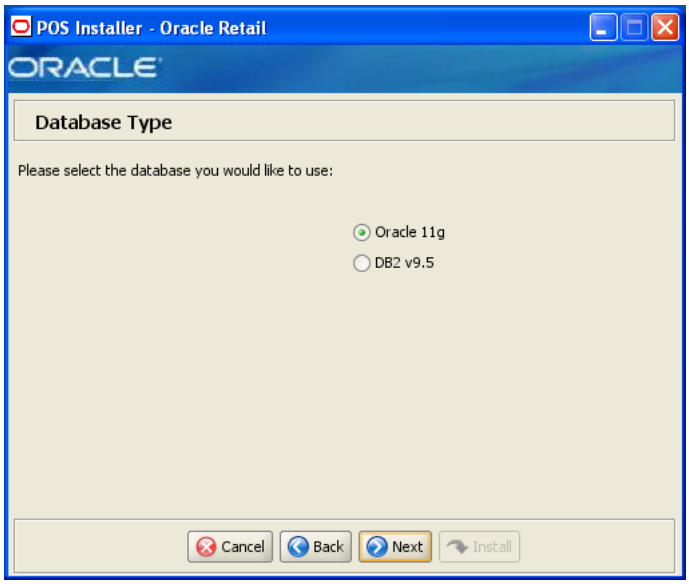
Figure G–12 Application Server Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Application Server Type
Field Description	Select the application server to be used for the store server. ▪ Oracle Application Server ▪ Websphere Application Server ▪ Standalone Choose **Standalone**.
Example	Standalone
Notes	

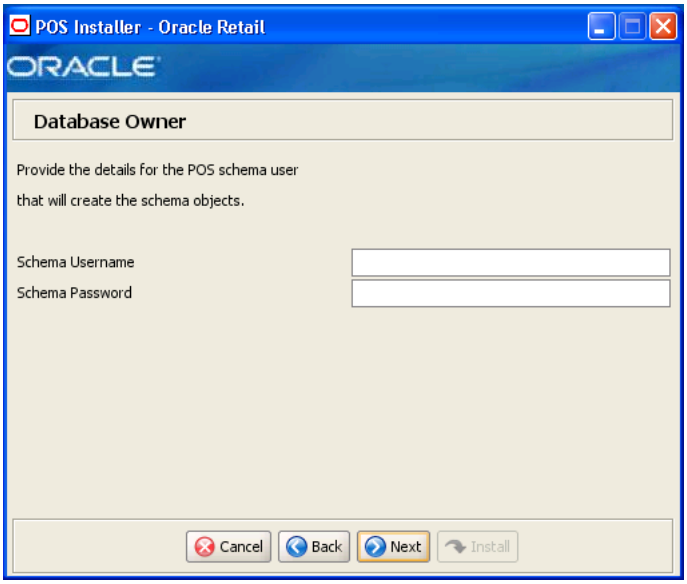
Figure G–13 Database Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Database Type
Field Description	Select the database provider that is used for the OracleRetailStore database. For the Oracle stack, choose **Oracle 11g**.
Example	Oracle 11g
Notes	

Figure G–14 Database Owner

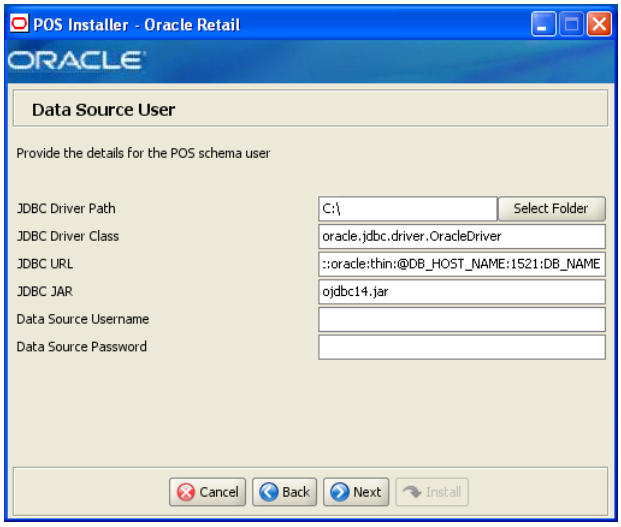


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Schema Username
Field Description	Schema user name that manages the objects in the schema. This user has Create, Drop, and Alter privileges in the schema, that is, Data Definition Language (DDL) execution privileges. For information on creating this user for the Oracle stack, see "Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users" in Chapter 6. **Note:** This user creates the database objects used by Point-of-Service.
Example	DBOWNER
Notes	

Field Title	Schema Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the database owner.
Notes	

Figure G–15 Data Source User for Oracle 11g



This screen is only displayed if **Oracle 11g** is selected on the Database Type screen. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	JDBC Driver Path
Field Description	Choose the path to the jar containing the database driver. This is the jar entered in the JDBC JAR field.
Example	`C:\oracle`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC Driver
Field Description	Enter the database driver class name.
Example	`oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver`
Notes	

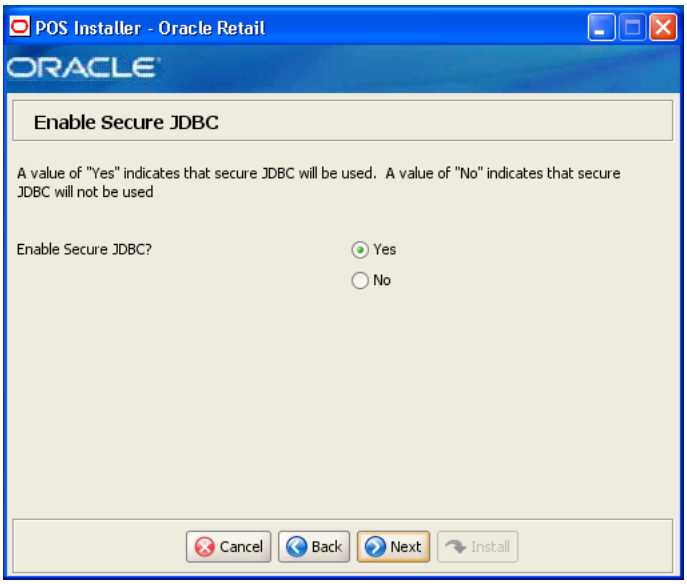
Field Title	JDBC URL
Field Description	Enter the URL used by the Point-of-Service application to access the database schema. For the expected syntax, see Appendix J.
Example	`jdbc:oracle:thin:@myhost:1521:mydatabase`
Notes	

Field Title	JDBC JAR
Field Description	Enter the name of the jar containing the database driver.
Example	`ojdbc14.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Data Source Username
Field Description	Database user name that can access and manipulate the data in the schema. This user can have Select, Insert, Update, Delete, and Execute privileges on objects in the schema, that is, Data Manipulation Language (DML) execution privileges. For information on creating this user, see "Create the Database Schema Owner and Data Source Users" in Chapter 6. **Note:** This schema user is used by Point-of-Service to access the database.
Example	DBUSER
Notes	

Field Title	Data Source Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the data source user.
Notes	

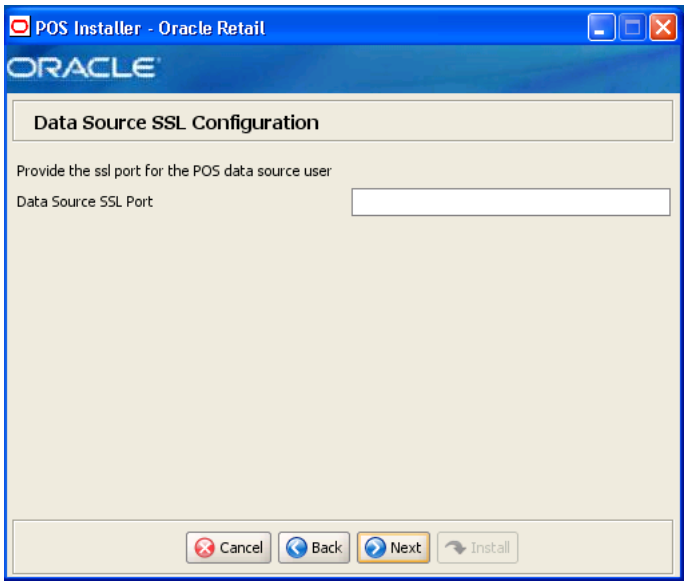
Figure G–16 Enable Secure JDBC



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable Secure JDBC?
Field Description	Select whether secure JDBC is to be used for communication with the database.
Example	Yes
Notes	

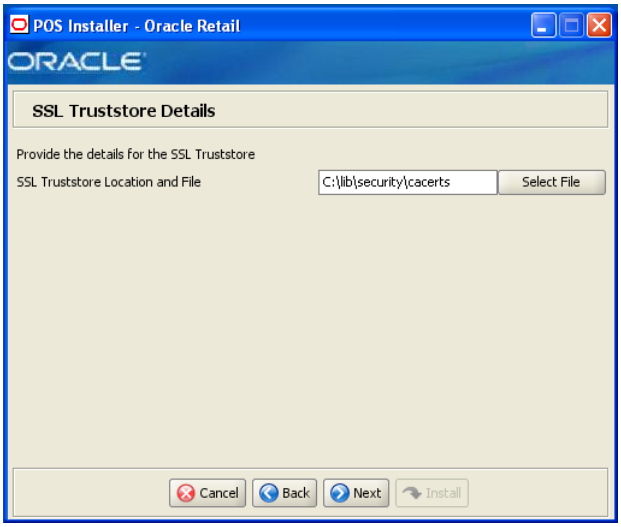
Figure G–17 Data Source SSL Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure JDBC screen. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Data Source SSL Port
Field Description	SSL port used to access the database.
Example	1521
Notes	

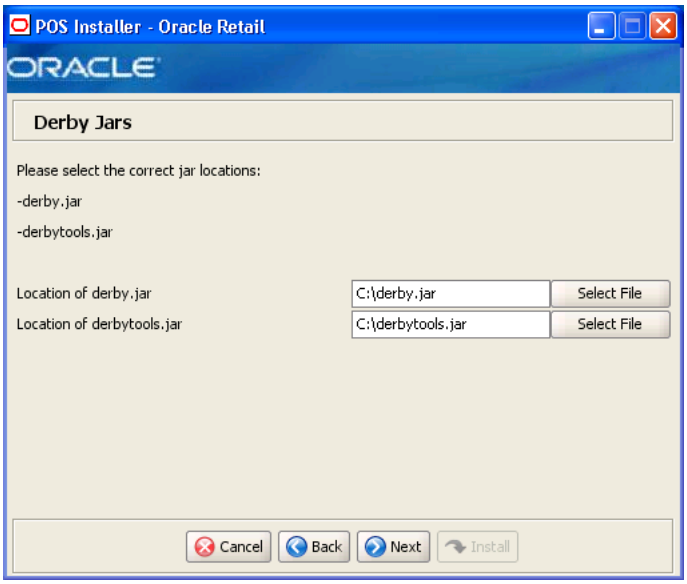
Figure G–18 SSL Truststore Details



This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure JDBC screen and **DB2 v9.5** is selected on the Database Type screen. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	SSL Truststore Location
Field Description	Choose the path to the SSL truststore.
Example	`C:\lib\security\cacerts`
Notes	

Figure G–19 Derby Jars

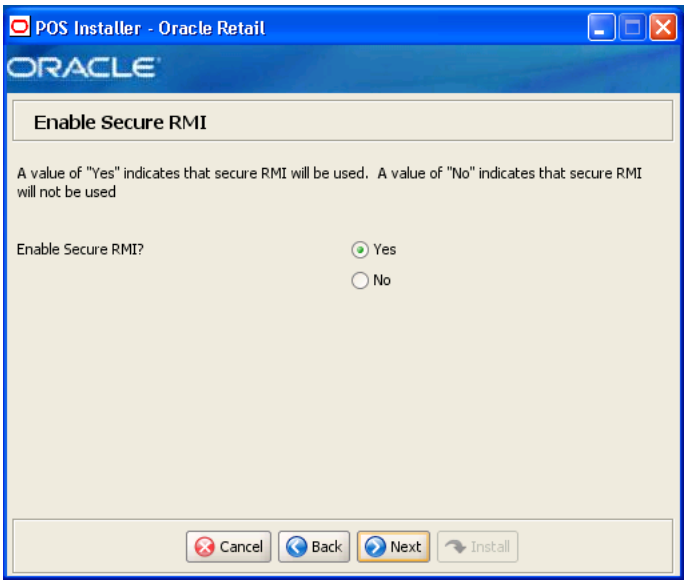


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Location of derby.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derby.jar` file.
Example	`C:\thirdparty\apache-derby-10.2.2\lib\derby.jar`
Notes	

Field Title	Location of derbytools.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derbytools.jar` file.
Example	`C:\thirdparty\apache-derby-10.2.2\lib\derbytools.jar`
Notes	

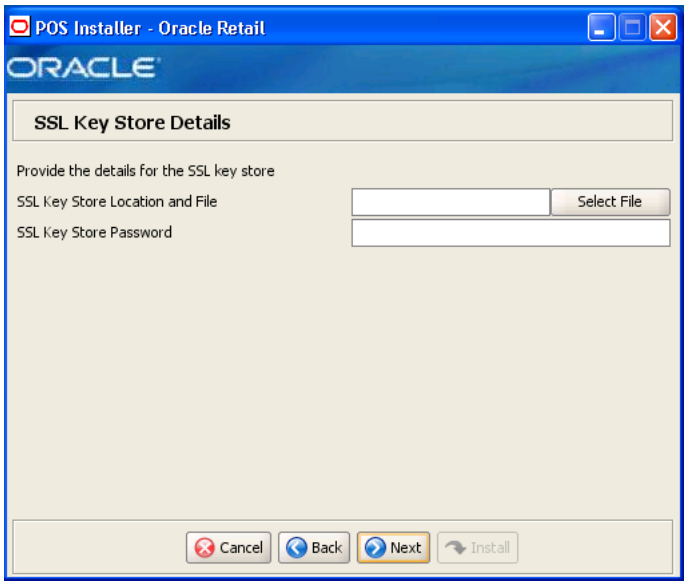
Figure G–20 Enable Secure RMI



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable SecureRMI?
Field Description	Select whether secure RMI is to be used for communication between the store server and registers.
Example	Yes
Notes	

Figure G–21 SSL Key Store Details

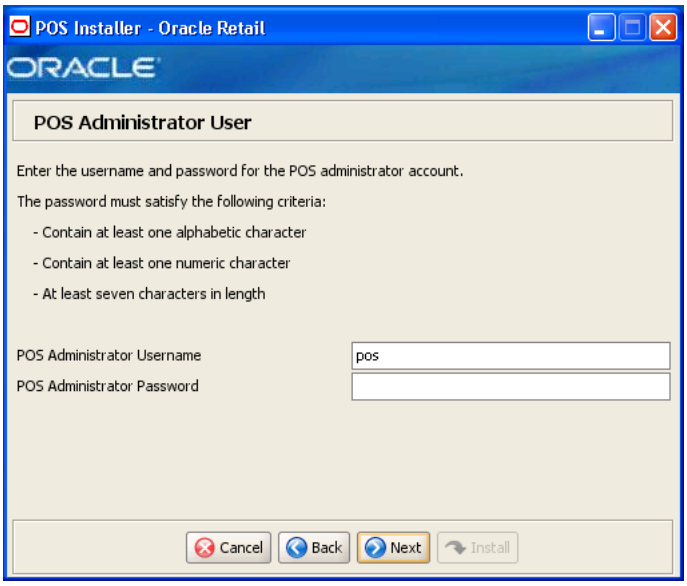


This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure RMI screen. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	SSL Key Store Location and File
Field Description	Choose the path to the SSL Key Store.
Example	`OracleRetailStore\Server\Certificate`
Notes	

Field Title	SSL Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the Key Store.
Notes	

Figure G–22 POS Administrator User

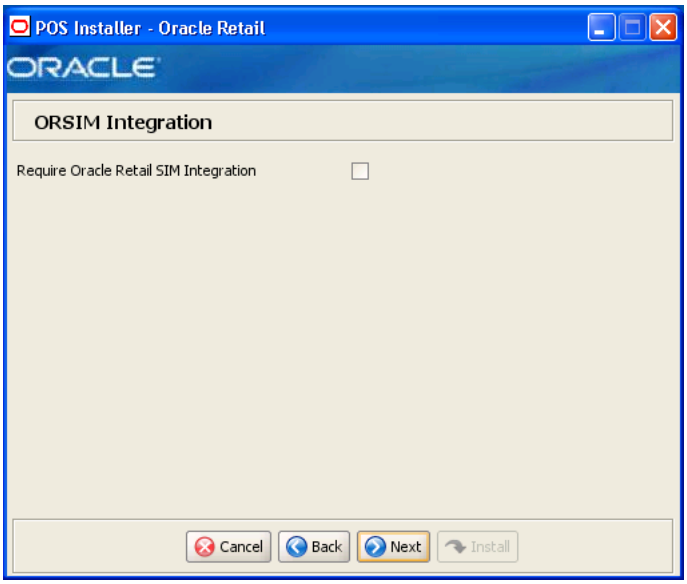


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	POS Administrator Username
Field Description	Enter the user name used for performing Point-of-Service administrative functions.
Example	pos
Notes	

Field Title	POS Administrator Password
Field Description	Enter the password for the administrator user.
Notes	

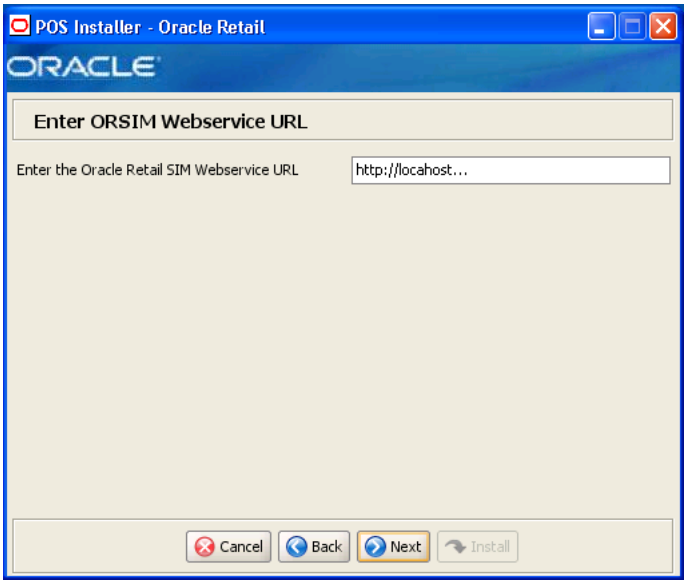
Figure G–23 ORSIM Integration



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Require Oracle Retail SIM Integration
Field Description	Check the box if integration with Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management is required. This box must be checked if the Item Inquiry feature of Point-of-Service is to be used.
Notes	

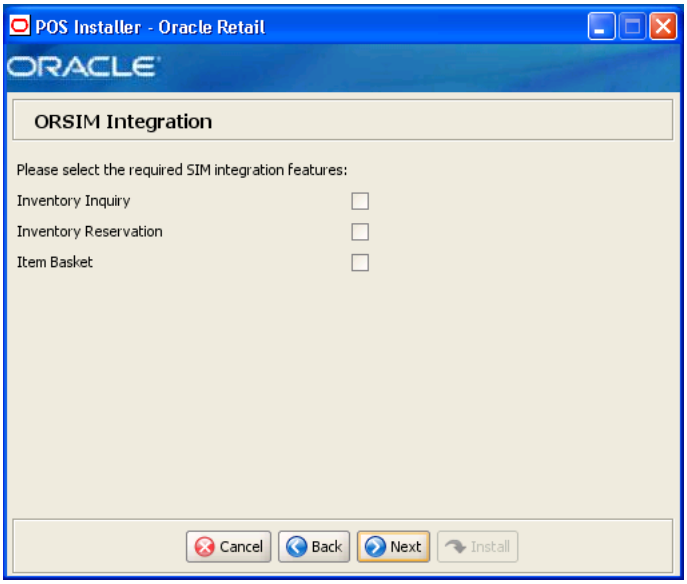
Figure G–24 Enter ORSIM Webservice URL



This screen is only displayed if **Require Oracle SIM Integration** is selected. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enter the Oracle Retail Webservice URL
Field Description	Enter the URL used by the Point-of-Service application to access Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM).
Notes	

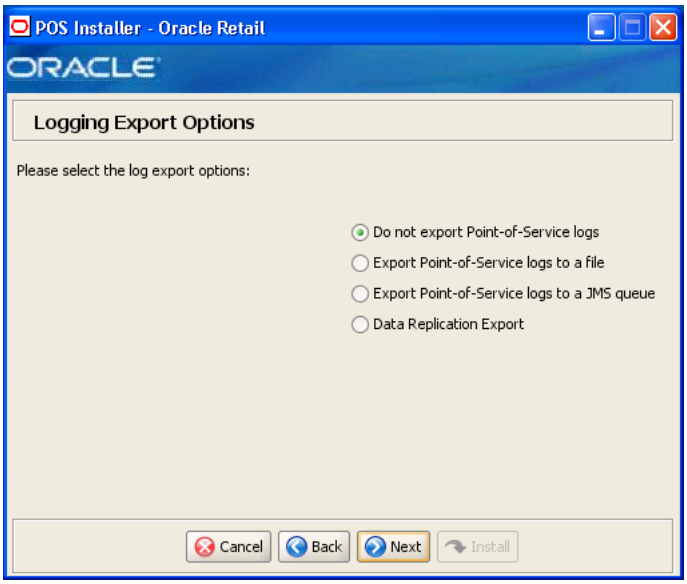
Figure G–25 ORSIM Integration



This screen is only displayed if **Require Oracle SIM Integration** is selected. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select the required SIM integration features
Field Description	Select the Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM) features that will be used in Point-of-Service: ▪ To inquire about inventory using SIM, select **Inventory Inquiry**. ▪ To reserve inventory using SIM, select **Inventory Reservation**. ▪ To enable item baskets created using SIM, select **Item Basket**.
Example	Inventory Inquiry
Notes	

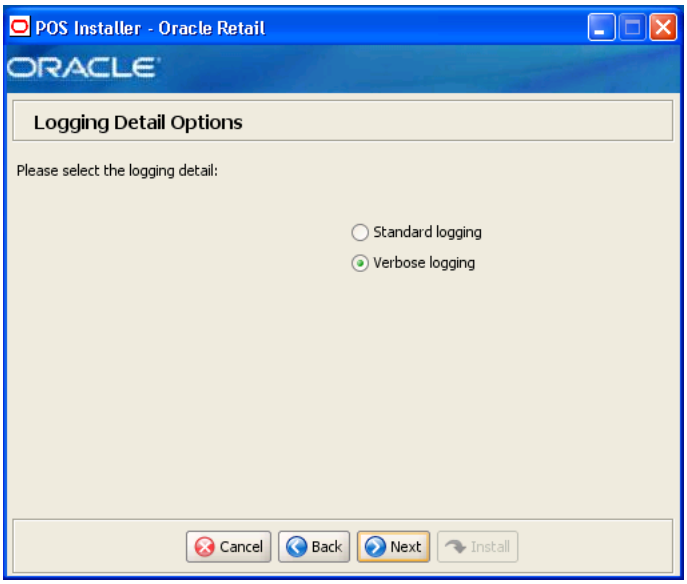
Figure G–26 Logging Export Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Logging Export Options
Field Description	Choose how the log is to be exported. ▪ To not generate any logs, choose **Do not export Point-of-Service logs**. ▪ To export the logs to a file, choose **Periodically export Point-of-Service logs to a file**. ▪ To export the logs to a JMS queue, choose **Periodically export Point-of-Service logs to a JMS queue**. ▪ To have the data pushed from the store to the corporate database using replication, choose **Data Replication Export**. **Note:** If you are using Centralized Transaction Retrieval, you must select **Data Replication Export**.
Example	Do not export Point-of-Service logs
Notes	

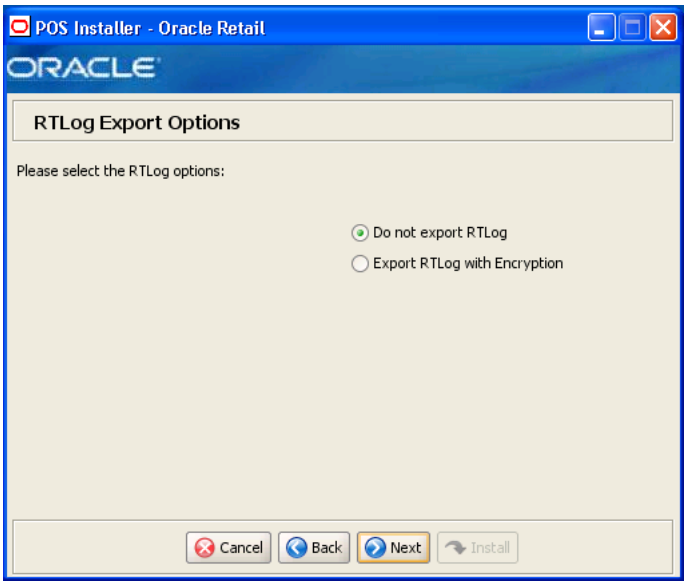
Figure G–27 Logging Detail Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Logging Detail Options
Field Description	Choose the level of client logging. ▪ To only log some of the messages, choose **Standard Logging**. ▪ To log all of the messages, choose **Verbose Logging**.
Example	Verbose logging
Notes	

Figure G–28 RTLog Export Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	RTLog Export Options
Field Description	Choose how the RTLog is to be exported. ▪ To not export the log, choose **Do not export RTLog**. ▪ To export the log, choose **Export RTLog with Encryption**.
Example	Do not export RTLog
Notes	

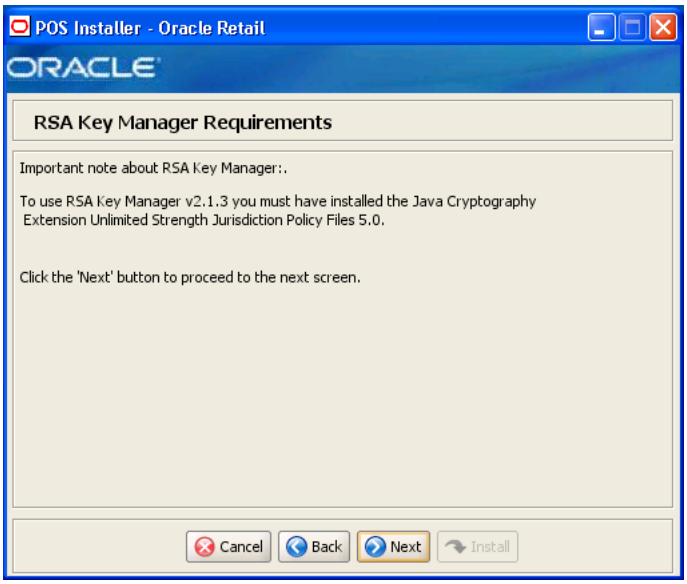
Figure G–29 Security Setup: Key Store Settings

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Hash Algorithm
Field Description	Enter the name of the algorithm used by the Key Store to hash sensitive data.
Example	SHA-256
Notes	

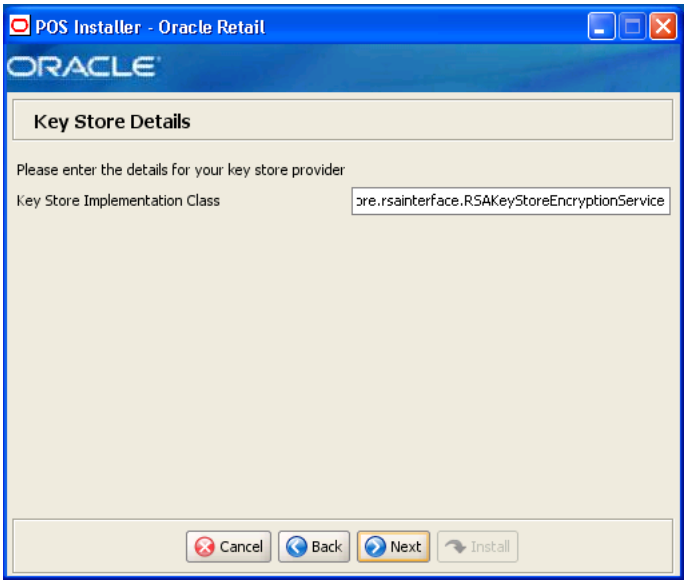
Field Title	Select Key Store Provider
Field Description	Provider for Key Store management. ▪ To use the RSA key management package, select **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3**. The next screen displayed is Figure G–30. ▪ To use the simulated key management package, select **Simulator**. The next screen displayed is Figure G–34. ▪ To use a different key management provider, select **Other**. The next screen displayed is Figure G–36.
Example	RSA Key Manager v2.1.3
Notes	

Figure G–30 RSA Key Manager Requirements



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen. This informational screen explains the requirements to use the RSA Key Manager. Verify that you meet the requirements and then click **Next**.

Figure G–31 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3

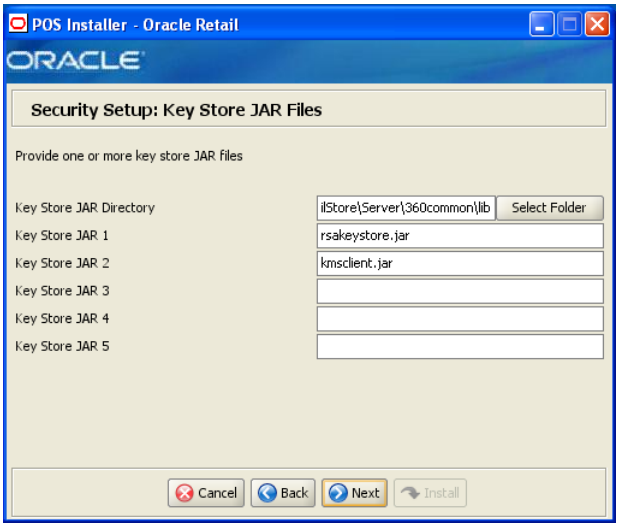


This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the RSA Key Manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.rsakeystore.rsainterface.RSAKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure G–32 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Example	C:\OracleRetailStore\Server\360common\lib
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	rsakeystore.jar
Notes	

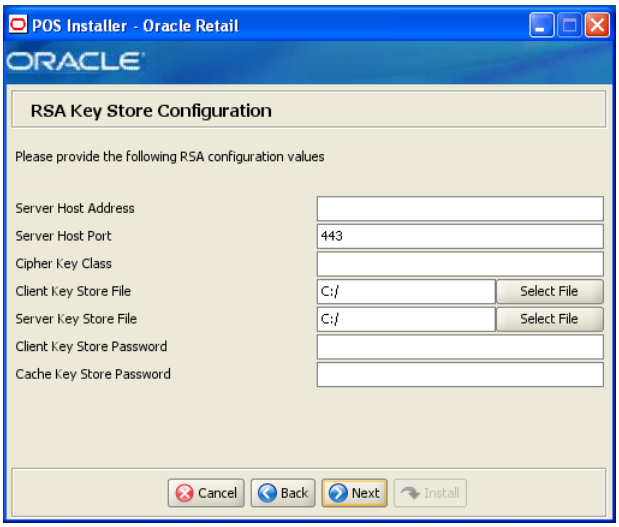
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	kmsclient.jar
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure G–33 RSA Key Store Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Server Host Address
Field Description	Enter the IP address of the RSA server host.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Host Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the RSA server host.
Example	443 443 is the default used by the RSA Key Manager.
Notes	

Field Title	Cipher Key Class
Field Description	Enter the RSA Key Manager cipher key class.
Notes	

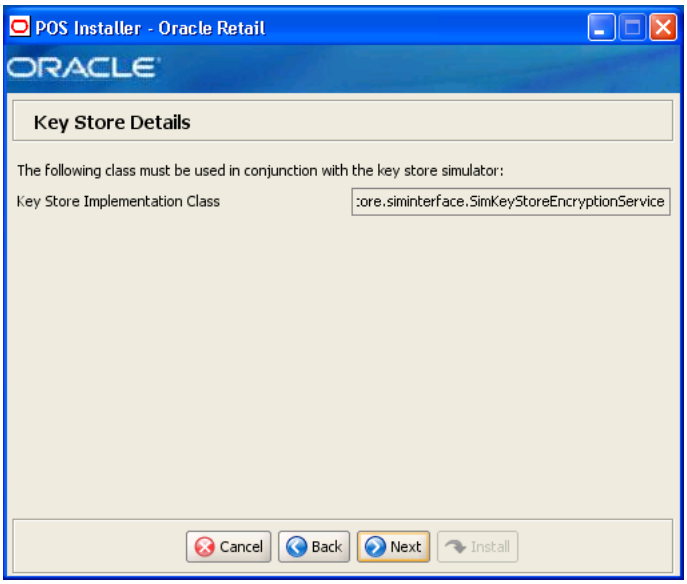
Field Title	Client Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager client Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager server Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Client Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager client Key Store.
Notes	

Field Title	Cache Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager cache.
Notes	

Figure G–34 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager

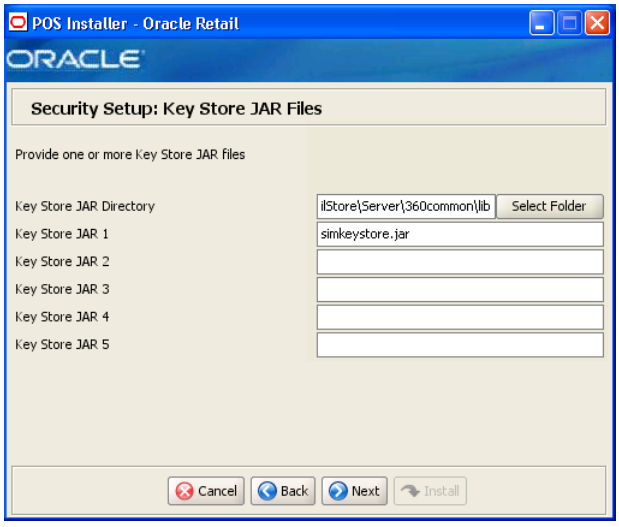


This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the simulated key manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.simkeystore.siminterface.SimKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure G–35 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located. **Note:** If you are using the simulated key management package bundled with Point-of-Service, enter the directory where you saved the `simkeystore.jar` file.
Example	C:\OracleRetailStore\Server\360common\lib
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	simkeystore.jar
Notes	

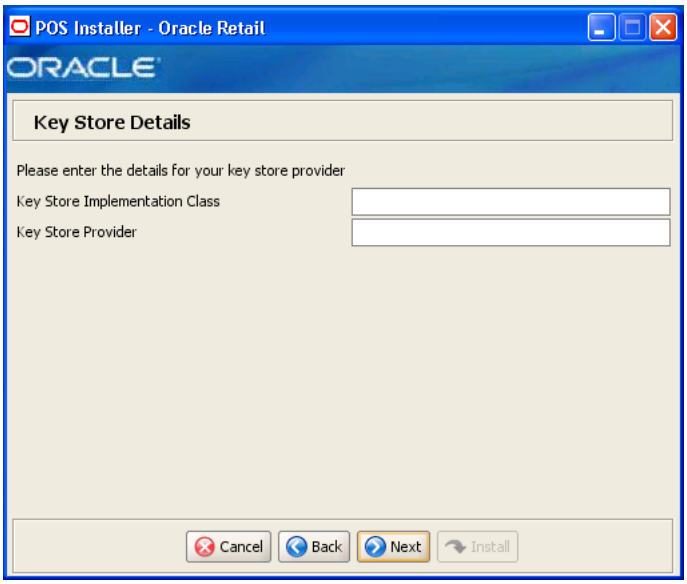
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure G–36 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager



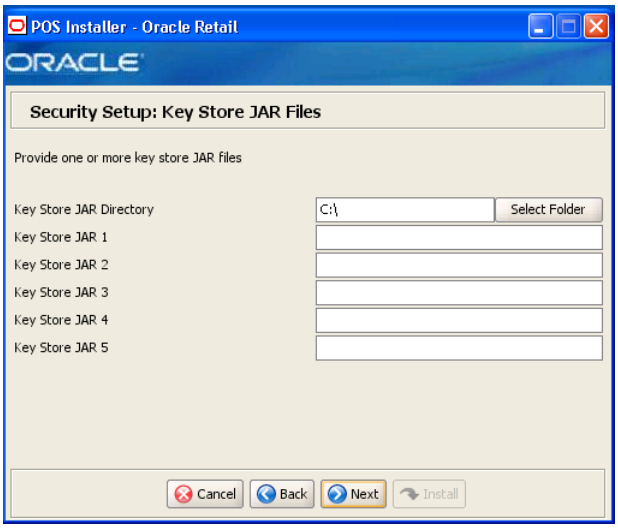
This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the key manager interface.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store Provider
Field Description	Enter the name of the provider for the Key Store.
Notes	

Figure G–37 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

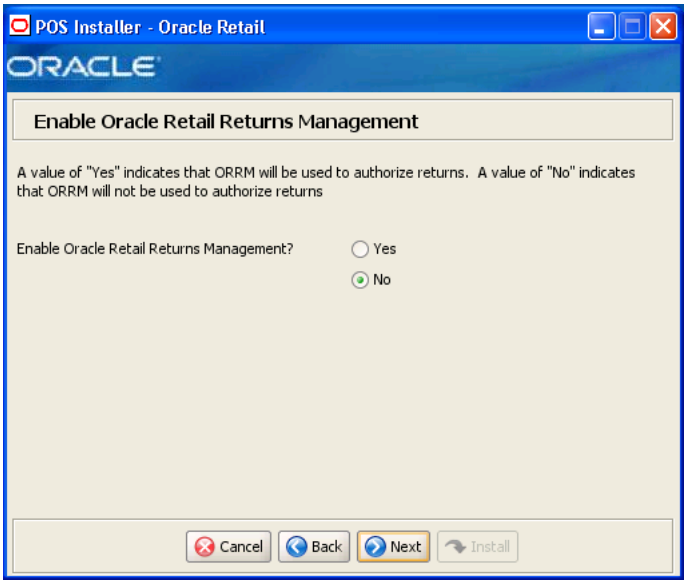
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

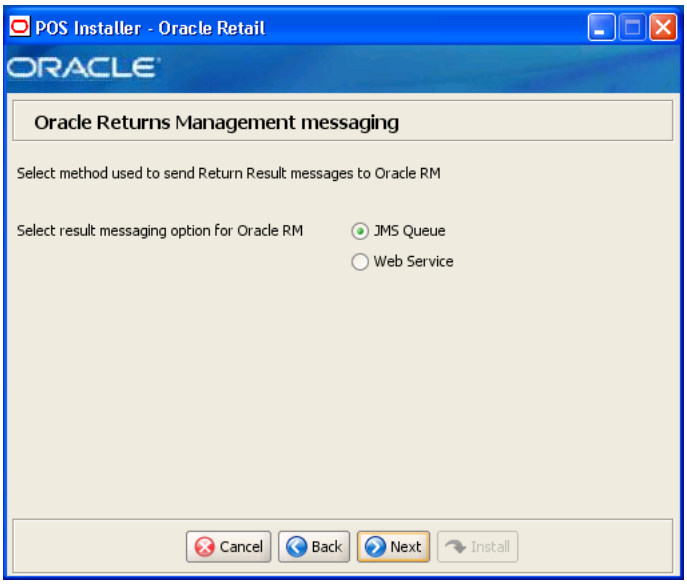
Figure G–38 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose whether Oracle Retail Returns Management is used to authorize returns.
Example	No If No is selected, the next screen displayed is Figure G–43.
Notes	

Figure G–39 Oracle Returns Management Messaging

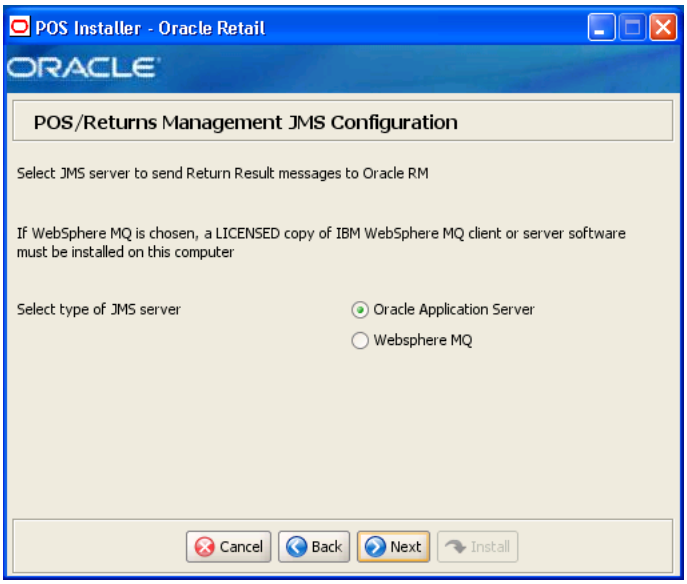


This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select result messaging option for Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose the method to use to send return result messages to Oracle Retail Returns Management. ▪ If you want messages sent to a JMS queue, choose **JMS Queue**. The next screen displayed is Figure G–40. ▪ If you want to use a web service to send the messages, choose **Web Service**. The next screen displayed is Figure G–42.
Example	JMS Queue
Notes	

Figure G–40 POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration

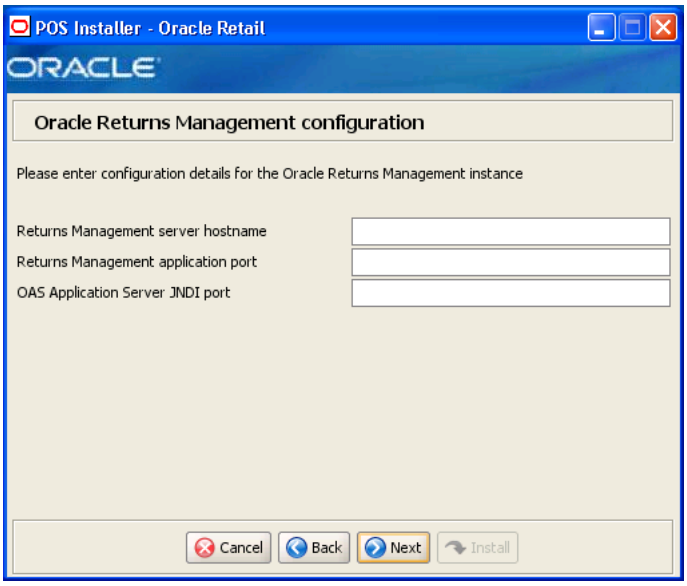


This screen is only displayed if **JMS Queue** is selected on the Oracle Returns Management Messaging screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select result messaging option for Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose the type of JMS server to use to send return result messages to Oracle Retail Returns Management. Choose **Oracle Application Server**.
Example	Oracle Application Server
Notes	

Figure G–41 Oracle Returns Management Configuration for JMS Queue Used for Messaging



This screen is only displayed if **Oracle Application Server** is selected on the POS/Returns Management JMS Configuration screen.

To find the JNDI port number for the Oracle Application Server, the information is available in:

<Oracle Application Server install>\opmn\conf\opmn.xml. Locate the Central Office instance. The port number is defined in the `port id="rmi"` entry. You can also check the port number by using the following command:

```
<Oracle Application Server install>\opmn\conf\opmn.xml status -l <instance name>
```

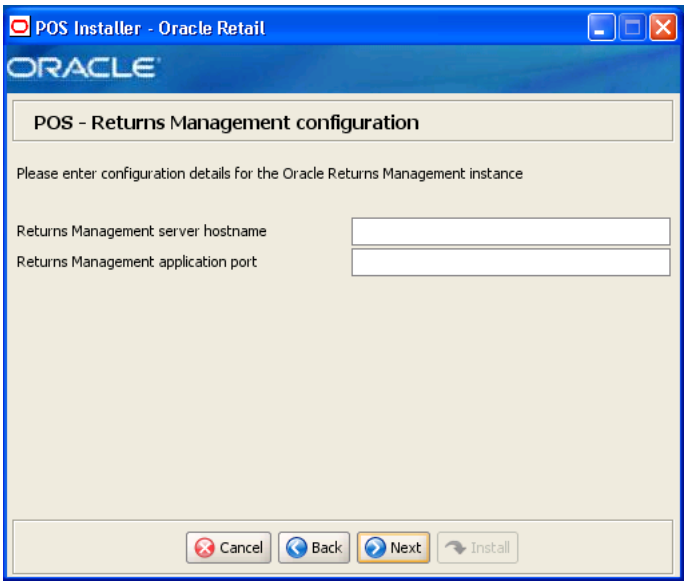
The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Returns Management Server Hostname
Field Description	Enter the name for the Oracle Retail Returns Management server.
Notes	

Field Title	Returns Management Application Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Retail Returns Management application.
Notes	

Field Title	OAS Application Server JNDI Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Application Server.
Notes	

Figure G–42 POS - Returns Management Configuration for Web Service Used for Messaging



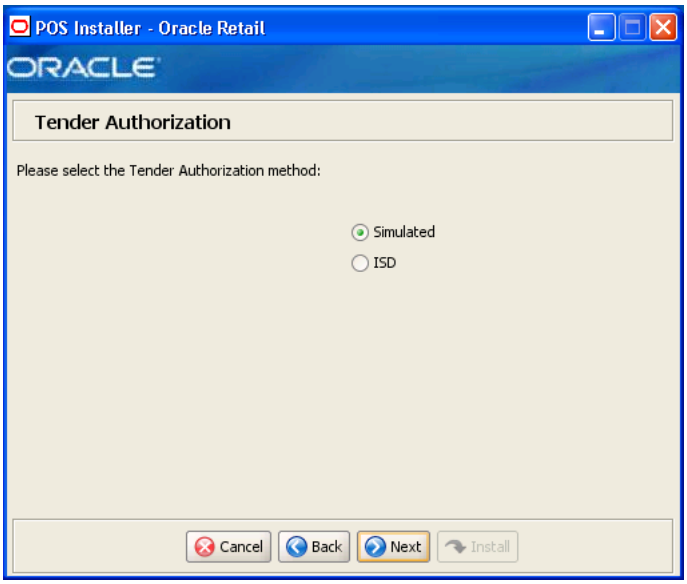
This screen is only displayed if **Web Service** is selected on the Oracle Returns Management Messaging screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Returns Management Server Hostname
Field Description	Enter the name for the Oracle Retail Returns Management server.
Notes	

Field Title	Returns Management Application Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the Oracle Retail Returns Management application.
Notes	

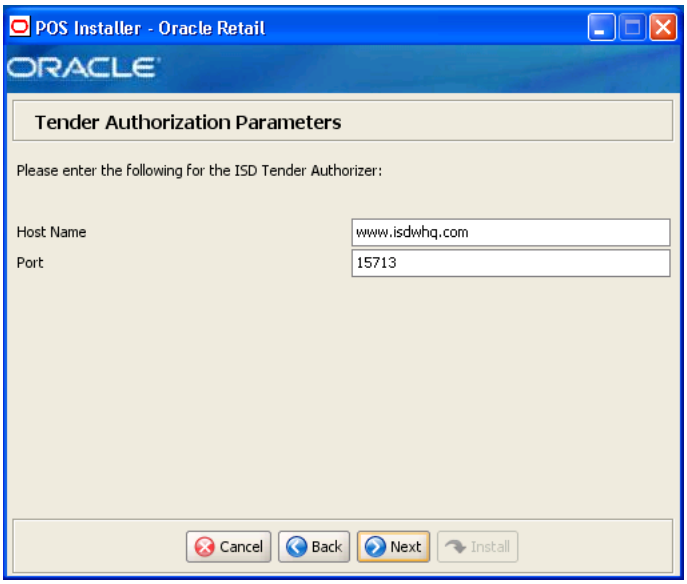
Figure G–43 Tender Authorization



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select Tender Authorizer
Field Description	Choose where tender authorizations are sent. ▪ If approvals do not leave the store server and are based on values and certain numbers, choose **Simulated**. ▪ If approvals are sent to a third party system to approve the authorizations, choose **ISD**. **Note:** Demo installations should use the Simulated option.
Example	Simulated
Notes	

Figure G–44 Tender Authorization Parameters

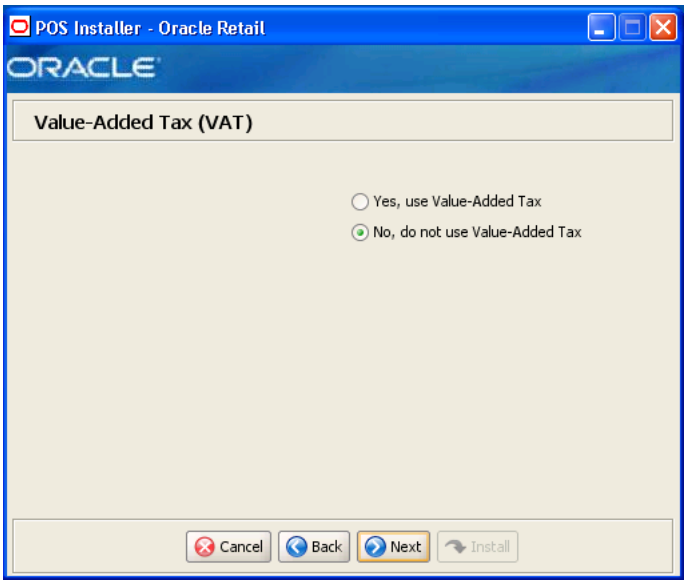


This screen is only displayed if **ISD** is selected for the Tender Authorization. The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	**Host Name**
Field Description	Enter the host name of the tender authorizer.
Example	www.isdwhq.com
Notes	

Field Title	**Host Port**
Field Description	Enter the port number used for the communication between the store server and the tender authorizer.
Example	15713
Notes	

Figure G–45 Value-Added Tax (VAT)



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Value-Added Tax
Field Description	Choose whether Value-Added Tax is used.
Example	No, do not use Value-Added Tax
Notes	

Figure G–46 Installation Progress

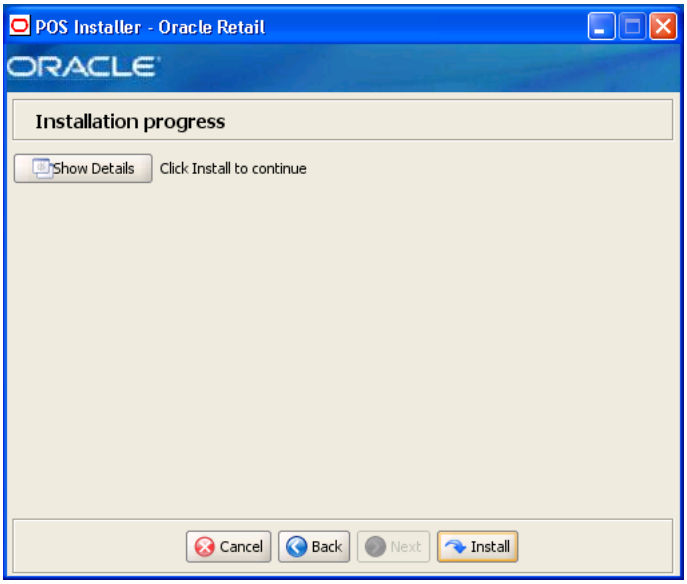
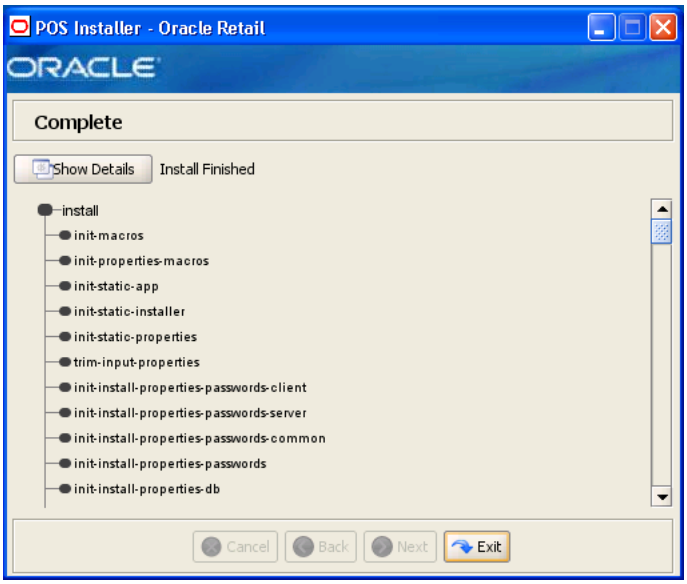


Figure G–47 Install Complete



H

Appendix: Installer Screens for Client Installation for Standalone

You need the following details about your environment for the installer to successfully install the Point-of-Service application. This appendix shows the screens that are displayed during the installation of the Point-of-Service for Standalone. Depending on the options you select, you may not see some screens or fields.

> **Note:** The flow of the screens and selections on the screens shown in this appendix follow the installation of the client using the supported software and hardware selections as shown in Chapter 1.

For each field on a screen, a table is included in this appendix that describes the field. If you want to document any specific information about your environment for any field, a Notes row is provided in each table for saving that information.

For the installer screens for a server installation for Standalone, see Appendix F.

Figure H–1 Introduction

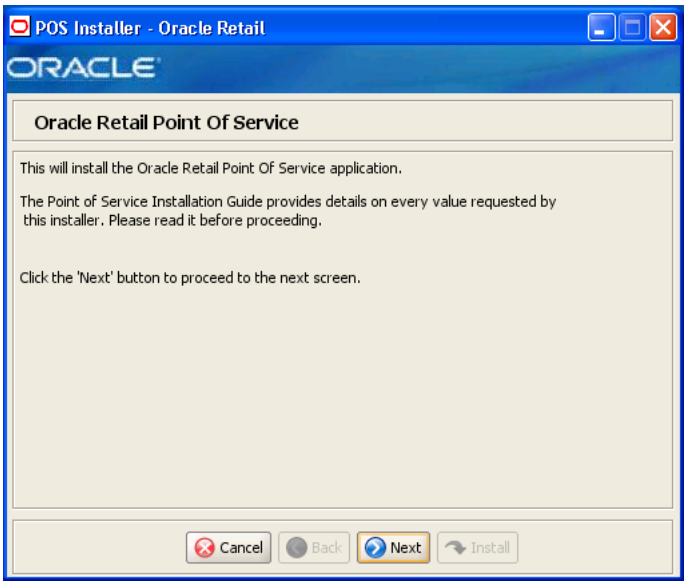


Figure H–2 Previous POS Install

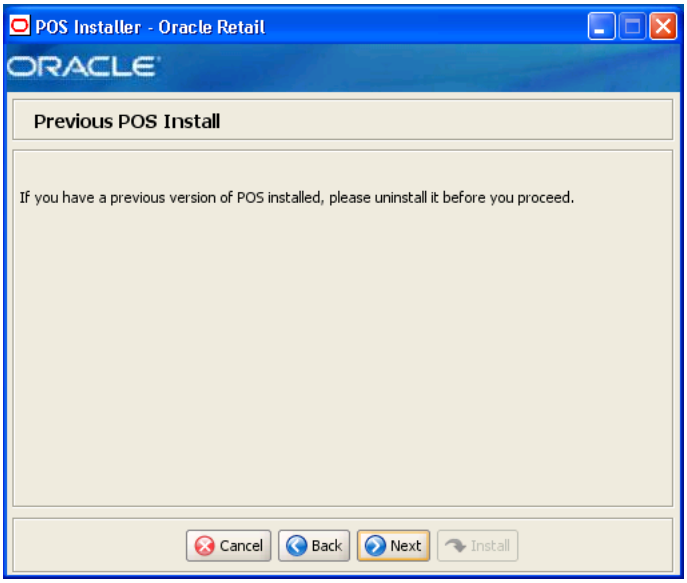
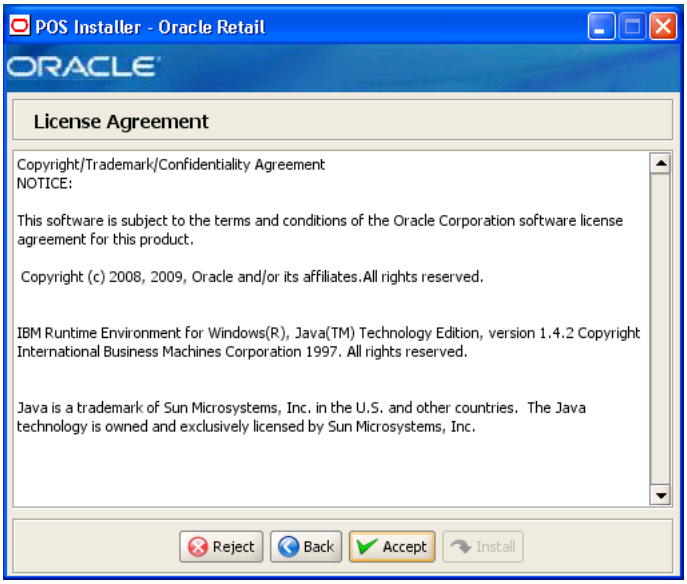
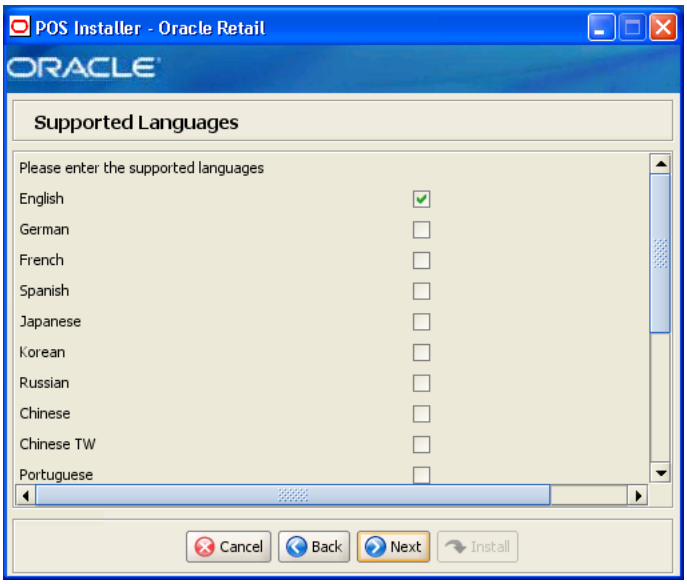


Figure H–3 License Agreement



Note: You must choose to accept the terms of the license agreement in order for the installation to continue.

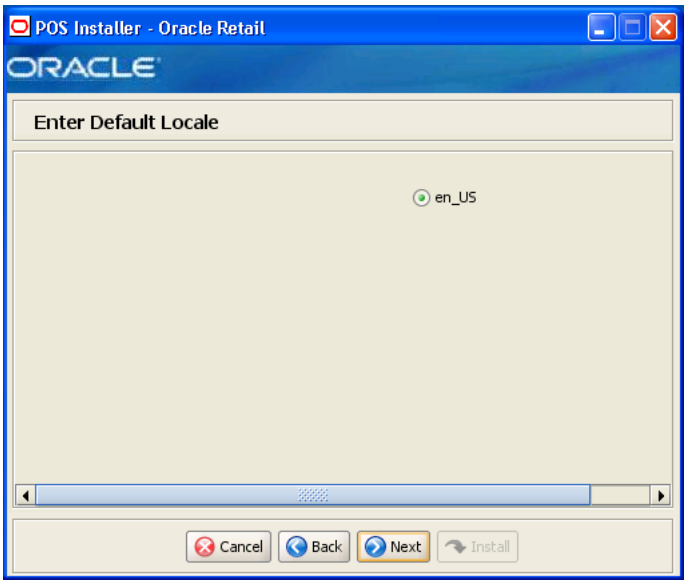
Figure H–4 Supported Languages



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Please enter the supported languages
Field Description	Select the languages that will be available for the Point-of-Service application. The languages selected on this screen determine the available choices on the Enter Default Locale screen.
Example	English
Notes	

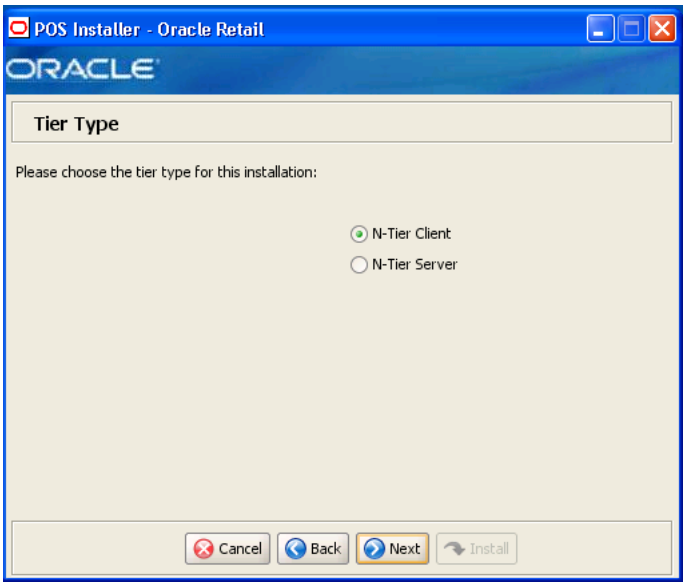
Figure H–5 Enter Default Locale



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enter Default Locale
Field Description	Locale support in Point-of-Service enables the date, time, currency, calendar, address, and phone number to be displayed in the format for the selected default locale. The choices for default locale are dependent on the selections made on the Supported Languages screen. For each selected language, the default locale for that language is displayed on the Enter Default Locale screen. For example, if English and French are selected on the Supported Languages screen, en_US and fr_FR are the available choices for the default locale.
Example	en_US
Notes	

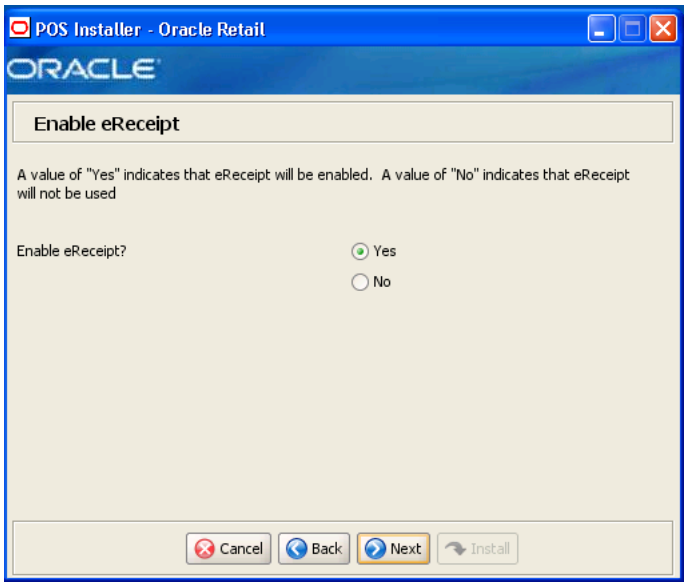
Figure H–6 Tier Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Tier Type
Field Description	Choose the server tier type for this installation. For more information, see "Determining Tier Type" in Chapter 5. To install the N-Tier version of the client, choose **N-Tier Client**.
Example	N-Tier Client
Notes	

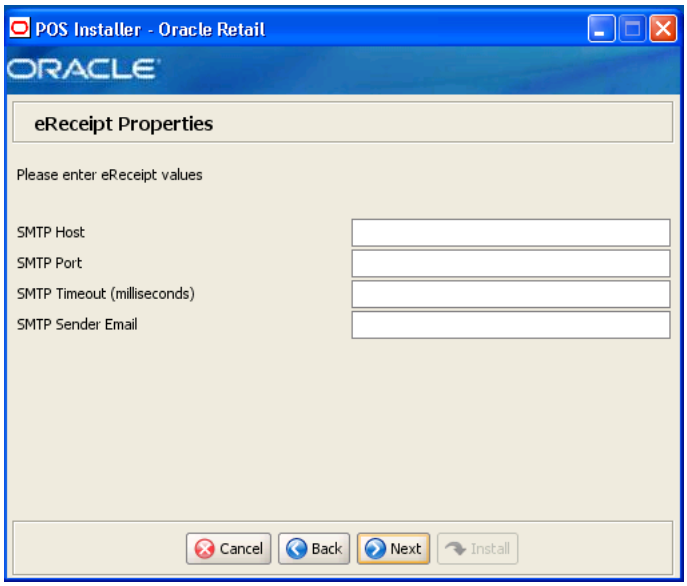
Figure H–7 Enable eReceipt



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable eReceipt?
Field Description	Choose whether the use of eReceipts is enabled.
Example	Yes
Notes	

Figure H–8 eReceipt Properties



This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable eReceipt screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

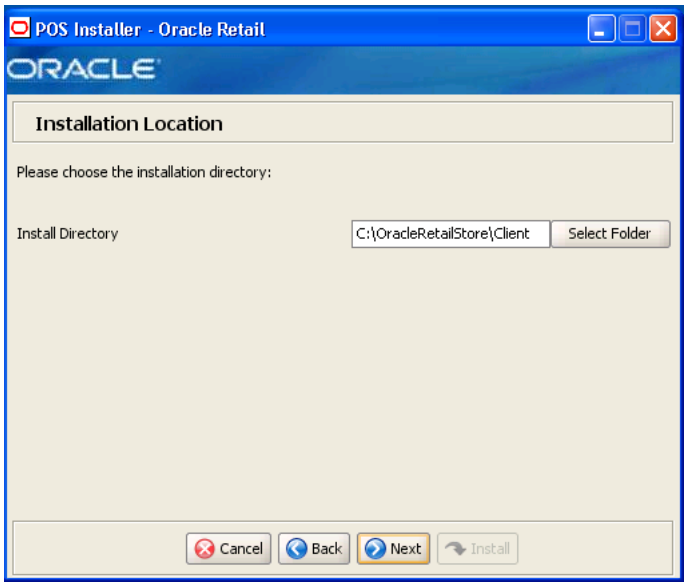
Field Title	SMTP Host
Field Description	Enter the host name for the SMTP server.
Notes	

Field Title	SMTP Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the SMTP server.
Notes	

Field Title	SMTP Timeout (milliseconds)
Field Description	Enter the amount of time to wait for the SMTP server.
Notes	

Field Title	SMTP Sender Email
Field Description	Enter the e-mail address to use for the from address in e-mails generated by Point-of-Service.
Notes	

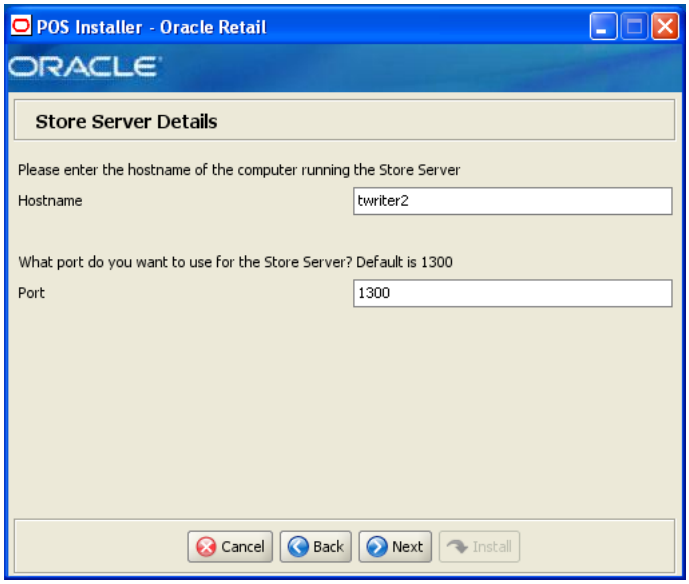
Figure H–9 Installation Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Install Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory into which the Point-of-Service files are copied. The default for the first directory in the path is `OracleRetailStore`. This directory should be the same for all Oracle Retail Strategic Store Solutions products. When **N-Tier Client** is selected for the Tier Type, the default installation directory is `OracleRetailStore/Client`. **Note:** The server and the client must not be installed into the same directory. In this guide, *<POS_install_directory>* refers to the selected installation directory for the server or client. Files specific to Point-of-Service are copied to the `/pos` subdirectory of `<POS_install_directory>`.
Example	`C:\OracleRetailStore\Client` for the Oracle stack `/opt/OracleRetailStore/Client` for the IBM stack
Notes	

Figure H–10 Store Server Details

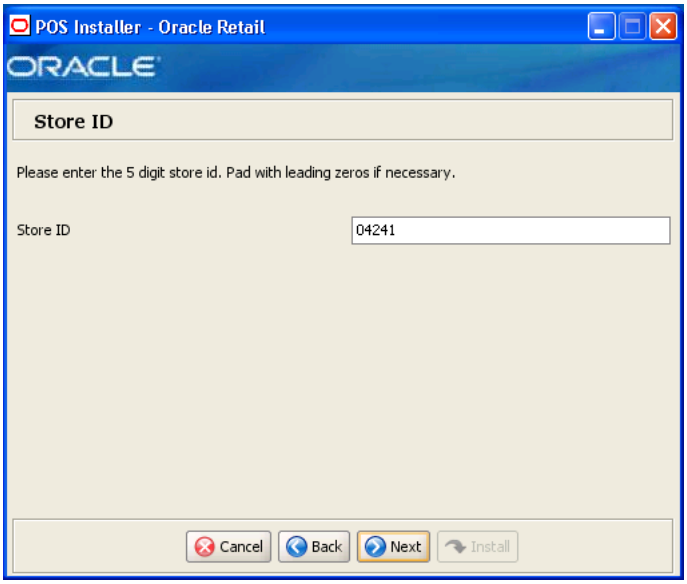


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Hostname
Field Description	Enter the host name of the store server.
Example	twriter2
Notes	

Field Title	Port
Field Description	Enter the port number of the store server used for the communication between the store server and the host computer.
Example	1300
Notes	

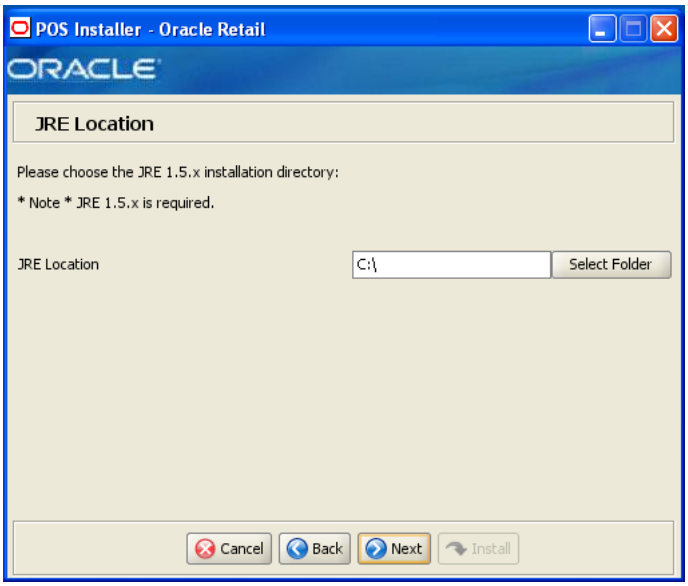
Figure H–11 Store ID



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Store ID
Field Description	Enter the store ID.
Example	04241
Notes	

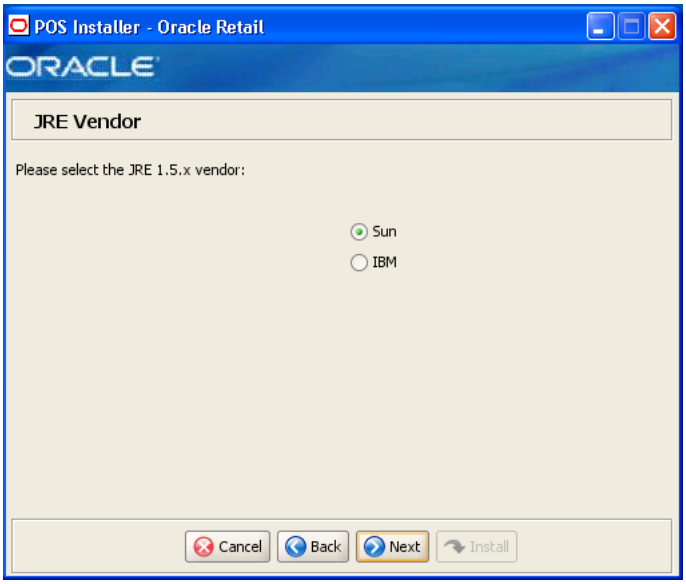
Figure H–12 JRE Location



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Location
Field Description	Choose the location where the JRE is installed.
Example	`C:\Program Files\Java\jre1.5` for the Oracle stack `/opt/Program Files/Java/jre1.5` for the IBM stack
Notes	

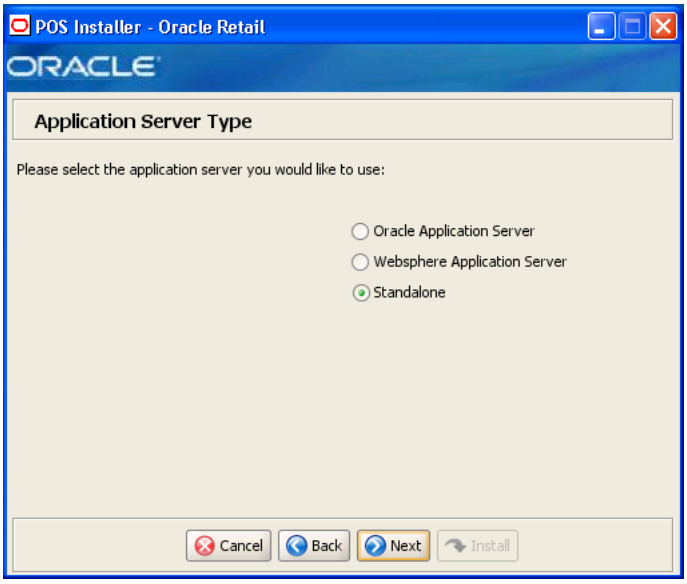
Figure H–13 JRE Vendor



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	JRE Vendor
Field Description	Select the vendor for the JRE entered on the previous screen: ▪ Sun ▪ IBM Choose **IBM**.
Example	IBM
Notes	

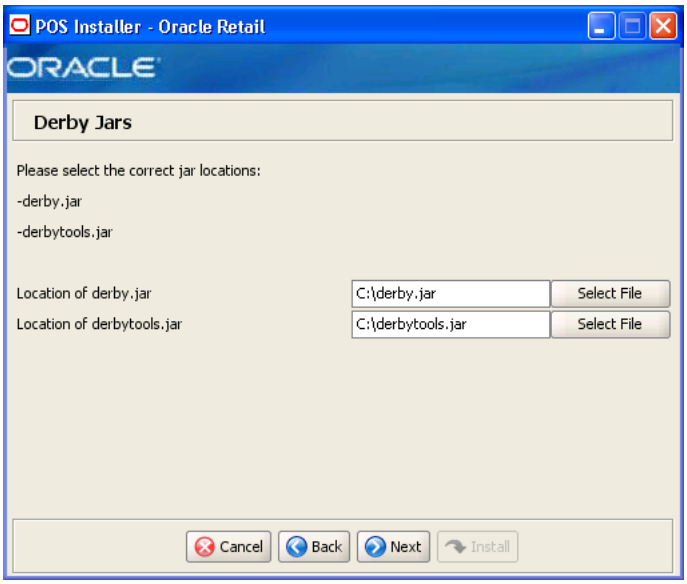
Figure H–14 Application Server Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Application Server Type
Field Description	Select the application server to be used for the store server. ▪ Oracle Application Server ▪ Websphere Application Server ▪ Standalone Choose **Standalone**.
Example	Standalone
Notes	

Figure H–15 Derby Jars

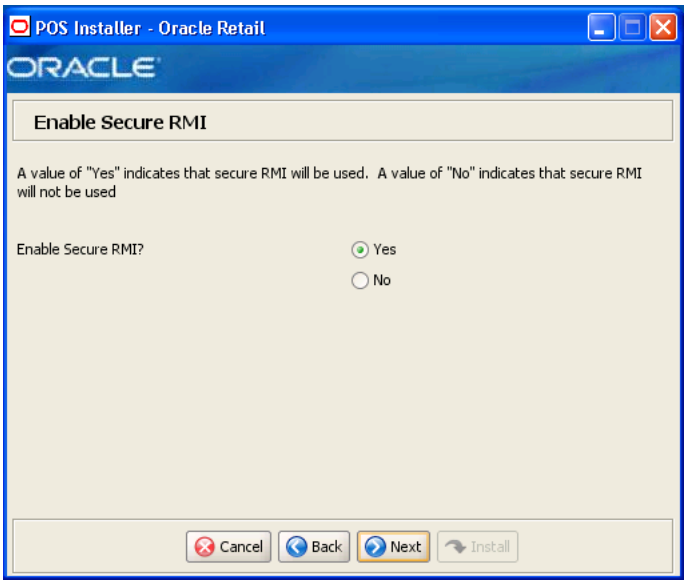


The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Location of derby.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derby.jar` file.
Example	`C:\thirdparty\apache-derby-10.2.2\lib\derby.jar` for the Oracle stack `/opt/thirdparty/apache-derby-10.2.2/lib/derby.jar` for the IBM stack
Notes	

Field Title	Location of derbytools.jar
Field Description	Choose the location of the `derbytools.jar` file.
Example	`C:\thirdparty\apache-derby-10.2.2\lib\derbytools.jar` for the Oracle stack `/opt/thirdparty/apache-derby-10.2.2/lib/derbytools.jar` for the IBM stack
Notes	

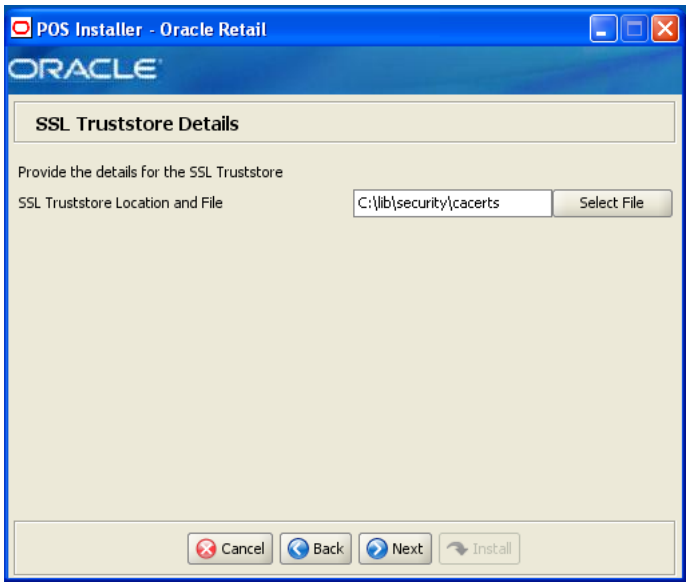
Figure H–16 Enable Secure RMI



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable SecureRMI?
Field Description	Select whether secure RMI is to be used for communication between the store server and registers.
Example	Yes
Notes	

Figure H–17 SSS Truststore Details

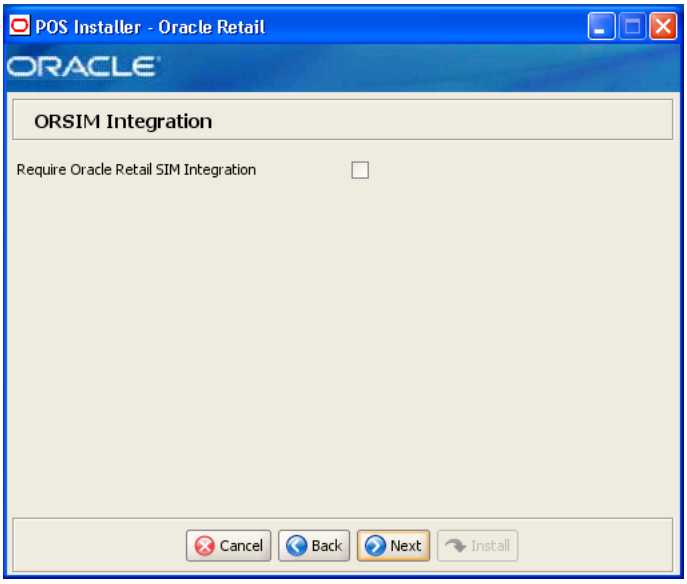


This screen is only displayed if **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure RMI screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	SSL Truststore Location and File
Field Description	Choose the path to the truststore file.
Example	`C:\lib\security\cacerts` for the Oracle stack `/opt/lib/security/cacerts` for the IBM stack
Notes	

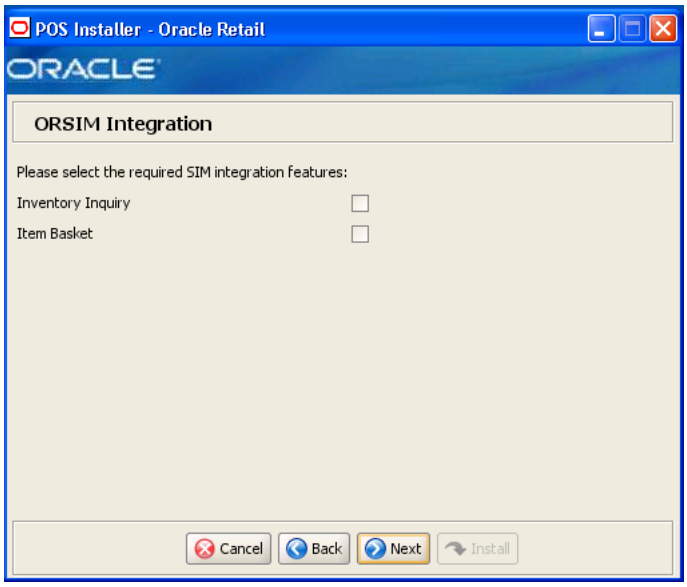
Figure H–18 ORSIM Integration



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Require Oracle Retail SIM Integration
Field Description	Check the box if integration with Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management is required. This box must be checked if the Item Inquiry feature of Point-of-Service is to be used.
Notes	

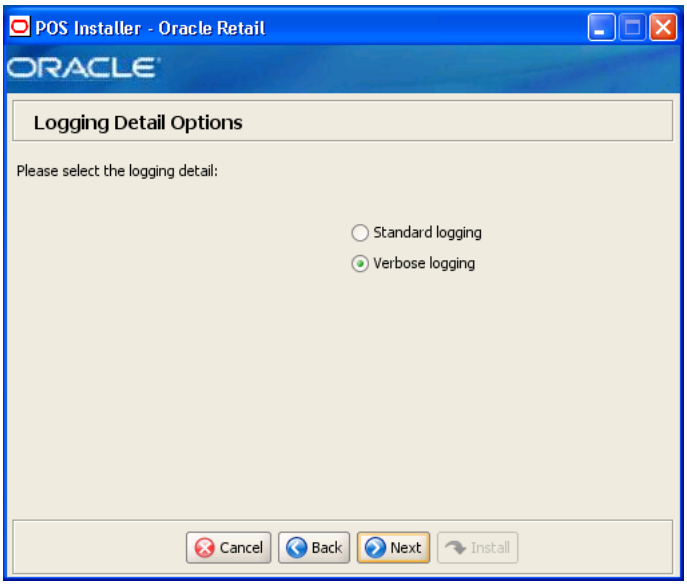
Figure H–19 ORSIM Integration



This screen is only displayed if **Require Oracle SIM Integration** is selected. The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Select the required SIM integration features
Field Description	Select the Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management (SIM) features that will be used in Point-of-Service: ▪ To inquire about inventory using SIM, select **Inventory Inquiry**. ▪ To enable item baskets created using SIM, select **Item Basket**.
Example	Inventory Inquiry
Notes	

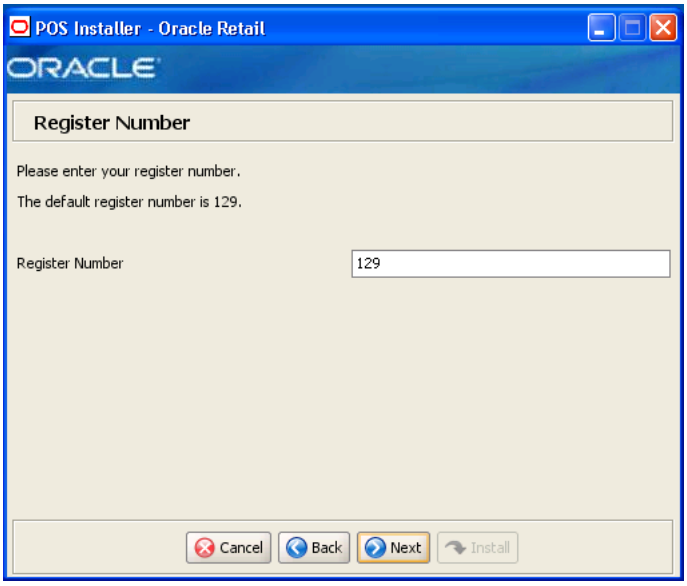
Figure H–20 Logging Detail Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Logging Detail Options
Field Description	Choose the level of client logging. ■ To only log some of the messages, choose **Standard Logging**. ■ To log all of the messages, choose **Verbose Logging**.
Example	Verbose logging
Notes	

Figure H–21 Register Number



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Register Number
Field Description	Enter the register number for this installation.
Example	129 **Note:** Only 1 to 245 is supported for the register number.
Notes	

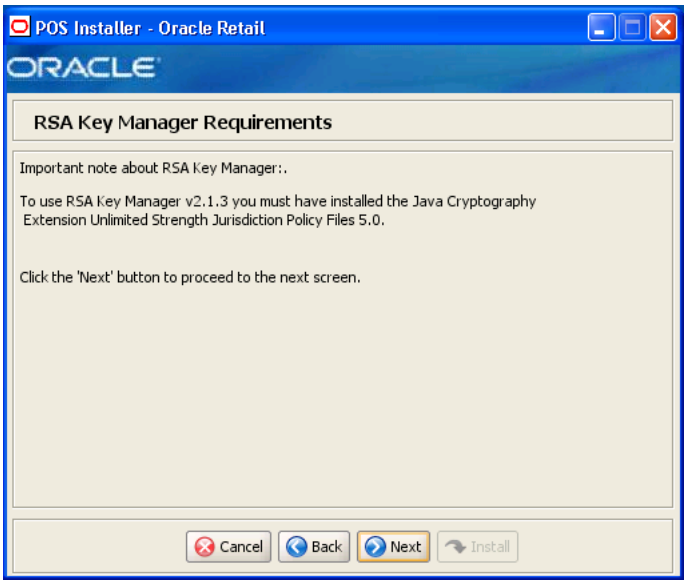
Figure H–22 Security Setup: Key Store Settings

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Hash Algorithm
Field Description	Enter the name of the algorithm used by the Key Store to hash sensitive data.
Example	SHA-256
Notes	

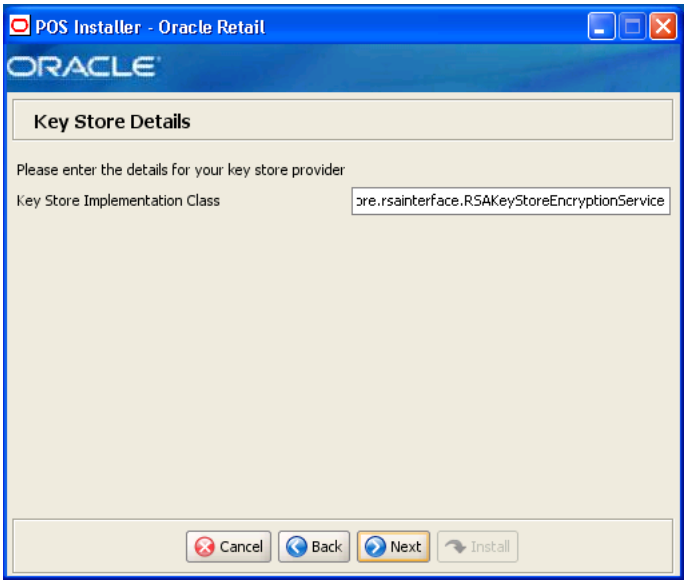
Field Title	Select Key Store Provider
Field Description	Provider for Key Store management. ▪ To use the RSA key management package, select **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3**. The next screen displayed is Figure H–23. ▪ To use the simulated key management package, select **Simulator**. The next screen displayed is Figure H–27. ▪ To use a different key management provider, select **Other**. The next screen displayed is Figure H–29.
Example	RSA Key Manager v2.1.3
Notes	

Figure H–23 RSA Key Manager Requirements



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen. This informational screen explains the requirements to use the RSA Key Manager. Verify that you meet the requirements and then click **Next**.

Figure H–24 Key Store Details for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3

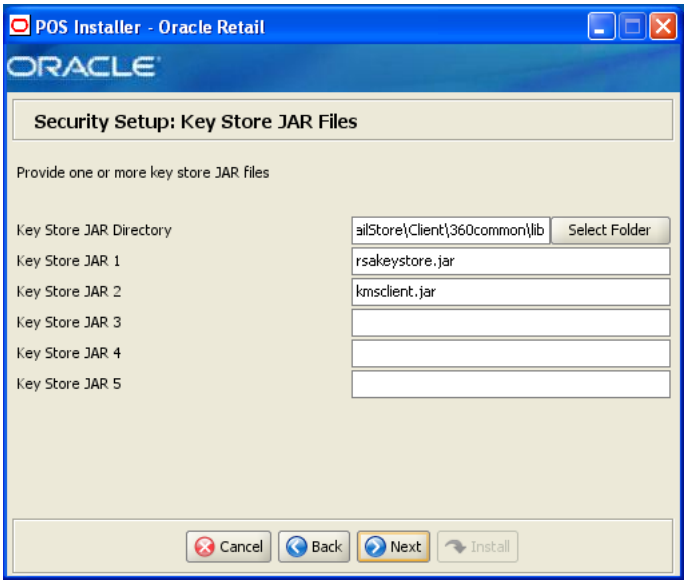


This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the RSA Key Manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.rsakeystore.rsainterface.RSAKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure H–25 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for RSA Key Manager 2.1.3



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Example	`C:\OracleRetailStore\Server\360common\lib` for the Oracle stack `/opt/OracleRetailStore/Server/360common/lib` for the IBM stack
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	rsakeystore.jar
Notes	

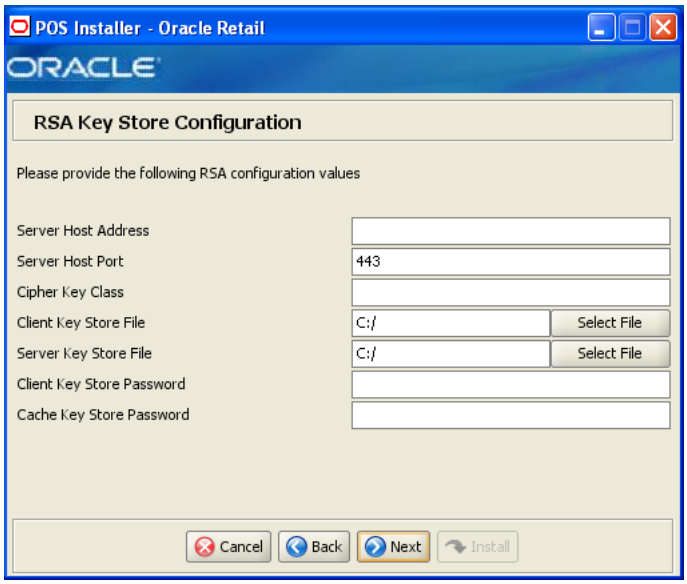
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	kmsclient.jar
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure H–26 RSA Key Store Configuration



This screen is only displayed if **RSA Key Manager v2.1.3** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Server Host Address
Field Description	Enter the IP address of the RSA server host.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Host Port
Field Description	Enter the port number for the RSA server host.
Example	443 443 is the default used by the RSA Key Manager.
Notes	

Field Title	Cipher Key Class
Field Description	Enter the RSA Key Manager cipher key class.
Notes	

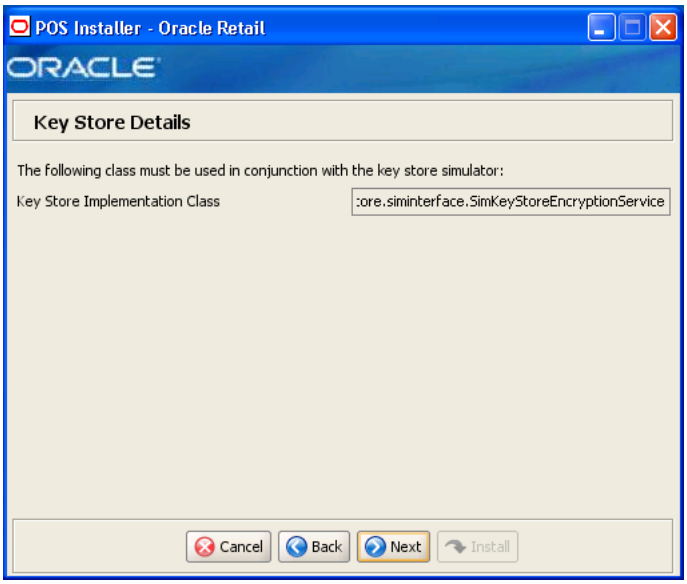
Field Title	Client Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager client Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Server Key Store File
Field Description	Select the location of the RSA Key Manager server Key Store file.
Notes	

Field Title	Client Key Store Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager client Key Store.
Notes	

Field Title	Cache Password
Field Description	Enter the password used to access the RSA Key Manager cache.
Notes	

Figure H–27 Key Store Details for Simulator Key Manager

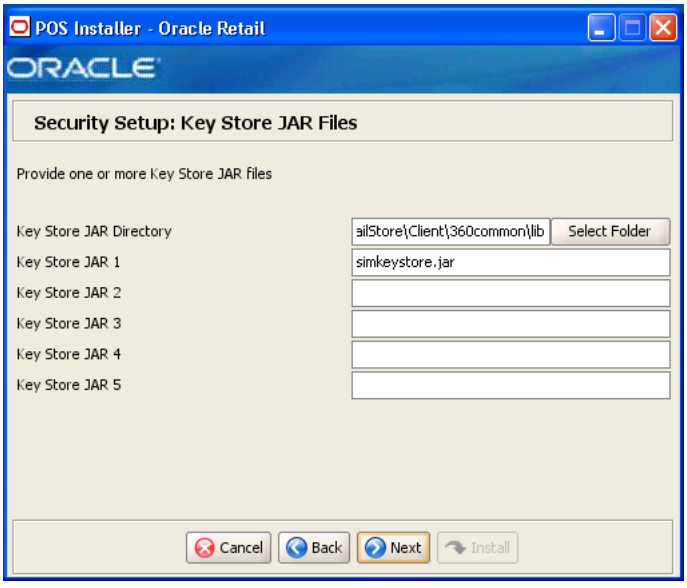


This screen is only displayed if **Simulator** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the simulated key manager interface.
Example	oracle.retail.stores.simkeystore.siminterface.SimKeyStoreEncryptionService
Notes	

Figure H–28 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Simulator Key Manager



The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located. **Note:** If you are using the simulated key management package bundled with Point-of-Service, enter the directory where you saved the `simkeystore.jar` file.
Example	`C:\OracleRetailStore\Server\360common\lib` for the Oracle stack `/opt/OracleRetailStore/Server/360common/lib` for the IBM stack
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Example	simkeystore.jar
Notes	

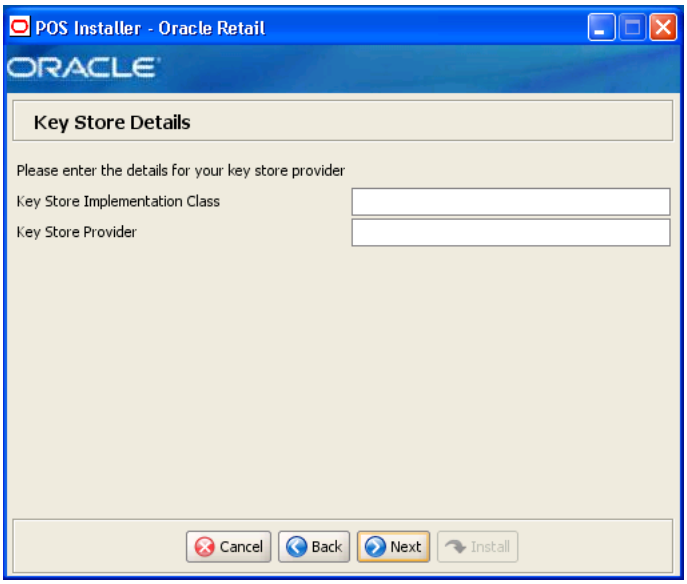
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Figure H–29 Key Store Details for Other Key Manager



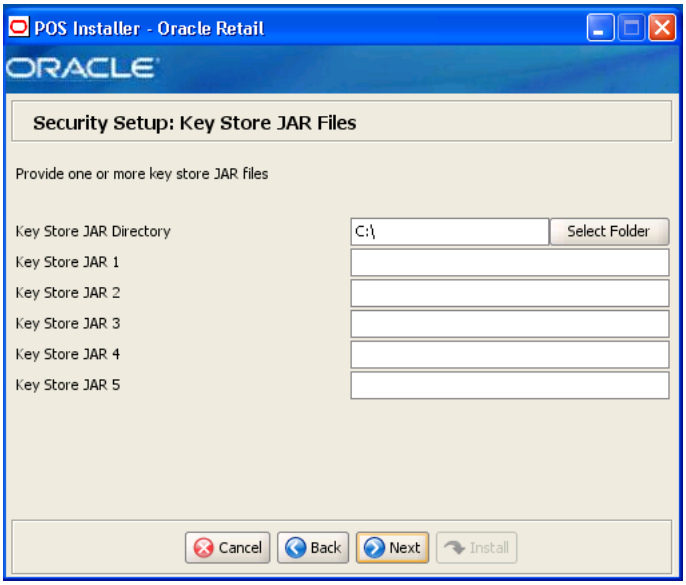
This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	Key Store Implementation Class
Field Description	Enter the class that invokes the key manager interface.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store Provider
Field Description	Enter the name of the provider for the Key Store.
Notes	

Figure H–30 Security Setup: Key Store JAR Files for Other Key Manager



This screen is only displayed if **Other** is selected for the Key Store provider on the Security Setup: Key Store screen.

The fields on this screen are described in the following tables. Up to five Key Store jar files may be entered.

Field Title	Key Store JAR Directory
Field Description	Choose the directory where the Key Store jar files are located.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 1
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

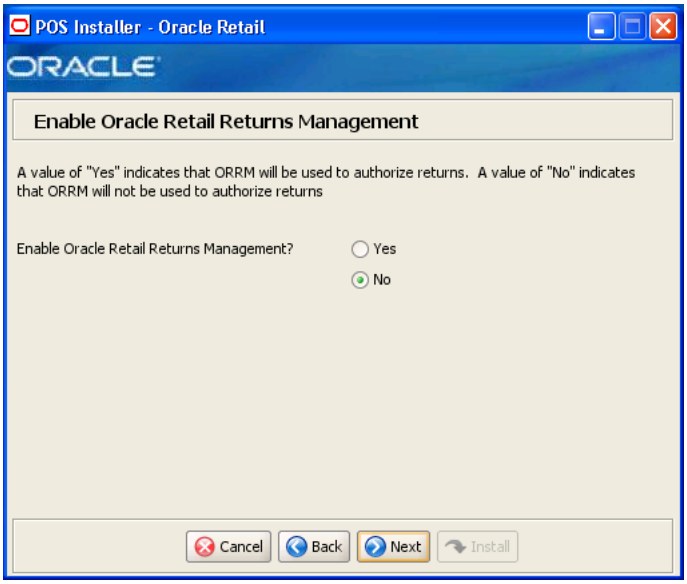
Field Title	Key Store JAR 2
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 3
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 4
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	Key Store JAR 5
Field Description	Enter the name of a Key Store jar file.
Notes	

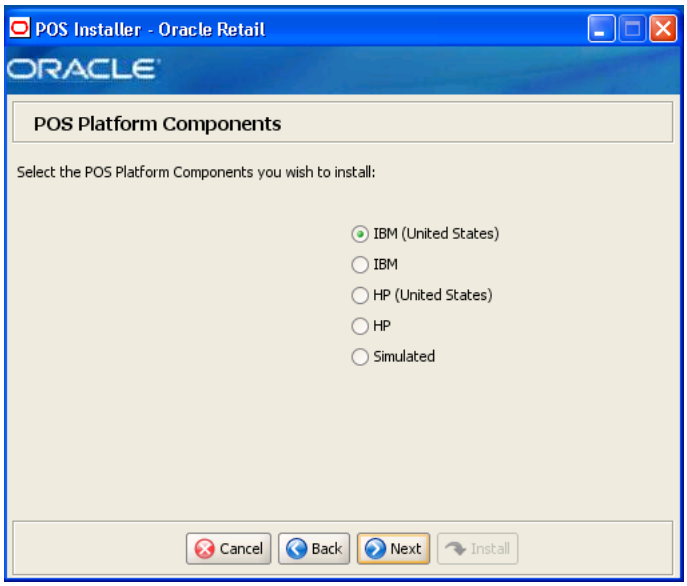
Figure H–31 Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Enable Oracle Retail Returns Management
Field Description	Choose whether Oracle Retail Returns Management is used to authorize returns.
Example	No
Notes	

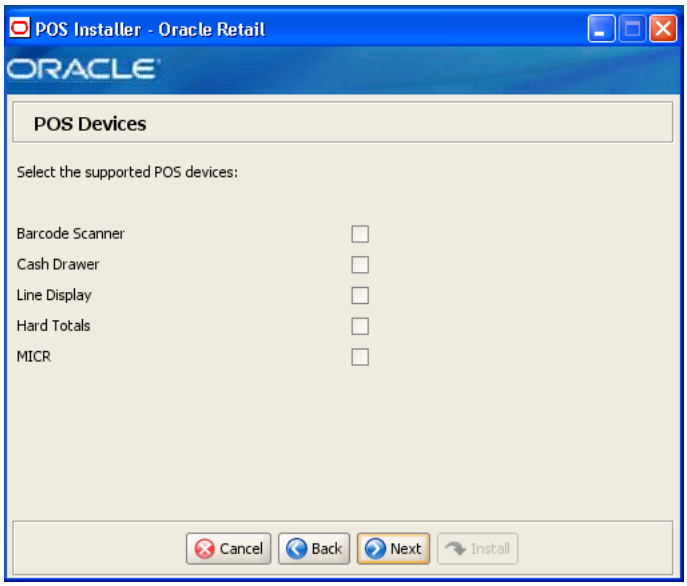
Figure H–32 POS Platform Components



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	POS Platform Components
Field Description	From the platform components, choose the type of register and whether the devices are intended for use in or outside the United States: ▪ To use an IBM register with devices intended for use in the United States, select **IBM (United States)**. ▪ To use an IBM register with devices intended for use outside the United States, select **IBM**. ▪ To use an HP register with devices intended for use in the United States, select **HP (United States)**. ▪ To use an HP register with devices intended for use outside the United States, select **HP**. ▪ To use a register with no devices, select **Simulated**. This should only be selected for a development environment. The next screen displayed is Figure H–38.
Example	IBM (United States)
Notes	

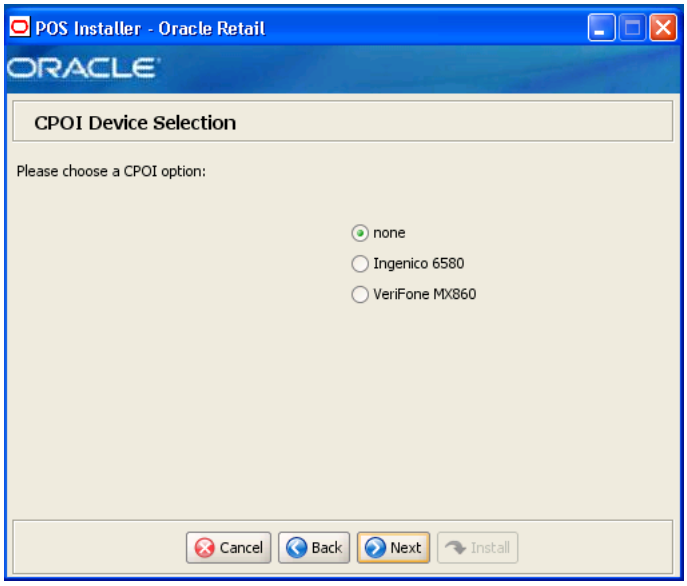
Figure H–33 POS Devices



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	POS Devices
Field Description	Choose the devices to be attached to the client register.
Example	Cash Drawer
Notes	

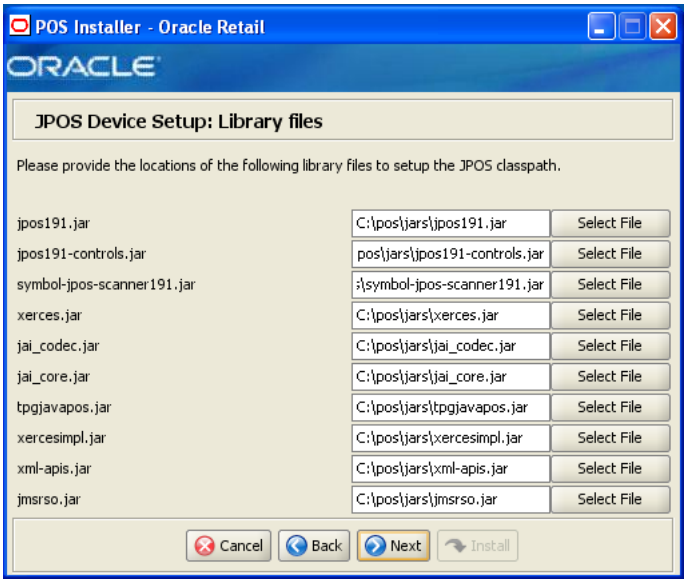
Figure H–34 CPOI Device Selection



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Please choose a CPOI option
Field Description	Choose the CPOI device to be used at the register. ▪ To not use a CPOI device, choose **none**. ▪ To use the Ingenico device, choose **Ingenico 6580**. ▪ To use the VeriFone device, choose **Verifone MX860**.
Example	none
Notes	

Figure H–35 JPOS Device Setup: Library Files



The fields on this screen are described in the following tables.

Field Title	jpos191.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	jpos191-controls.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	symbol-jpos-scanner191.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	xerces.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	jai_codec.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	jai_core.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

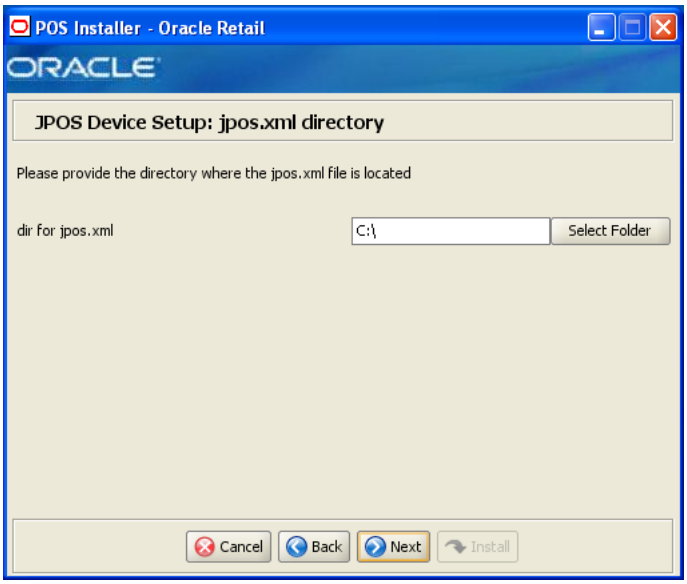
Field Title	tpgjavapos.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	xercesimpl.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	xml-apis.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

Field Title	jmsrso.jar
Field Description	Enter the location of the jar file.
Notes	

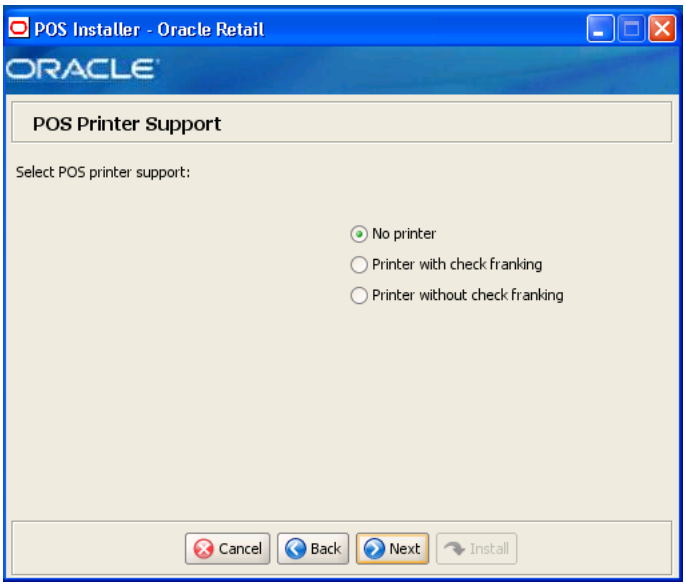
Figure H–36 JPOS Device Setup: jpos.xml directory



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	dir for jpos.xml
Field Description	Enter the location of the directory.
Notes	

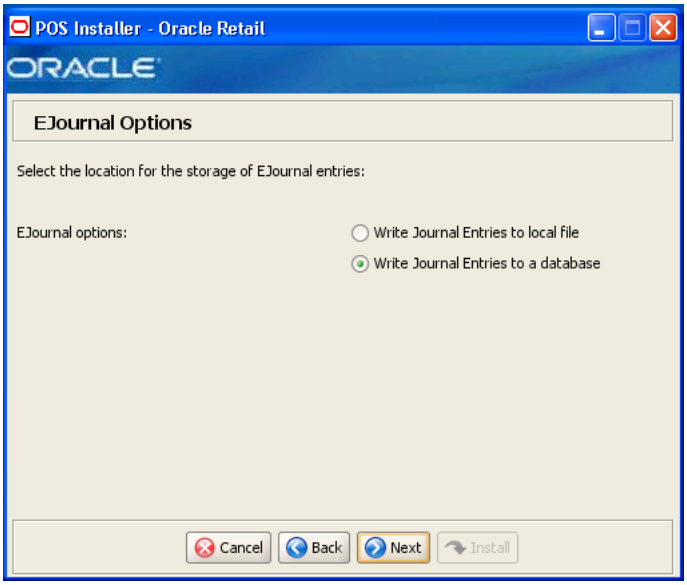
Figure H–37 POS Printer Support



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	POS Printer Support
Field Description	Choose what is supported for a printer attached to the register. If Ingenico 6580 or Verifone MX860 will be used for the CPOI device, select **Printer without check franking** on this screen.
Example	Printer with check franking
Notes	

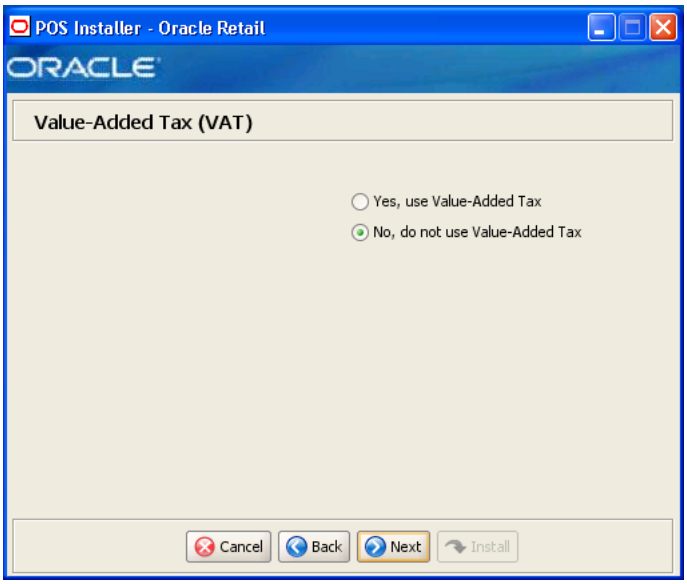
Figure H–38 EJournal Options



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	EJournal Options
Field Description	Choose where the journal entries are to be written. ▪ To write journal entries to a local file, choose **Write Journal Entries to local file**. ▪ To write journal entries to a database, choose **Write Journal Entries to a database**.
Example	Write Journal Entries to a database
Notes	

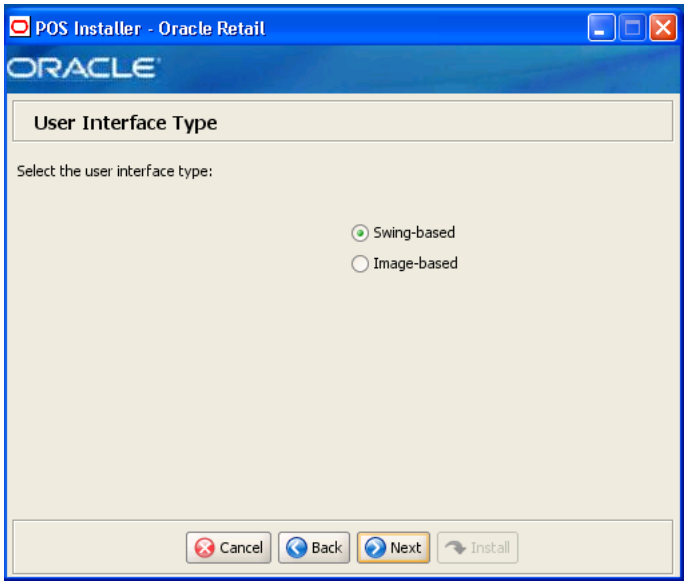
Figure H–39 Value-Added Tax (VAT)



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	Value-Added Tax
Field Description	Choose whether Value-Added Tax is used.
Example	No, do not use Value-Added Tax
Notes	

Figure H–40 User Interface Type



The field on this screen is described in the following table.

Field Title	User Interface Type
Field Description	Choose the user interface look and feel. ▪ To use a standard swing interface, choose **Swing-based**. ▪ To use custom images for buttons and other graphics, choose **Image-based**.
Example	Swing-based
Notes	

Figure H–41 Installation Progress

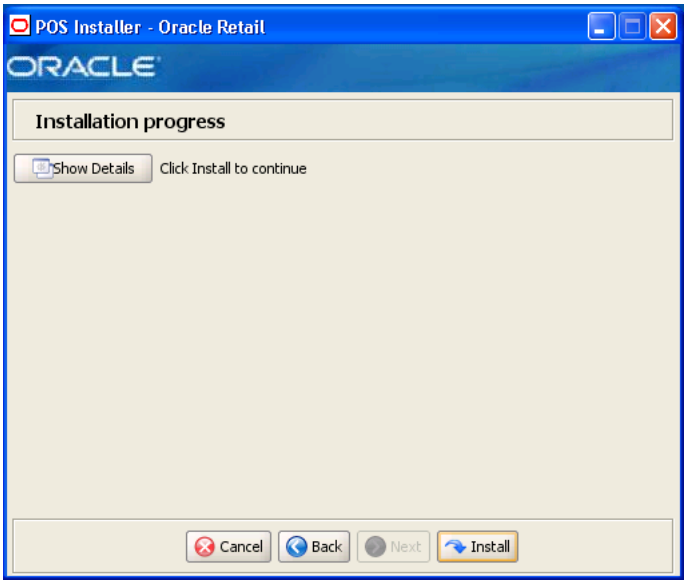
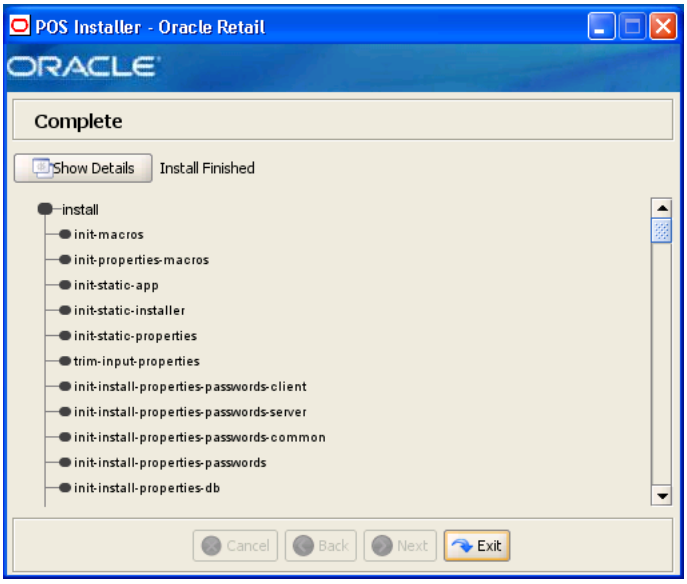


Figure H–42 Install Complete



Appendix: Installer Silent Mode

In addition to the GUI and text interfaces of the Point-of-Service installer, there is a silent mode that can be run. This mode is useful if you wish to run a new installation and use the settings you provided in a previous installation. It is also useful if you encounter errors in the middle of an installation and wish to continue after resolving them.

The installer runs in two distinct phases. The first phase involves gathering settings from the user. At the end of the first phase, a properties file named `ant.install.properties` is created with the settings that were provided. In the second phase, this properties file is used to provide your settings for the installation.

To skip the first phase and re-use the `ant.install.properties` file from a previous run, follow these instructions:

1. If the installer failed in its previous run, edit the `ant.install.properties` file and correct any invalid settings that may have caused the failure.
2. If the previous install was successful, copy the wallet file from the previous installation to the staging area:
   - For the silent install of the server, copy the `cwallet.sso` file from the *<POS_install_directory>*`/`*<server>*`/pos/bin` directory to *<INSTALL_DIR>*.
   - For the silent install of a client, copy the `cwallet.sso` file from the *<POS_install_directory>*`/`*<client>*`/pos/bin` directory to *<INSTALL_DIR>*.
3. Run the installer again with the silent argument:
   - `install.cmd silent`
   - `install.sh silent`

J

Appendix: URL Reference

Both the database schema and application installers for the Point-of-Service product will ask for several different URLs. These include the following.

JDBC URL for an Oracle 11g Database

Used by the Java application and by the installer to connect to the database.

Syntax: `jdbc:oracle:thin:@<host>:<port>:<sid>`

- *<host>*: host name of the database server
- *<port>*: database listener port
- *<sid>*: system identifier for the database

For example, `jdbc:oracle:thin:@myhost:1521:mysid`

JDBC URL for an IBM DB2 Database

Used by the Java application and by the installer to connect to the database.

Syntax: `jdbc:db2://<dbhost>:<dbport>/<dbsid>`

- *<dbhost>*: host name of the database server
- *<dbport>*: database listener port
- *<dbsid>*: system identifier for the database

For example, `jdbc:db2://myhost:50000/mydatabase`

K

Appendix: Common Installation Errors

This appendix describes some common errors encountered during installation of Point-of-Service.

"Pos installer finished with errors"

If you see this error message, there could be some settings incorrectly set or problems with the installer itself. For more information, check the *<POS_install_directory>*/pos/logs/installer_log.txt file.

"Dispatcher.main, Exception: java.security.AccessControlException: access denied (java.util.PropertyPermission * read,write)"

Symptom:

The application dies when starting up:

```
 [java] Dispatcher.main, Exception: java.security.AccessControlException: access
denied (java.util.PropertyPermission * read,write)
     [java] java.security.AccessControlException: access denied
(java.util.PropertyPermission * read,write)
     [java]     at java.security.AccessControlContext.checkPermission(Unknown
Source)
     [java]     at java.security.AccessController.checkPermission(Unknown Source)
     [java]     at java.lang.SecurityManager.checkPermission(Unknown Source)
     [java]     at java.lang.SecurityManager.checkPropertiesAccess(Unknown Source)
     [java]     at java.lang.System.getProperties(Unknown Source)
     [java]     at
com.extendyourstore.foundation.tour.conduit.Dispatcher.<init>(Dispatcher.java:461)
     [java]     at
com.extendyourstore.foundation.tour.conduit.Dispatcher.getDispatcher(Dispatcher.ja
va:1301)
     [java]     at
com.extendyourstore.foundation.tour.conduit.Dispatcher.main(Dispatcher.java:2439)
     [java]     at
com.extendyourstore.foundation.config.TierLoader.main(TierLoader.java:359)
```

Solution:

This error usually occurs because the JRE that you are pointing to does not contain the `updated java.security` and `java.policy` files.

"java.lang.NullPointerException"

Symptom:

The application dies when starting up. Check the *<POS_install_directory>*/pos-install-yyyyMMddHHmm.log file, where yyyyMMddHHmm is the timestamp of the install. In the log file, search for **Database 'offlinedb' not found**.

```
ERROR 2007-07-29 15:54:49,608 4938
(main:com.extendyourstore.foundation.manager.data.JdbcDataConnection):

[com.extendyourstore.foundation.manager.data.JdbcDataConnection.logSQLException
(JdbcDataConnection.java:1355)] Get Connection failed :Database 'offlinedb' not
found.
```

Solution:

This error occurs the first time the client is started after it is installed. The server was unable to establish a connection to the database. This prevented the offlinedb database from being created.

This error usually occurs because incorrect information was entered on the Database Configuration screen during the install. Reinstall the server with the correct database configuration information. Check that the IDDI folder was created for the server in *<POS_install_directory>*/pos/bin.

L

Appendix: Troubleshooting Problems on the Oracle Stack

This appendix contains information that may be useful if you encounter errors running Point-of-Service for the first time after an install.

The configuration steps enable Point-of-Service to communicate with Back Office and Central Office in order to receive parameter updates and to send EJournal and POSLogs up to Central Office. If you have problems, you may want to ensure the steps were successfully completed by the installer.

jndi.properties File Name

On the Central Office/Back Office Server Information screen, you enter the host name for the Central Office server. In the *<POS_install_directory>*/pos/config directory, there is a jndi.properties file for Central Office. When this file is created during installation, the name of the file includes the host name you entered for the Central Office server.

For example, if you enter centraloffice for the host name, the name of the created file is centraloffice.jndi.properties.

Performing a Manual Integration

The following steps need to be completed for Point-of-Service to communicate with Back Office and Central Office. These steps enable Point-of-Service to receive parameter updates and to send EJournal and POSLogs up to Central Office.

Client Configuration

To configure the client:

1. Verify the following class path entries in the *<POS_install_directory>*\pos\bin\posenv.bat file.

```
CP=$CP:$_360COMMON_PATH/common/build/oc4j-internal.jar
CP=$CP:$_360COMMON_PATH/common/build/javax77.jar
CP=$CP:$_360COMMON_PATH/common/build/jms.jar
CP=$CP:$_360COMMON_PATH/common/build/optic.jar
CP=$CP:$_360COMMON_PATH/common/build/jta.jar
CP=$CP:$_360COMMON_PATH/common/build/ejb.jar
```

2. Change the *<POS_install_directory>*\pos\bin\jndi.properties file to point to Back Office.

```
java.naming.provider.url=
ormi://<Back Office Server Name>:<Back Office Port Number>
java.naming.factory.initial=com.evermind.server.rmi.RMIInitialContextFactory
java.naming.security.principal=oc4jadmin
java.naming.security.credentials=<password>
```

3. Add the Back Office queue and topic connection factory entries to the *<POS_install_directory>*\pos\bin\comm.properties file.

```
comm.jms.topicConnectionFactory.name=jms/ApplicationTCF
comm.jms.queueConnectionFactory.name=jms/ApplicationQCF
```

4. Edit ParameterTechnician in the *<POS_install_directory>* \pos\config\conduit\ClientConduit.xml file.

```
<TECHNICIAN name="ParameterTechnician" class = "ParameterTechnician"
               package = "com.extendyourstore.foundation.manager.parameter"
               export = "Y" >
           <PROPERTY propname="paramScript"

propvalue="classpath://config/manager/PosParameterTechnician.xml"/>
           <PROPERTY propname="JmsProviderTopicName"
propvalue="jms/parameters"/>
   <PROPERTY propname="listenForUpdates" propvalue="Y"/>
           <PROPERTY propname="clientID" propvalue="reg129"/>
           <PROPERTY propname="jmsID" propvalue="oc4jadmin"/>
           <PROPERTY propname="jmsPassword" propvalue="!<password>"/>
   </TECHNICIAN>
```

Store Server Configuration

To configure the store server:

1. Verify the following class path entries in the *<POS_install_directory>*\pos\bin\posenv.bat file.

```
SET CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%;%_360COMMON_PATH%\common\build\oc4j-internal.jar
SET CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%;%_360COMMON_PATH%\common\build\javax77.jar
SET CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%;%_360COMMON_PATH%\common\build\jta.jar
SET CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%;%_360COMMON_PATH%\common\build\jms.jar
SET CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%;%_360COMMON_PATH%\common\build\optic.jar
```

2. Change the *<POS_install_directory>*\pos\config\backoffice.jndi.properties and *<POS_install_directory>*\pos\bin\jndi.properties files to point to Back Office.

```
java.naming.provider.url=
ormi://<Back Office Server Name>:<Back Office Port Number>
java.naming.factory.initial=com.evermind.server.rmi.RMIInitialContextFactory
java.naming.security.principal=oc4jadmin
java.naming.security.credentials=<password>
```

3. Change the *<POS_install_directory>*\pos\config\ *<Central Office Server Name>*.jndi.properties file to point to Central Office.

   - This creates access to the POSLog and EJournalImport queues only:

     ```
     java.naming.provider.url=
         ormi://<Central Office Server Name>:<Central Office Port Number>
     java.naming.factory.initial=
         com.evermind.server.rmi.RMIInitialContextFactory
     java.naming.security.principal=oc4jadmin
     java.naming.security.credentials=oc4jadmin
     ```

   - To enable Centralized Transaction Retrieval to access the EJBs and POSLog and EJournalImport queues:

     ```
     java.naming.provider.url=ormi:
       //<Central Office host name>:<Central Office Port Number>/CentralOffice
     java.naming.factory.initial=
       com.evermind.server.rmi.RMIInitialContextFactory
     java.naming.security.principal=pos
     java.naming.security.credentials=pos
     ```

4. Add the Back Office and Central Office queue and topic connection factory entries to the *<POS_install_directory>*\pos\bin\comm.properties file.

   ```
   comm.jms.topicConnectionFactory.name=jms/ApplicationTCF
   comm.jms.queueConnectionFactory.name=jms/ApplicationQCF
   comm.jms.topicConnectionFactory.name.<Central Office Server Name>=
   jms/ApplicationTCF
   comm.jms.queueConnectionFactory.name.<Central Office Server Name>=
   jms/ApplicationQCF
   ```

5. Delete the comm.properties file from *<POS_install_directory>*\pos\config.

6. Edit the log export configuration in the *<POS_install_directory>* \pos\config\conduit\StoreServerConduit.xml file by changing only one of the following sections.

   - To use data replication, edit the DataReplicationDaemonTechnician section.

     ```
     <TECHNICIAN name="DataReplicationDaemonTechnician"
                   class="DataReplicationDaemonTechnician"
                   package="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.datareplication"
                   export="Y">
            <PROPERTY propname="daemonClassName"

     propvalue="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.datareplication.DataReplicati
     onExportDaemonThread"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="sleepInterval"
                      propvalue="15"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="logWriterClass"

     propvalue="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.datareplication.JMSDataReplic
     ationWriter"/>

            <PROPERTY propname="extractorConfigurationFileName"
                      propvalue="config/ReplicationExportConfig.xml"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="queueHostName"
     ```

```
                    propvalue="<Central Office Server Name>"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="maximumTransactionsToExport"
                    propvalue="2"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="queueName"
                    propvalue="jms/POSLog"/>
        </TECHNICIAN>
```

- To use the POSLog, edit the `PosLogDaemonTechnician` section. Edit the version that exports to a JMS queue.

```
TECHNICIAN name="POSLogDaemonTechnician"
                class="POSLogDaemonTechnician"
                package="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.export"
                export="Y">
        <PROPERTY propname="daemonClassName"

propvalue="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.export.POSLogExportDaemonThre
ad"/>
        <PROPERTY propname="sleepInterval"
                propvalue="5"/>
        <PROPERTY propname="logWriterClass"

propvalue="com.extendyourstore.domain.ixretail.log.POSLogWriter"/>
        <PROPERTY propname="queueHostName"
                propvalue="<Central Office Server Name>"/>
        <PROPERTY propname="queueName"
                propvalue="jms/POSLog"/>
        <PROPERTY propname="logWriterClass"

propvalue="com.extendyourstore.domain.ixretail.log.JMSPOSLogWriter"/>
    </TECHNICIAN>
```

  The `queueHostName` must be changed to *`<Central Office Server Name>`* as shown in this example. This will allow the POSLog Export Daemon to use the *`<POS_install_directory>`*`\pos\config\`*`<Central Office Server Name>`*`.jndi.properties` file. Delete the *`<POS_install_directory>`*`\pos\config\`*`<Central Office Server Name>`*`.jndi.properties` file.

7. Edit `JMSJournalTechnician` in the *`<POS_install_directory>`* `\pos\config\conduit\StoreServerConduit.xml` file.

```
 <TECHNICIAN name="JMSJournalTechnician"
               class="JMSJournalTechnician"
               package="com.extendyourstore.foundation.manager.journal"
               export="Y">
               <PROPERTY propname="journalFormatterClass"

propvalue="com.extendyourstore.pos.manager.journal.POSJournalFormatter"/>
               <PROPERTY propname="journalHandlerClass"

propvalue="com.extendyourstore.pos.manager.journal.POSJMSJournalHandler"/>
               <PROPERTY propname="queueName" propvalue="jms/EJournal"/>
               <PROPERTY propname="consolePrintable" propvalue="N"/>
    </TECHNICIAN>
```

8. Edit `MessageCenterDaemonTechnician` in the *<POS_install_directory>*`\pos\config\conduit\StoreServerConduit.xml` file.

```
 <TECHNICIAN name="MessageCenterDaemonTechnician"
              class="MessageCenterDaemonTechnician"
              package="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.messagecenter"
              export="Y">
        <PROPERTY propname="daemonClassName"

propvalue="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.messagecenter.MessageCenterDaemon
Thread"/>
        <PROPERTY propname="senderQueueName"
                  propvalue="jms/EJournalImport"/>
        <PROPERTY propname="senderBrokerName"
                  propvalue="<Central Office Server Name>"/>
        <PROPERTY propname="receiverQueueName"
                  propvalue="jms/EJournal"/>
        <PROPERTY propname="receiverBrokerName"
                  propvalue=""/>
    </TECHNICIAN>
```

Note: The value set for the `queueName` property for the `JMSJournalTechnician` and the value set for the `receiverQueueName` property for the `MessageCenterDaemonTechnician` must be the same.

Secure RMI and Secure JDBC

Understanding SSL/TLS connection problems can be difficult, especially when it is not clear what messages are actually being sent and received. The SunJSSE has a built-in debug facility that is activated by the system property `javax.net.debug`.

- To enable SSL debugging for the Point-of-Service server, add `-Djavax.net.debug=all` to the `StoreServerConduit.sh` file and restart the server:

  ```
  COMMAND "java ${JAVA_OPTIONS} -Djavax.net.debug=all
  com.extendyourstore.foundation.config.TierLoader ${CONDUIT_CONFIG}"
  ```

- To enable SSL debugging for the Point-of-Service client, add `-Djavax.net.debug=all` to the `ClientConduit.bat` file and start the client:

  ```
  set JAVA_OPTIONS=%JAVA_MEM_OPTIONS% %JAVA_OPTIONS%  -Djavax.net.debug=all
  ```

For information on understanding the debug output, see the following website:

http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.5.0/docs/guide/security/jsse/ReadDebug.html

In the log files for the server and client, look for HandshakeExceptions. The following examples list the most common exceptions:

- Certificates not yet active—This occurs when the date on the store server is ahead of the date on the client. Because of this dated discrepancy, the certificate exported from the server has not become active yet.
- Location for the Key Store or trust store is incorrect—For information about the files that are changed when enabling secure RMI, see Appendix R.
- KeyEncryptionService (RSA) is not located in the correct place—Due to this configuration error, the passwords in the XML files and `posfoundation.properties` file cannot be generated. An empty `posfoundation.properties` is created in in `OracleRetailStore\Server\pos\config` and `OracleRetailStore\Client\pos\config`.

  After fixing the KeyEncryptionService configuration issue, you either have to reinstall Point-of_Service or get a copy of the original `posfoundation.properties` file located in the `<INSTALL_DIR>\product\config` and update the file. To update the file, follow the steps in Appendix R to manually update the `posfoundation.properties` file.
- Type of the store server Key Store is different than the type of the client trust store—To check the type, use the following keytool commands:

  ```
  keytool -list -keystore <your_key_store_name_and_location>
  keytool -list -truststore <your_truststore_name_and_location>
  ```

  The above commands list the Key Store and trust store type and provider along with all the certificates that are stored in these files, as shown in the following example:

  ```
  Keystore type: jks

  Keystore provider: SUN

  Your keystore contains 1 entry
  Oracle, Jul 9, 2009, keyEntry,
  Certificate fingerprint (MD5): EF:33:FE:13:0D:EC:8C:64:1B:C1:89:4C:86:62:6C:53
  ```

  Make sure that the Key Store type matches in both files.

M

Appendix: Troubleshooting Problems on the IBM Stack

This appendix contains information that may be useful if you encounter errors running Point-of-Service for the first time after an install.

The configuration steps enable Point-of-Service to communicate with Back Office and Central Office in order to receive parameter updates and to send EJournal and POSLogs up to Central Office. If you have problems, you may want to ensure the steps were successfully completed by the installer.

jndi.properties File Name

On the Central Office/Back Office Server Information screen, you enter the host name for the Central Office server. In the *<POS_install_directory>*/pos/config directory, there is a jndi.properties file for Central Office. When this file is created during installation, the name of the file includes the host name you entered for the Central Office server.

For example, if you enter centraloffice for the host name, the name of the created file is centraloffice.jndi.properties.

Performing a Manual Integration

The following steps need to be completed for Point-of-Service to communicate with Back Office and Central Office. These steps enable Point-of-Service to receive parameter updates and to send EJournal and POSLogs up to Central Office.

Client Configuration

To configure the client:

1. If the host names of the Back Office and Central Office servers are not available on a DNS server, update the /etc/hosts file with the IP address and host name where Point-of-Service is installed. This step is required for JMS messaging to work properly.
2. Remove the following class path entries from the *<POS_install_directory>*/pos/bin/posenv.sh file.

```
CP=$CP:$_360COMMON_PATH/common/build/oc4j-internal.jar
CP=$CP:$_360COMMON_PATH/common/build/javax77.jar
CP=$CP:$_360COMMON_PATH/common/build/jms.jar
CP=$CP:$_360COMMON_PATH/common/build/optic.jar
CP=$CP:$_360COMMON_PATH/common/build/jta.jar
```

```
CP=$CP:$_360COMMON_PATH/common/build/ejb.jar
```

3. Add the following class path entries to the *<POS_install_directory>*/pos/bin/posenv.sh file.

```
CP=$CP:<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>/WebSphere/AppServer/plugins/
com.ibm.ws.runtime_6.1.0.jar
CP=$CP:<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>/WebSphere/AppServer/runtimes/
com.ibm.ws.admin.client_6.1.0.jar
CP=$CP:<MQ_INSTALL_DIR>/java/lib/jms.jar
CP=$CP:<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>/lib/WMQ/java/lib/com.ibm.mqjms.jar
CP=$CP:<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>/lib/WMQ/java/lib/com.ibm.mq.jar
CP=$CP:<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>/lib/WMQ/java/lib/dhbcore.jar
```

4. Change the *<POS_install_directory>*/pos/bin/jndi.properties file to point to Back Office.

```
java.naming.provider.url=
corbaloc:iiop:<Back Office Server Name>:<Back Office Port Number>
```

5. Add the Back Office queue and topic connection factory entries to the *<POS_install_directory>*/pos/bin/comm.properties file.

```
comm.jms.topicConnectionFactory.name=jms/ApplicationTCF
comm.jms.queueConnectionFactory.name=jms/ApplicationQCF
```

6. Delete the comm.properties file from *<POS_install_directory>*/pos/config.

7. Edit ParameterTechnician in the *<POS_install_directory>* /pos/config/conduit/ClientConduit.xml file.

```
<TECHNICIAN name="ParameterTechnician" class = "ParameterTechnician"
               package = "com.extendyourstore.foundation.manager.parameter"
               export = "Y" >
           <PROPERTY propname="paramScript"
propvalue="classpath://config/manager/PosParameterTechnician.xml"/>
           <PROPERTY propname="JmsProviderTopicName"
propvalue="jms/parameters"/>
   <PROPERTY propname="listenForUpdates" propvalue="Y"/>
           <PROPERTY propname="clientID" propvalue="reg129"/>
           <PROPERTY propname="jmsID" propvalue="<UNIX user>"/>
           <PROPERTY propname="jmsPassword" propvalue="!<password>"/>
   </TECHNICIAN>
```

Note: The value of clientID must match the WorkstationID specified in the application.properties file.

Note: You must create a UNIX user on the host where Back Office is installed and add that user to the mqm group. The values for jmsID and jmsPassword specified in the Password Technician definition must match the values for the UNIX user and password.

Store Server Configuration

To configure the store server:

1. Update the `/etc/hosts` file with the IP address and host name where Point-of-Service is installed. This step is required for JMS messaging to work properly.
2. Update the `/etc/group` file with the user ID that will be used to run the store server. Add that user ID to the `mqm` group. The user ID must be part of the `mqm` group in order to use JMS.
3. Remove the following class path entries from the *<POS_install_directory>*`/pos/bin/posenv.sh` file.

```
SET CLASSPATH=$CLASSPATH:$_360COMMON_PATH\common\build\oc4j-internal.jar
SET CLASSPATH=$CLASSPATH:$_360COMMON_PATH\common\build\javax77.jar
SET CLASSPATH=$CLASSPATH:$_360COMMON_PATH\common\build\jms.jar
SET CLASSPATH=$CLASSPATH:$_360COMMON_PATH\common\build\optic.jar
SET CLASSPATH=$CLASSPATH:jboss-4.0.2/lib/jboss-common.jar
SET CLASSPATH=$CLASSPATH:jboss-4.0.2/client/jboss-j2ee.jar
SET CLASSPATH=$CLASSPATH:jboss-4.0.2/client/jbossmq-client.jar
SET CLASSPATH=$CLASSPATH:jboss-4.0.2/client/jnp-client.jar
```

4. Add the following class path entries to the *<POS_install_directory>*`/pos/bin/posenv.sh` file.

```
CP=$CP:<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>/AppServer/plugins/com.ibm.ws.runtime_6.1.0.jar
CP=$CP:<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>/AppServer/runtimes/com.ibm.ws.admin.client_6.1.0.jar
CP=$CP:<MQ_INSTALL_DIR>/java/lib/jms.jar
CP=$CP:<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>/lib/WMQ/java/lib/com.ibm.mqjms.jar
CP=$CP:<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>/lib/WMQ/java/lib/com.ibm.mq.jar
CP=$CP:<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>/lib/WMQ/java/lib/dhbcore.jar
```

5. Change the *<POS_install_directory>*`/pos/config/backoffice.jndi.properties` and *<POS_install_directory>*`/pos/bin/jndi.properties` files to point to Back Office.

```
java.naming.provider.url=
corbaloc:iiop:<Back Office Server Name>:<Back Office Port Number>
```

6. To use Centralized Transaction Retrieval, there are jar files that must be copied into the Point-of-Service directory.

> **Note:** Oracle Retail Central Office must be installed and deployed on WebSphere before these jar files can be copied into the Point-of-Service directory. These files are created during the deployment.

Copy the following jar files to *<POS_install_directory>*`/360common/lib`:

- *<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*`/profiles/`*<AppSrvNN>*`/installedApps/`*<hostnameNodeNNCell>*`/CentralOffice.ear/transaction-retrieval-ejb.jar`
- *<WAS_INSTALL_DIR>*`/profiles/`*<AppSrvNN>*`/installedApps/`*<hostnameNodeNNCell>*`/CentralOffice.ear/customer-retrieval-ejb.jar`

7. Change the *<POS_install_directory>* /pos/config/centraloffice.jndi.properties file to point to Central Office. This creates access to the POSLog and EJournalImport queues and enables Centralized Transaction Retrieval to access the EJBs and POSLog and EJournalImport queues.

   ```
   java.naming.provider.url=
   corbaloc:iiop:<Central Office Server Name>:<Central Office Port Number>
   ```

8. Add the Back Office and Central Office queue and topic connection factory entries to the *<POS_install_directory>*/pos/bin/comm.properties file.

   ```
   comm.jms.topicConnectionFactory.name=jms/ApplicationTCF
   comm.jms.queueConnectionFactory.name=jms/ApplicationQCF
   comm.jms.topicConnectionFactory.name.<Central Office Server Name>=
   jms/ApplicationTCF
   comm.jms.queueConnectionFactory.name.<Central Office Server Name>=
   jms/ApplicationQCF
   ```

9. Delete the comm.properties file from *<POS_install_directory>*/pos/config.

10. Edit the log export configuration in the *<POS_install_directory>* /pos/config/conduit/StoreServerConduit.xml file by changing only one of the following sections.

    - To use data replication, edit the DataReplicationDaemonTechnician section.

      ```
      <TECHNICIAN name="DataReplicationDaemonTechnician"
                    class="DataReplicationDaemonTechnician"
                    package="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.datareplication"
                    export="Y">
            <PROPERTY propname="daemonClassName"
      propvalue="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.datareplication.DataReplicati
      onExportDaemonThread"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="sleepInterval"
                      propvalue="50"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="logWriterClass"
      propvalue="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.datareplication.JMSDataReplic
      ationWriter"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="extractorConfigurationFileName"
                      propvalue="config/ReplicationExportConfig.xml"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="queueHostName"
                      propvalue="<Central Office Server Name>"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="maximumTransactionsToExport"
                      propvalue="2"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="queueName"
                      propvalue="jms/POSLog"/>
        </TECHNICIAN>
      ```

    - To use the POSLog, edit the PosLogDaemonTechnician section. Edit the version that exports to a JMS queue.

      ```
      TECHNICIAN name="POSLogDaemonTechnician"
                    class="POSLogDaemonTechnician"
                    package="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.export"
                    export="Y">
            <PROPERTY propname="daemonClassName"
      propvalue="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.export.POSLogExportDaemonThre
      ad"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="sleepInterval"
      ```

```
                    propvalue="60"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="logWriterClass"
    propvalue="com.extendyourstore.domain.ixretail.log.POSLogWriter"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="queueHostName"
                      propvalue="<Central Office Server Name>"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="queueName"
                      propvalue="jms/POSLog"/>
            <PROPERTY propname="logWriterClass"
    propvalue="com.extendyourstore.domain.ixretail.log.JMSPOSLogWriter"/>
        </TECHNICIAN>
```

11. Edit `JMSJournalTechnician` in the *<POS_install_directory>* `/pos/config/conduit/StoreServerConduit.xml` file.

```
 <TECHNICIAN name="JMSJournalTechnician"
                class="JMSJournalTechnician"
                package="com.extendyourstore.foundation.manager.journal"
                export="Y">
              <PROPERTY propname="journalFormatterClass"
propvalue="com.extendyourstore.pos.manager.journal.POSJournalFormatter"/>
               <PROPERTY propname="journalHandlerClass"
propvalue="com.extendyourstore.pos.manager.journal.POSJMSJournalHandler"/>
                <PROPERTY propname="queueName" propvalue="jms/EJournal"/>
                <PROPERTY propname="consolePrintable" propvalue="N"/>
    </TECHNICIAN>
```

12. Edit `MessageCenterDaemonTechnician` in the *<POS_install_directory>* `/pos/config/conduit/StoreServerConduit.xml` file.

```
 <TECHNICIAN name="MessageCenterDaemonTechnician"
               class="MessageCenterDaemonTechnician"
               package="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.messagecenter"
               export="Y">
        <PROPERTY propname="daemonClassName"
propvalue="com.extendyourstore.domain.manager.messagecenter.MessageCenterDaemon
Thread"/>
        <PROPERTY propname="senderQueueName"
                  propvalue="jms/EJournalImport"/>
        <PROPERTY propname="senderBrokerName"
                  propvalue="<Central Office Server Name>"/>
        <PROPERTY propname="receiverQueueName"
                  propvalue="jms/EJournal"/>
        <PROPERTY propname="receiverBrokerName"
                  propvalue=""/>
    </TECHNICIAN>
```

Note: The value set for the `queueName` property for the `JMSJournalTechnician` and the value set for the `receiverQueueName` property for the `MessageCenterDaemonTechnician` must be the same.

Secure RMI and Secure JDBC

Understanding SSL/TLS connection problems can be difficult, especially when it is not clear what messages are actually being sent and received. The SunJSSE has a built-in debug facility that is activated by the system property `javax.net.debug`.

- To enable SSL debugging for the Point-of-Service server, add `-Djavax.net.debug=all` to the `StoreServerConduit.sh` file and restart the server:

  ```
  COMMAND "java ${JAVA_OPTIONS} -Djavax.net.debug=all
  com.extendyourstore.foundation.config.TierLoader ${CONDUIT_CONFIG}"
  ```

- To enable SSL debugging for the Point-of-Service client, add `-Djavax.net.debug=all` to the `ClientConduit.sh` file and start the client:

  ```
  COMMAND "java ${JAVA_OPTIONS} -Djavax.net.debug=all
  com.extendyourstore.foundation.config.TierLoader ${CONDUIT_CONFIG}"
  ```

For information on understanding the debug output, see the following website:

http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.5.0/docs/guide/security/jsse/ReadDebug.html

In the log files for the server and client, look for HandshakeExceptions. The following examples list the most common exceptions:

- Certificates not yet active—This occurs when the date on the store server is ahead of the date on the client. Because of this dated discrepancy, the certificate exported from the server has not become active yet.
- Location for the Key Store or trust store is incorrect—For information about the files that are changed when enabling secure RMI, see Appendix R.
- KeyEncryptionService (RSA) is not located in the correct place—Due to this configuration error, the passwords in the XML files and `posfoundation.properties` file cannot be generated. An empty `posfoundation.properties` is created in in `OracleRetailStore\Server\pos\config` and `OracleRetailStore\Client\pos\config`.

  After fixing the KeyEncryptionService configuration issue, you either have to reinstall Point-of_Service or get a copy of the original `posfoundation.properties` file located in the *<INSTALL_DIR>*`\product\config` and update the file. To update the file, follow the steps in Appendix R to manually update the `posfoundation.properties` file.

- Type of the store server Key Store is different than the type of the client trust store—To check the type, use the following keytool commands:

  ```
  keytool -list -keystore <your_key_store_name_and_location>
  keytool -list -truststore <your_truststore_name_and_location>
  ```

  The above commands list the Key Store and trust store type and provider along with all the certificates that are stored in these files, as shown in the following example:

  ```
  Keystore type: jks

  Keystore provider: SUN

  Your keystore contains 1 entry
  Oracle, Jul 9, 2009, keyEntry,
  Certificate fingerprint (MD5): EF:33:FE:13:0D:EC:8C:64:1B:C1:89:4C:86:62:6C:53
  ```

  Make sure that the Key Store type matches in both files.

N

Appendix: Best Practices for Passwords

This appendix has information on the practices that should be followed for passwords. The following topics are covered:

- "Password Guidelines"
- "Special Security Options for Oracle Databases"
- "Special Security Options for IBM DB2 Databases"

Password Guidelines

To make sure users and their passwords are properly protected, follow these guidelines. The guidelines are based on the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI-DSS):

- Verify the identity of the user before resetting any passwords.
- Set first-time passwords to a unique value for each user and require the password to be changed immediately after the first use.
- Immediately revoke access for any terminated users.
- Remove inactive user accounts at least every 90 days.
- Enable accounts used by vendors for remote maintenance only during the time period when access is needed.
- Communicate password procedures and policies to all users who have access to cardholder data.
- Do not use group, shared, or generic accounts and passwords.
- Require user passwords to be changed at least every 90 days.
- Require a minimum password length of at least seven characters.
- Require that passwords contain both numeric and alphabetic characters.
- Do not accept a new password that is the same as any of the last four passwords used by a user.
- Limit the number of repeated access attempts by locking out the user ID after not more than six attempts.
- Set the lockout duration to thirty minutes or until an administrator enables the user ID.

Special Security Options for Oracle Databases

The following information is based on Oracle Database version 10.2.0.3 and is found in the *Oracle Database Security Guide*.

Enforcing Password Policies Using Database Profiles

Password policies can be enforced via database profiles. The options can be changed using a SQL statement, for example:

```
alter profile appsample limit
```

Option	Setting	Description
FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS	4	Maximum number of login attempts before the account is locked.
PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME	3	Number of days a user has to change an expired password before the account is locked.
PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME	90	Number of days that the current password can be used.
PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME	30	Amount of time in minutes that the account is locked.
PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX	10	Number of unique passwords the user must supply before the first password can be reused.
PASSWORD_VERIFY_FUNCTION	<*routine_name*>	Name of the verification script that is used to ensure that the password meets the requirements of the password policy. See "Enforcing Password Policies Using a Verification Script".

Enforcing Password Policies Using a Verification Script

Password policies can be enforced via a password complexity verification script, for example:

```
UTLPWDMG.SQL
```

The password complexity verification routine ensures that the password meets the following requirements:

- Is at least four characters long
- Differs from the user name
- Has at least one alpha, one numeric, and one punctuation mark character
- Is not simple or obvious, such as welcome, account, database, or user
- Differs from the previous password by at least three characters

For example, to set the password to expire as soon as the user logs in for the first time:

```
CREATE USER jbrown
IDENTIFIED BY zX83yT
...
PASSWORD EXPIRE;
```

Special Security Options for IBM DB2 Databases

The security for DB2 is done at the operating system level. Consult your IBM DB2 documentation for information on creating a security profile that follows the password guidelines.

O

Appendix: Keytool Utility

The keytool utility is included with the JRE. It is used to create new keys, import digital certificates, export existing keys, and interact with the key management system.

Creating a Self-Signed Certificate

To create a self-signed certificate, use the following command. It creates a private key and a self-signed certificate that contains the corresponding public key:

```
keytool -genkey -keystore <your_keystore_name_and_location>
-alias <your_alias> -keyalg RSA
```

Note: If the provided Key Store does not exist on the file system, this command creates a new Key Store. It is recommended that you use your own Key Store file instead of using the default file, named `cacerts` provided by Java.

If no Key Store name is provided, the Key Store is, by default, stored in a file named `.keystore` in the user's home directory, as determined by the `user.home` system property. In this case, the default password for the Key Store is `changeit`.

Caution: The Key Store name and location is used by the Point-Of-Service installer to populate the `javax.net.ssl.keyStore` entry in the `posfoundation.properties` file. Make sure that the Key Store file and certificate are created before starting the installation.

Creating a Certificate Signing Request

To obtain a certificate signed by a real Certificate Authority, create a Certificate Signing Request.

1. Use the following command to generate the request:

   ```
   keytool -certreq -keystore <your_keystore_name_and_location>
   -alias <your_alias> -file <your_file.cer>
   ```

2. Once the Certificate Signing Request is saved in a file, send it to the Certificate Authority of your choice. To get a trial certificate, see the following website:

   https://www.thawte.com

3. When the response from the Certificate Authority is received, save the certificate in a file from which it can be imported. In order to import the certificate, the root certificate must be in your list of trusted certificate authorities, or you must accept the root certificate selected by the keytool utility.

4. To import the certificate, use the following command:

   ```
   keytool -import -keystore <your_keystore_name_and_location>
   -file <your_certificate_file.cer> -alias <your_alias> -trustcacerts
   ```

For development or testing purposes, it should not be necessary to get a trial certificate or have your certificate signed.

Exporting and Importing Certificates

The server in an SSL conversation must have a private key and a certificate that verifies its identity.

- The private key is used by the server as a part of the key exchange algorithm.
- The certificate is sent to the client to identify the server. This information is obtained from the Key Store.
- The truststore is used by the client to verify the certificate that is sent by the server.

To populate the truststore for the Point-of-Service client with the public certificate of a server:

1. Export the above generated certificate (without the private key) from the server Key Store. For information on creating the certificate, see Creating a Certificate Signing Request.

   ```
   keytool -export -keystore <your_keystore> -alias <your_alias>
   -file <your_file.cer>
   ```

2. Import the certificate into the truststore for the Point-of-Service client.

   ```
   keytool -import -alias <your_alias>
   -keystore <your_truststore_name_and_location> -file <your_file.cer>
   ```

   The Point-of-Service installer populates the `javax.net.ssl.trustStore` property in the `posfoundation.properties` file with the location and name of the truststore file.

Note: If the provided truststore does not exist on the file system, this command creates a new truststore. It is recommended that you use your own truststore file instead of using the default file, named `cacerts` provided by Java.

Caution: It is recommended that the certificate is added to your own truststore instead of the default `cacerts` truststore provided by Java.

The password for the default truststore is **changeit**. If you add it to a custom trust store, you need to communicate this to the JVM. The Point-of-Service installer sets the location and password for the truststore into the `javax.net.ssl.trustStore` and `javax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword` properties in the `posfoundation.properties` file.

P

Appendix: Secure JDBC with Oracle 11gR2 Database

This appendix has information on setting up and communicating with a secured Oracle 11gR2 database server based on the following assumptions:

- Client authentication is not needed.
- The Oracle wallet is used as a trust store on the database server.

SSL encryption for Oracle JDBC has been supported in the JDBC-OCI driver since Oracle JDBC 9.2.x, and is supported in the THIN driver starting in 10.2. SSL authentication has been supported in the JDBC-OCI driver since Oracle JDBC 9.2.x. The THIN driver supports Oracle Advanced Security SSL implementation in Oracle Database 11g Release 1 (11.2).

For more information, see the following websites:

- http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/enterprise-edition/wp-oracle-jdbc-thin-ssl-130128.pdf
- http://download.oracle.com/docs/cd/E11882_01/network.112/e10746/toc.htm
- http://download.oracle.com/docs/cd/B28359_01/java.111/b31224/toc.htm

Creating the Oracle Wallet and Certificate for the Database Server

Note the following information:

- If you want have a user interface, run `owm` from `$ORACLE_HOME/bin` as `oracle`.
- The wallet you create must support Auto Login. It must be enabled on the new wallet.
- The following is the wallet directory default:
  - `ORACLE_HOME/admin/ORACLE_SID`
  - Test server wallet information:
    * Wallet password: securedb11g
    * Wallet directory: `/u01/oracle/admin/SECURDB11G`

- When generating a self-signed certificate, note the following:
  - Do not use keytool to create a certificate for using Oracle wallets. They are incompatible.
  - Two wallets are needed to generate a self-signed certificate. One wallet is needed to sign the certificate and another wallet is needed to use the certificate.
  - For command line wallet access, use `orapki`.
  - For instructions on generating a self-signed certificate, see *APPENDIX B CREATING TRUSTSTORES AND KEYSTORES* in the following document:

    http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/enterprise-edition/wp-oracle-jdbc-thin-ssl-130128.pdf
  - The following are examples of `orapki` commands:
    * To create the wallet:

      ```
      orapki wallet create -wallet <wallet directory>
      ```

    * To add the self-signed certificate:

      ```
      orapki wallet add -wallet <wallet directory> -dn
      CN=<certificate name>,C-US -keysize 2048 -self_signed -validity 3650
      ```

    * To view the wallet:

      ```
      orapki wallet display -wallet <wallet directory>
      ```
- The Wallet Manager UI can also be used to import certificates.

Securing the Listener on the Server

The `listener.ora`, `tnsnames.ora`, and `sqlnet.ora` files are found in the `$ORACLE_HOME/network/admin` directory. If the `sqlnet.ora` file does not exist, you need to create it.

To secure the listener on the server:

1. Add TCPS protocol to the `listener.ora` file.
2. Add TCPS protocol to the `tnsnames.ora` file.
3. Add the Oracle Wallet location to the `sqlnet.ora` and `listener.ora` files.
4. Add disabling of client authentication to the `sqlnet.ora` and `listener.ora` files.
5. Add encryption-only cipher suites to the `sqlnet.ora` file.
6. Bounce the listener once the file is updated.

Examples of Network Configuration Files

Examples of the following network configuration files are shown in this section:

- listener.ora
- sqlnet.ora
- tnsnames.ora

listener.ora

```
SID_LIST_LISTENER =
  (SID_LIST =
    (SID_DESC =
      (SID_NAME = PLSExtProc)
      (ORACLE_HOME = /u01/oracle/11g)
      (PROGRAM = extproc)
    )
  )

LISTENER =
  (DESCRIPTION_LIST =
    (DESCRIPTION =
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP)(HOST = 10.143.44.108)(PORT = 1521))
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCPS)(HOST = 10.143.44.108)(PORT = 2484))
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = IPC)(KEY = EXTPROCO))
    )
  )

WALLET_LOCATION=(SOURCE=(METHOD=FILE)
  (METHOD_DATA=(DIRECTORY=/u01/oracle/admin/SECURDB11G)))

SSL_CLIENT_AUTHENTICATION=FALSE
```

Caution: To generate a trace log, add the following entries to the `listener.ora` file:

```
TRACE_LEVEL_LISTENER = ADMIN
TRACE_DIRECTORY_LISTENER = /u01/oracle/11g/network/trace
TRACE_FILE_LISTENER = listener.trc
```

sqlnet.ora

```
SSL_CLIENT_AUTHENTICATION=FALSE

SSL_CIPHER_SUITES=(SSL_DH_anon_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA, SSL_DH_anon_WITH_RC4_128_
MD5, SSL_DH_anon_WITH_DES_CBC_SHA)

WALLET_LOCATION=(SOURCE=(METHOD=FILE)
  (METHOD_DATA=(DIRECTORY=/u01/oracle/admin/SECURDB11G)))
```

tnsnames.ora

```
SECURDB11G =
  (DESCRIPTION =
    (ADDRESS_LIST =
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP)(HOST = 10.143.44.108)(PORT = 1521))
      (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCPS)(HOST = 10.143.44.108)(PORT = 2484))
    )
    (CONNECT_DATA =
      (SERVER = DEDICATED)
      (SERVICE_NAME = SECURDB11G)
    )
  )
```

Securing Client Access

Caution: Ensure you are using `ojdbc.jar` version 10.2.x or later. Version 10.1.x or earlier will not connect over TCPS.

To secure client access:

1. Export the self-signed certificate from the server Oracle Wallet and import it into a local trust store. See "Exporting and Importing Certificates" in Appendix O.
2. Use the following URL format for the JDBC connection:

```
jdbc:oracle:thin:@(DESCRIPTION= (ADDRESS= (PROTOCOL=tcps) (HOST=10.143.44.108)
(PORT=2484) ) (CONNECT_DATA= (SERVICE_NAME=SECURDB11G)))
```

3. The database connection call requires the following properties to be set, either as system properties or JDBC connection properties:

Property	Value
oracle.net.ssl_cipher_suites	(SSL_DH_anon_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA, SSL_DH_anon_WITH_RC4_128_MD5, SSL_DH_anon_WITH_DES_CBC_SHA)
javax.net.ssl.trustStore	Path and file name of trust store For example: `/DevTools/Testing/Secure11g/truststore/truststore`
javax.net.ssl.trustStoreType	JKS
javax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword	Password for trust store

Specific Instructions for Point-of-Service

Note: This section applies to manual configuration of secure JDBC protocol. All the steps listed below are done automatically by the installer when **Yes** is selected on the Enable Secure JDBC screen.

To configure Oracle Retail Point-of-Service:

1. Configure the database server as shown above.
2. Copy the `ojdbc14.jar` file from the database server and replace in the `pos` library.

Note: The `ojdbc14.jar` file that comes with the 10.2.0.3 version of database supports TCPS protocol.

3. Update the connection pool that is defined in the following files:
   - `server/pos/config/DefaultDataTechnician.xml`
   - `server/pos/config/EnterpriseDataTechnician.xml`

Q

Appendix: Secure JDBC with IBM DB2

This appendix has information on how to enable SSL for IBM DB2. Information from the DB2 V9 Information Center, *Global Security Kit Secure Sockets Layer Introduction*, and *iKeyman User's Guide* is included in this appendix.

IBM DB2 has supported SSL encryption since version 9.1 Fix Pack 3. Information on how to configure SSL on the server and client can be found at the following websites:

- `http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/v9/index.jsp?topic=/com.ibm.db2.udb.uprun.doc/doc/t0025241.htm`
- `http://www-1.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21249656`

Summary

To secure JDBC on IBM DB2 requires the following:

- An SSL provider must be established on the DB2 server.
- The provider requires a digital certificate and corresponding private key to provide the secure communications.
- The client either needs to have a copy of the digital certificate or trust the signer of the server certificate.
- The client needs to be configured to use the secure service, and optionally use a FIPS-compliant SSL provider.

Prerequisites

The information in this section is from the DB2 V9 Information Center.

1. Make sure you have the required fix pack version of DB2.

   To determine the fix pack level you have, run the `db2level` command at the command line. If you have Version 9.1 with a fix pack version earlier than Fix Pack 3, you need to obtain Fix Pack 3 or a later version.

2. Make sure the GSKit is installed.

   On linux, it is located in `/usr/local/ibm/gsk7`.

3. Make sure the GSKit libraries are in the path.

   Make sure the `/usr/local/ibm/gsk7/lib` directory is included in LD_LIBRARY_PATH.

4. For information on how to check if the connection concentrator is in use, see the IBM documentation.

Setting up the Key Store

The information in this section is from *Global Security Kit Secure Sockets Layer Introduction* and *iKeyman User's Guide*.

1. If you are not already logged in to the server, log in as the instance owner.
2. Start iKeyman GUI gsk7ikm.

   If the Java Cryptographic Extension(JCE) files were not found, make sure the JAVA_HOME environment variable points to a JDK that contains the JCE.
3. Click **Key Database File** and then **New**.
4. Select a key database type, filename, and location.

   It is suggested that a CMS key database is created. This is consistent with the DB2 Infocenter example. For example:

   ```
   /home/db2inst1/GSKit/Keystore/key.kdb
   ```
5. Click **OK**. The Password Prompt window is displayed.
6. Enter a password for the key database.
7. Click **OK**. A confirmation window is displayed. Click **OK**.

Creating a Self-signed Digital Certificate for Testing

The information in this section is from *Global Security Kit Secure Sockets Layer Introduction* and *iKeyman User's Guide*.

1. If you are not already logged in to the server, log in as the instance owner.
2. Start iKeyman GUI gsk7ikm.

   If the Java Cryptographic Extension(JCE) files were not found, make sure the JAVA_HOME environment variable points to a JDK that contains the JCE.
3. Click **Key Database File** and then **Open**.
4. Select the key database file where you want to add the self-signed digital certificate.
5. Click **Open**. The Password Prompt window is displayed.
6. Select **Personal Certificates** from the menu.
7. Click **New Self-Signed**. The Create New Self-Signed Certificate Window is displayed.
8. Type a Key Label, such as `keytest`, for the self-signed digital certificate.
9. Type a **Common Name and Organization**, and select a **Country**. For the remaining fields, accept the default values or enter new values.
10. Click **OK**. The IBM Key Management Window is displayed. The Personal Certificates field shows the name of the self-signed digital certificate you created.

Configuring the IBM DB2 Server

The information in this section is from the DB2 V9 Information Center.

1. If you are not already logged in to the server, log in as the instance owner.
2. Create an SSL configuration file:
   - For Linux and UNIX:

     `<INSTHOME>/cfg/SSLconfig.ini`

     For example:

     `/home/db2inst1/sqllib/cfg/SSLconfig.ini`

   - For Windows:

     `<INSTHOME>\SSLconfig.ini`

     For example:

     `F:\IBM\SQLLIB\DB2\SSLconfig.ini`

   <INSTHOME> is the home directory of the instance.

   Caution: It is recommended that you set the file permission to limit access to the `SSLconfig.ini`, as the file might contain sensitive data. For example, limit read and write authority on the file to members of the SYSADM group if the file contains the password for the Key Store.

3. Add SSL parameters to the SSL configuration file. The `SSLconfig.ini` file contains the SSL parameters that are used to load and start SSL. The list of SSL parameters are shown in the following table:

SSL parameter name	Description
DB2_SSL_KEYSTORE_FILE	Fully qualified file name of the Key Store that stores the Server Certificate.
DB2_SSL_KEYSTORE_PW	Password of the Key Store that stores the Server Certificate.
DB2_SSL_KEYSTORE_LABEL	Label for the Server Certificate. If it is omitted, the default certificate for the Key Store is used.
DB2_SSL_LISTENER	Service name or port number for the SSL listener.

The following is an example of an `SSLconfig.ini` file:

```
DB2_SSL_KEYSTORE_FILE=/home/db2inst1/GSKit/Keystore/key.kdb
DB2_SSL_LISTENER=20397
DB2_SSL_KEYSTORE_PW=abcd1234
```

4. Add the value SSL to the DB2COMM registry variable. For example, use the following command:

   ```
   db2set -i <db2inst1> DB2COMM=SSL
   ```

   where *<db2inst1>* is the IBM DB2 instance name.

   The database manager can support multiple protocols at the same time. For example, to enable both TCP/IP and SSL communication protocols:

   ```
   db2set -i <db2inst1> DB2COMM=SSL,TCPIP
   ```

5. Restart the IBM DB2 instance. For example, use the following commands:

   ```
   db2stop
   ```

   ```
   db2start
   ```

   At this point, the server should be ready to start serving SSL connections. You can check the `db2diag.log` file for errors. There should be no errors pertaining to SSL after the restart.

Exporting a Certificate from iKeyman

The information in this section is from *Global Security Kit Secure Sockets Layer Introduction* and *iKeyman User's Guide*.

In order to be able to talk to the server, the clients need to have a copy of the self-signed certificate from the server.

1. Start iKeyman. The IBM Key Management window is displayed.
2. Click **Key Database File** and then **Open**. The Open window is displayed.
3. Select the source key database. This is the database that contains the certificate you want to add to another database as a signer certificate.
4. Click **Open**. The Password Prompt window is displayed.
5. Enter the key database password and click **OK**. The IBM Key Management window is displayed. The title bar shows the name of the selected key database file, indicating that the file is open and ready.
6. Select the type of certificate you want to export: Personal or Signer.
7. Select the certificate that you want to add to another database.
   - If you selected Personal, click **Extract Certificate**.
   - If you selected Signer, click **Extract**.

   The Extract a Certificate to a File window is displayed.
8. Click **Data type** and select a data type, such as Base64-encoded ASCII data. The data type needs to match the data type of the certificate stored in the certificate file. The iKeyman tool supports Base64-encoded ASCII files and binary DER-encoded certificates.
9. Enter the certificate file name and location where you want to store the certificate, or click **Browse** to select the name and location.
10. Click **OK**. The certificate is written to the specified file, and the IBM Key Management window is displayed.

Importing the IBM DB2 Server Certificate on the Point-of-Service Server

The information in this section is from the DB2 V9 Information Center.

1. Copy the certificate to the Point-of-Service server.
2. Add the certificate to the trust store used by the JVM using [keytool|Secure Protocols^keytool].

```
keytool -import -file <certificateFile>
-keystore <your_truststore_name_and_location>
```

> **Note:** If the provided truststore does not exist on the file system, this command creates a new truststore. It is recommended that you use your own truststore file instead of using the default file, named `cacerts` provided by Java.
>
> The password for the default truststore is **changeit**. If you add it to a custom trust store, you need to communicate this to the JVM. Set the location and password for the truststore using the `javax.net.ssl.trustStore` and `javax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword` system properties.

Configuring the Point-of-Service Server

The information in this section is from the DB2 V9 Information Center.

1. Configure the SSL port.

   This should be a simple change to the JDBC URL. There is no established default SSL port for DB2. You should use what was configured for the IBM DB2 server in the server `SSLconfig.ini` file.

2. Configure the `sslConnection` property.

   The property can be configured using either of the following methods:

   - As a property on the datasource/connection:

     ```
     props.setProperty("sslConnection", "true");
     ```

   - As a property in the URL:

     ```
     jdbc:db2://<server>:<port>/<database>:sslConnection=true;
     ```

> **Note:** For the Point-of-Service store server, the ssl property is configured in the URL by the Point-of-Service installer.

Configuring the IBM FIPS-compliant Provider for SSL (optional)

The information in this section is from the DB2 V9 Information Center.

The Sun JSSE SSL provider works with the IBM DB2 driver by following the above instructions. If you want to use the IBM FIPS-compliant provider, you have to use the IBM JDK and make the following configuration changes.

Note: If you are following the IBM documentation, note the following issues:

- Prior to the numbered steps, it says to add several lines to `java.security`. Do not add the lines.
- Step two incorrectly shows setting `ssl.SocketFactory.provider` twice. It only needs to be done once.

---

1. Set the `IBMJSSE2 FIPS` system property to enable FIPS mode:

   ```
   com.ibm.jsse2.JSSEFIPS=true
   ```

2. Set security properties to ensure that all JSSE code uses the IBMJSSE2 provider. The following example shows the entries in `java.security`.

   ```
   ssl.SocketFactory.provider=com.ibm.jsse2.SSLSocketFactoryImpl
   ssl.ServerSocketFactory.provider=com.ibm.jsse2.SSLServerSocketFactoryImpl
   ```

3. Add the IBMJCEFIPS cryptographic provider.

   Add com.ibm.crypto.fips.provider.IBMJCEFIPS to the provider list before the IBMJCE provider. Do not remove the IBMJCE provider. The IBMJCE provider is required for Key Store support.

   The following example shows the entries in `java.security`.

   ```
   # List of providers and their preference orders (see above):
   #
   security.provider.1=com.ibm.jsse2.IBMJSSEProvider2
   # inserted provider 2 for FIPS
   security.provider.2=com.ibm.crypto.fips.provider.IBMJCEFIPS
   security.provider.3=com.ibm.crypto.provider.IBMJCE
   security.provider.4=com.ibm.security.jgss.IBMJGSSProvider
   security.provider.5=com.ibm.security.cert.IBMCertPath
   security.provider.6=com.ibm.security.sasl.IBMSASL
   ```

Useful Links

For more information, see the following websites:

- http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/v9/topic/com.ibm.db2.udb.apdv.java.doc/doc/rjvdsprp.htm

  This website has documentation of all the properties available in the DB2 Driver for JDBC.

- http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/v9/topic/com.ibm.db2.udb.apdv.java.doc/doc/tjvjcccn.htm

  This website contains documentation of the URL syntax for connecting to DB2 using JDBC.

- http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/abstracts/sg247555.html

  An IBM Redbook on security related issues with DB2, including auditing and data encryption. The IBM Form Number is SG24-7555-00.

R

Appendix: Secure RMI

To enable secure RMI for register-to-store server communication:

1. Prepare the Key Store and trust stores using the keytool utility described in Appendix O.

   Note: If you are doing a manual configuration of secure RMI, follow Steps 2 and 3. If the installer is doing the configuration, the changes are made by the installer. If you do want to use different cipher suites, you must update the properties files.

2. For the store server, add the following properties to the `<pos_install_directory>\server\pos\config\posfoundation.properties` file:

   - `EnabledCipherSuites=<cipher_suites_to_use>`

     For example:

     ```
     EnabledCipherSuites=SSL_DHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA
     ```

     If the EnabledCipherSuites property is not defined, the defaults are used.

     Note: It is recommended that the default cipher suites provided by Java are used.

   - `EncryptValets=true`

     This causes the RMI communication between Manager/Technician pairs to be secured.

   - `javax.net.ssl.keyStore=$KEYSTORE_FILE$`

     This points to the Key Store that contains the private keys and public certificates for the server. For example:

     ```
     javax.net.ssl.keyStore=$JAVA_HOME\\jre\\lib\\security\\<keystore_name>
     ```

   - `javax.net.ssl.keyStorePassword=!$KEYSTORE_PASSWORD$`

     This is the encrypted password for the Key Store. For example:

     ```
     javax.net.ssl.keyStorePassword=!changeit
     ```

Note: The Key Store password follows the same convention for encryption as the other passwords.

- For DB2 SLL JDBC, a trust store needs to be defined where the public certificate from the DB2 server is imported. For more information, see Appendix Q.

  `javax.net.ssl.truststore=$TRUSTSTORE_FILE$`

3. For the register, add the following properties to the `<pos_install_directory>client\pos\config\posfoundation.properties` file:

   - `EnabledCipherSuites=<cipher_suites_to_use>`

     Note: The cipher suites selected for the register have to match the ones selected for the store server.

   - `EncryptValets=true`

     This causes the RMI communication between Manager/Technician pairs to be secured.

   - `javax.net.ssl.trustStore=$TRUSTSTORE_FILE$`

     This points to the trust store that contains the public certificates for the client. For example:

     `javax.net.ssl.trustStore=$JAVA_HOME\jre\lib\security\<truststore_name>`

     Note: A trust store does not need to be defined in the `posfoundation.properties` file if certificates are imported into `cacerts` or `jssecacerts`. It is recommended that `cacerts` or `jssecacerts` is used.